



Japanese

Familiarization & Short-term Training



Table of Contents

<u>Topic</u>	<u>Lesson</u>	<u>Contents</u>	<u>Page</u>
I. First Encounters	1.	Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language	1
	2.	Finding out where you are	19
	3.	Identifying objects	35
	4.	Asking about the availability of merchandise or services	51
	5.	Introductions	65
II. Getting Directions	6.	Place names of interest in Tokyo	79
	7.	Some basic place expressions	89
	8.	Getting the answer you want (1)	105
	9.	Getting the answer you want (2)	119
	10.	Asking the distance	137
	Review Lesson: Making It Work (1)	155	
III. Transportation	11.	Buying a train ticket	157
	12.	Taking the right train	175
	13.	Getting off at the right stop	191
	14.	Finding out the right exit and changing trains and buses	205
	15.	Taking a taxi	219
IV. Shopping	16.	Locating merchandise	235
	17.	Asking for service and indicating preference	251
	18.	Making a decision	269
	19.	Paying and receiving change	285
	20.	Daily greetings	299
	Review Lesson: Making It Work (2)	319	
V. Eating Out	21.	Seating and asking for service	321
	22.	Placing an order	335
	23.	Placing an order and paying	351
VI. Telephoning	24.	Opening a telephone conversation	371
	25.	Making and receiving a business call	383
	26.	More telephone calls	399
VII. Emergencies and Problems	27.	Emergencies	413
	28.	Getting things fixed	427
VIII. Useful Expressions	29.	Going out for entertainment	441
	30.	Expressing appreciation, regret and other sentiments	457
	Review Lesson: Making It Work (3)	469	
	Japanese-English Glossary	473	
	English-Japanese Glossary	496	
	Table of Months, Days, Weeks and Counters	516	

PREFACE

The Japanese Familiarization and Short Term (FAST) Course is one of a series of similar foreign language courses produced at the Foreign Service Institute that are intended to train U.S. Government personnel assigned to overseas posts. The objective of the FAST Courses is to help students acquire the communication skills necessary to deal with the most common social and daily life situations they will encounter during their overseas assignments. Language forms adequate to satisfy personal needs, "how-to" information, and cultural highlights are presented in a format that will encourage students to try out and use with confidence the language skills they have developed.

The original version of the Japanese FAST Course was drafted in 1981 by Tetsuo Kumatoriya and Mari Takahashi under the direction of Madeline E. Ehrman. These materials were edited in 1985 by John B. Ratliff, III, and Hedy A. St. Denis. Based on observation of student performance and comments of both students and instructors at FSI, the course has been extensively revised over the past several years. Mrs. Tomoko Tanaka Campen, Senior Instructor in the FSI Japanese Section, has been deeply involved in this work along with the team of instructors that she heads: Miyuki Fogel, Masako Gonzales-Montero, Masako Nanto, and Setsuko Pfeiffer. Thomas E. Madden assisted with the design and lay-out of the camera-ready copy and Cornelius C. Kubler was responsible for the editing of the final version of the course.

The Japanese FAST Course was designed as a six-week introductory course for employees and dependents with imminent assignments to Japan who are unable to take the regular 44-week Japanese Basic Course. It should be noted that the FAST Course does not attempt to present a systematic, comprehensive introduction to Japanese grammar; instead, bits and pieces of the grammar are practiced and explained as they appear naturally in the dialogs. In view of the emphasis on the immediately practical and the amount of time available, all linguistic explanations have been greatly simplified.

Users of these materials who have suggestions for improvement of this first published edition should send them to the Japanese Language Section, Department of Asian and African Languages, School of Language Studies, Foreign Service Institute, Department of State, Washington, D.C. 20520.

Washington, D.C.

July 1988

Lesson 1

INTRODUCTION TO JAPAN AND THE JAPANESE LANGUAGE

こんにちは。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- state your name, Japanese style
- greet people in Japanese
- say the following in Japanese:
'I don't understand'
'I understand'
- ask a Japanese person to repeat something
- count numbers up to 99

You will also become familiar with a few representative scenes from and facts about Japan

Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

Presentation

1. The instructor will select from among the following to show to the class:

- a. films, slides, and videotapes
- b. pictures, post cards, magazines, dolls, books, newspapers, money, etc.

Ask about and discuss with your instructors and fellow students anything which you find interesting in the films or displays.

2. You will probably find that you already know some Japanese. What are some of the Japanese words you have heard before? Tell the class.

Have you been to Japan? If so, briefly describe your experience to the class. What cities did you visit and whom did you meet? Tell the names of the cities and persons to the class. Practice the pronunciation of the words out loud by repeating after the instructor.

3. a. Listen to the instructor read the following Japanese words and guess the meaning of each word. The words are originally from English but they are frequently used in present day Japanese. (You don't have to memorize the words now, they will appear in later units.)

YOUR TASK: listen and guess the meaning

PURPOSE: familiarization with the sound system

- | | | | |
|-----------|---------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. basu | 5. erebeetaa | 9. esukareetaa | 13. koora |
| 2. biiru | 6. chokoreeto | 10. sandoitchi | 14. sarada |
| 3. menyuu | 7. wain | 11. shatsu | 15. seetaa |
| 4. biifu | 8. koohii | 12. hanbaagaa | 16. sokkusu |

- b. Make sure your guess was correct. Repeat after the teacher to practice pronunciation.

YOUR TASK: confirmation and repetition, with meaning understood

PURPOSE: familiarization with the sound system

- c. The instructor will show you a series of pictures and ask,

Kore wa nan desu ka?

What is this?

Answer the question by saying ...desu, which means '(It) is...'

YOUR TASK: look, listen, and answer

PURPOSE: practice pronunciation, introduction of ...desu to identify an object

Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

4. a. Listen to the instructor read American names pronounced in the Japanese way.
Guess what names were read.

YOUR TASK: listen and guess the meaning

PURPOSE: comprehension of common American names

- | | | | |
|------------|-------------|------------|------------------|
| 1. Sumisu | 4. Joonzu | 7. Jonson | 10. Buraun |
| 2. Teeraa | 5. Tonpuson | 8. Toomasu | 11. Makudonarudo |
| 3. Hoomuzu | 6. Andaason | 9. Reegan | 12. Jakuson |

- b. Make sure your guess was correct. Repeat the names after the instructor to practice pronunciation.

YOUR TASK: confirmation and repetition

PURPOSE: practice Japanese pronunciation of American names

- c. Practice the pronunciation of your name as well as the names of the other students.
- d. Tell your instructor your name in Japanese, saying

Watakushi wa . . . desu, which means 'I'm . . .'

YOUR TASK: tell your name

PURPOSE: pronunciation of your name
introduction of **Watakushi wa . . . desu**.

5. a. The instructor will call the roll. Say **hai** meaning 'yes,' when your name is called. (In this situation, the word can mean 'here' or 'present.')

Instructor: . . . **san**.

YOUR TASK: listen and answer

PURPOSE: comprehension of American names, . . . **san**, and affirmative answers

- b. What does the instructor say after each name? What do you think is the meaning of the word? Discuss.

YOUR TASK: listen and identify a word and its meaning

PURPOSE: address term . . . **san**

- c. The instructor will tell you his or her full name. Listen carefully and write it down. Did s/he say . . . **san** at the end of the name? Which do you think is the first name and the last name? S/he will also give some common Japanese names. Repeat after the instructor to practice pronunciation.

Instructor: **Watakushi wa . . . desu.**

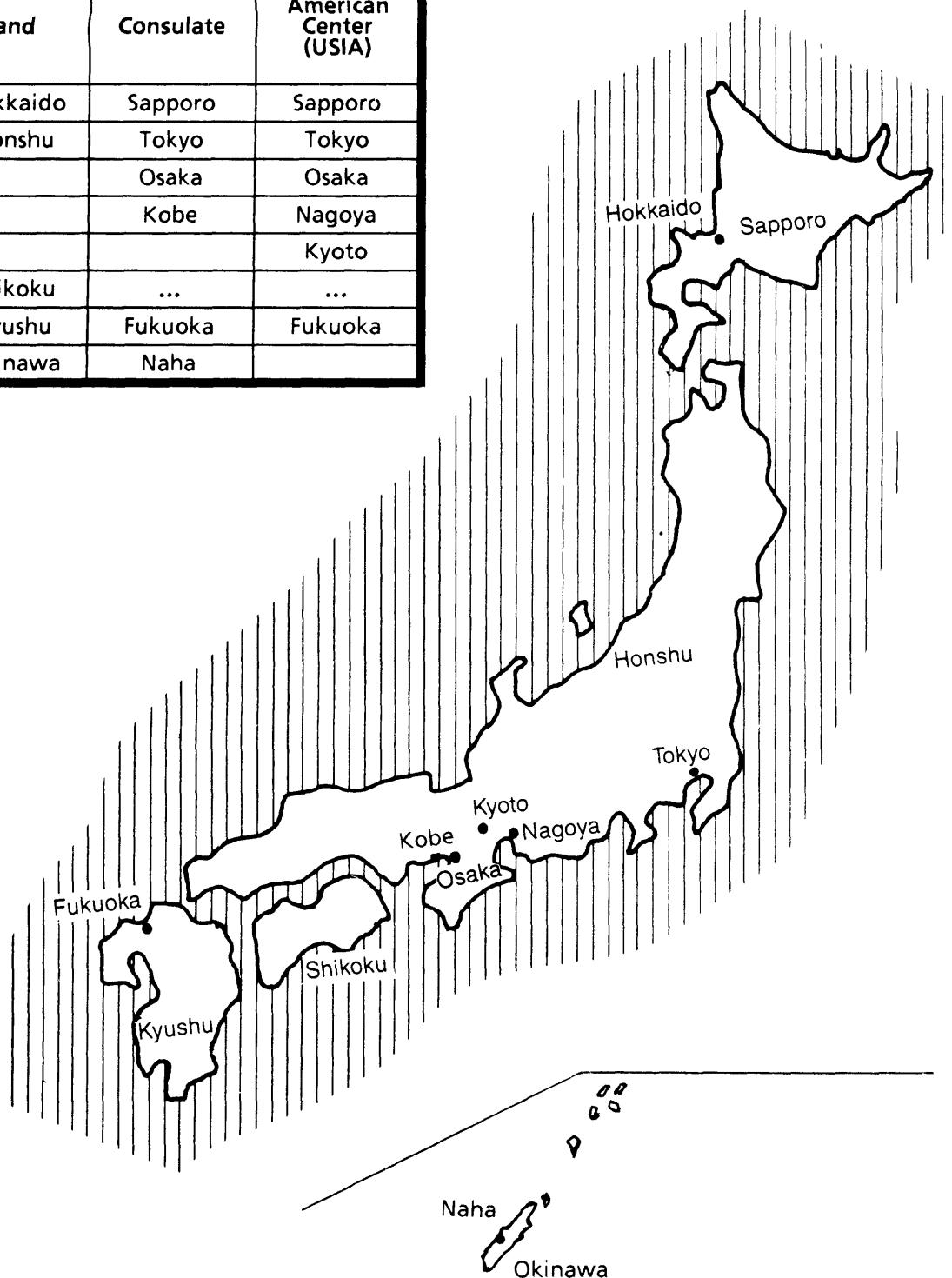
YOUR TASK: listen and write

PURPOSE: word order of Japanese names
introduction of common Japanese names

Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

6. a. Look at the map of Japan (Nihon 日 本) below and identify the names of the islands and the cities where American consulates and American centers are located. Practice the pronunciation of each place, repeating after the instructor.

Island	Consulate	American Center (USIA)
Hokkaido	Sapporo	Sapporo
Honshu	Tokyo	Tokyo
	Osaka	Osaka
	Kobe	Nagoya
		Kyoto
Shikoku
Kyushu	Fukuoka	Fukuoka
Okinawa	Naha	



Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

- b. The instructor asks you a question by referring to the map of Japan. Answer the question.

Example:

Instructor: **Kore wa (place name) desu ka?**

Student: **Hai, soo desu.** Yes, it is

OR

lie, chigaimasu.

No, it is not.

(lit., No, it is different.)

When you do not understand the word(s) the instructor said, ask him or her to repeat the question by saying

Sumimasen. I'm sorry. OR Excuse me.

Moo ichi-do itte kudasai. Please say (that) again.

YOUR TASK: answer the question and get unclear questions repeated

PURPOSE: introduce positive and negative answers and requests for repetition

- c. Communication Game

Directions:

One student points to a place on the map of Japan and asks whether it is a particular place by saying: **Kore wa (place name) desu ka?** A second student answers his/her question by saying either: **Hai, soo desu,** or **lie, chigaimasu.** If the second student does not get a word in the question, s/he asks the first student to repeat the question by saying **Sumimasen.** **Moo ichi-do itte kudasai.**

7. a. The following expressions are used as greetings. Listen to the instructor and repeat.

Ohayoo gozaimasu. Good morning.

Konnichiwa. Good afternoon OR Good day.

Konbanwa. Good evening.

Sayoonara. Good-bye.

YOUR TASK: listen and repeat

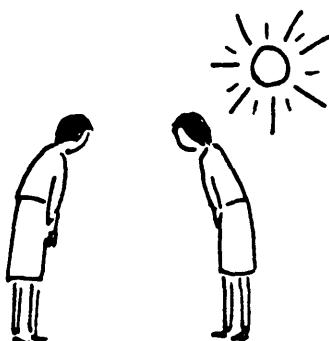
PURPOSE: introduction of greeting expressions

Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

b. Practice the following greetings:

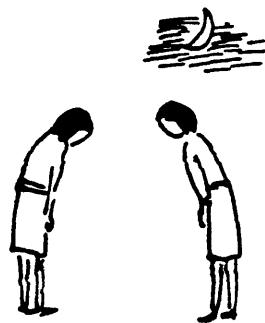
1. A: ...san ohayoo gozaimasu.
B: Ohayoo gozaimasu.

Good morning, Mr. / Ms.
Good morning.



2. A: Konnichiwa.
B: Konnichiwa.

Good afternoon.
Good afternoon.



3. A: Konbanwa.
B: Konbanwa.

Good evening.
Good evening.

4. A: Sayoonara.
B: Sayoonara.

Good-bye.
Good-bye.



8. Classroom expressions

During the course, your instructor will try to communicate with you using Japanese whenever possible. You will find the following classroom expressions helpful for smoother communication. (These expressions will also be useful for communication with Japanese people outside class.)

- a. *Instructor:* **Wakarimasu ka?** *Do you understand?*
Student: **Hai, wakarimasu.** *Yes, I understand.*
OR
lie, wakarimasen. *No, I don't understand.*
- b. *Student:* **Moo ichi-do itte kudasai.** *Please say it again.*

9. Reading numbers

The following is the Japanese numerical system from zero to 99. Practice the pronunciation of the numbers by repeating after the instructor.

0	zero	30	san-juu
1	ichi	31	san-juu ichi
2	ni	32	san-juu ni
3	san		
4	shi/yon	40	yon-juu
5	go	50	go-juu
6	roku	60	roku-juu
7	shichi/nana	70	nana-juu
8	hachi	80	hachi-juu
9	ku/kyuu	90	kyuu-juu
10	juu		
11	juu ichi	91	kyuu-juu ichi
12	juu ni	92	kyuu-juu ni
13	juu san	93	kyuu-juu san
14	juu shi/yon	94	kyuu juu shi/yon
15	juu go	95	kyuu-juu go
16	juu roku	96	kyuu-juu roku
17	juu shichi/nana	97	kyuu-juu shichi
18	juu hachi	98	kyuu-juu hachi
19	juu ku/kyuu	99	kyuu-juu kyuu
20	ni-juu		

VOCABULARY

KOTOBA

Presentation

kore	this (thing)	これ
wa	(follows topic of clause or sentence)	は
nan	what?	なん
desu	is /am /are	です
ka	(indicates a question)	か
watakushi	I	わたくし
Nihon	Japan	にほん
hai	yes	はい
...san	Mr., Mrs., Ms.さん
soo	thus, so, correct	そう
iie	no	いいえ
chigaimasu	wrong, different	ちがいます
sumimasen	excuse me, I'm sorry	すみません
moo	more, again, further	もう
ichi-do	one time, once	いちど
itte kudasai	please say	いってください
Ohayoo gozaimasu	good morning	おはようございます
Konnichiwa	good day, good afternoon	こんにちは
Konbanwa	good evening	こんばんは
Sayoonara	good-bye	さようなら
wakarimasu	understand	わかります
wakarimasen	not understand (negative form of wakarimasu)	わかりません

Notes

sensee teacher, instructor せんせい

Ogenki desu ka? How are you? (lit., Are you well?) おげんきですか
(polite)

Personalized list

This is where you can add words you want to know and have asked for in class.
Try to keep this list fairly short.

Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

Supplementary Material

1. Practice reading the following numbers:

5	8	9	4
3	7	6	2
1	10	13	14
25	28	30	36
37	49	22	47
36	50	51	66
40	53	67	20
19	70	74	45
80	83	38	90
95	59	91	99

2. Reading telephone numbers

Once you know the numbers from zero to nine in Japanese, you can say telephone numbers quite easily. Look at the following:

123-4567 Reading: ichi, ni, san no yon, go, roku, shichi (or nana).

Note: The particle **no** is read in the place where the hyphen is placed in English.

Now read the following telephone numbers:

123-4512	789-0869	335-4783
234-5134	867-9607	912-6452
315-4253	608-9706	756-1863
423-5434	478-2106	404-3177
678-7099	316-2800	539-9530

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. Do the Japanese understand English?

Almost all Japanese study English for six years in junior and senior high school, and many for two or more years in college.

Therefore, almost all Japanese know some English. However, few can use it for conversational purposes.

Although a large number of English words are currently used in Japanese, as we have seen, the pronunciation of these words is Japanized in such a way that they are usually unrecognizable to foreigners (and the same words usually cannot be understood by Japanese when spoken by a native speaker of English).

Therefore, when you need to communicate with a Japanese person in English, try to pick a student or a younger person whose memory of English is likely to be fresh, or write down what you want to say, for many Japanese find it easier to understand English when it is written than when it is spoken.

Generally speaking, most Japanese working at the Embassy or consulates do understand English. However, you will find the Japanese you will learn in this course to be very useful and all Japanese will much appreciate the effort you have made to learn their language.

2. Japanese names

A Japanese name consists of the family name and the given name, in that order. The family name is far more frequently used in Japanese than in English. First names are usually used only among intimates. Ordinarily, the Japanese do not have middle names. Names in Japanese are almost always written in Chinese characters or Kanji, and certain Kanji are frequently used in common Japanese names. Therefore, it will be easier for you to recognize Japanese names if you know these Kanji.

For example, what do the following names have in common?

Yamada Yamanaka Yamamoto Yamashita

The common part *yama* is represented by the Kanji 山, whose meaning is 'mountain.' Most Japanese names are written with two Kanji, and 山 is one of the most common ones.

Another common Kanji used in names is 田 'rice field', which is usually read as *ta* or *da*. Tanaka, Yamada and Nakata are examples of names that contain this Kanji.

Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

Try writing the name Yamada. What do you think it means?

The following are some other common Kanji used in family names:

shita	(下)	below	e.g.	Yamashita	(山下)
naka	(中)	middle	e.g.	Tanaka	(田中)
mura	(村)	village	e.g.	Yamamura	(山村)

Female given names are often recognizable by the presence of **ko** (子) 'child' at the end of the name. Many male names end in **o** (男,夫) 'man,' 'husband,' 'male,' etc.

The following are some common given names that contain these sounds:

female:	Kazuko	Yasuko	Kimiko
male:	Kazuo	Yasuo	Kimio

Needless to say, there are many other given names that do not end in **ko** or **o**.

Although Kanji have their own independent meanings, these meanings are not ordinarily recognized consciously when used in Japanese names. The same is true in English. For example, an English speaker would not think a person named Miller actually runs a mill. Likewise, English speakers do not necessarily think of the color 'green' when they meet a person named Green.

3. Forms of address

When a Japanese addresses a person, s/he usually adds some title after the person's name. Among the titles, **san** is the most common and is used regardless of the person's sex and marital status. It is translated into English as 'Mr.,' 'Mrs.,' or 'Ms.,' depending on the context. San can be used in the following three ways, depending upon the circumstances:

1. Family name + **san** e.g. Tanaka-san
2. First name + **san** e.g. Yasuko-san (female)
3. Family name + first name + **san** e.g. Tanaka Yasuko-san

Of the above three patterns, the first one is the most common among adults. You can use this pattern with your colleagues, your friends' wives, etc.

The second pattern implies an intimate relationship and is used between very close friends and family members. For example, a wife often addresses her husband by his given name plus **san**. Therefore, if an American woman addresses a Japanese man by his given name (just trying to be friendly, for example), she may risk some misunderstanding by him or any other Japanese who happen to be present.

As a foreigner, it would be a good idea for you to use only the first pattern until you have observed enough to find out exactly when it is all right to use another pattern. It is not uncommon for two Japanese who have been friends for many years to address each other by their last names, especially when the friendship was established in adulthood. So the chances are you will be using only the first pattern (family name + **san**) and seldom have occasion to use any other pattern.

The third pattern is the most formal of the three and the least frequently used. It is used when a full name is required (e.g., when an instructor calls the roll in his/her first class).

Sensee, which literally means 'teacher,' can also be used as a term of address. It is used not only with teachers but also with professors, doctors, lawyers, politicians and other professionals. It is usually attached to the family name, e.g., Tanaka-sensee, but can also occur alone, as in the following:

Sensee, ohayoo gozaimasu. *Good morning, Doctor (Professor, etc.).*

Please note that ...san can never be used alone and must always follow a personal name or occupation. When referring to yourself, never add a title to your name, for the title is a way of showing politeness or respect to the listener or the person you are talking about.

4. Greetings

Ohayoo gozaimasu corresponds to 'Good morning' in English. Ohayoo is a casual form of the expression and is often used among friends and colleagues. Konnichiwa corresponds to 'Good afternoon' or 'Good day' in English, and is used between late morning and a little before dusk. Konbanwa corresponds to 'Good evening.' The above expressions are usually used only on the first encounter of the day. Sayoonara (or Sayonara) corresponds to 'Good-bye' in English and implies that the two people will not meet again the same day. Strictly speaking, Japanese does not have an expression for 'How are you?,' although it has the expression Ogenki desu ka?, which literally means 'Are you healthy?'

The difference between the two is that the Japanese expression is said to a person the speaker has not met for some time, whereas in English you can say 'How are you?' to the same person every day. Another difference is that in English it would be a little odd to answer the question 'How are you?' with 'I feel terrible' or 'I have a headache', whereas in Japanese similar responses do not sound strange.

In other words, Ogenki desu ka? functions as a greeting and, at the same time, as an inquiry about one's health, while the English expression primarily functions as a greeting.

The response to Ohayoo gozaimasu, Konnichiwa, and Sayoonara is exactly the same as in English, i.e., you simply repeat the expression.

For Further Study

Notes on pronunciation

You will find Japanese pronunciation fairly simple, for there are fewer sounds in Japanese than in English and English has many of the Japanese sounds. However, certain features are not present in English. They include:

1. Sounds

Vowels: There are only five vowels in Japanese. They are

- a : as in father but much shorter
- i : as in machine but much shorter
- u : as in full but without rounding the lips
- e : as in pet
- o : as in boat but much shorter

Consonants: Most Japanese consonants are pronounced almost the same as English consonants. The following sounds do not exist in English or occur in a different position in a word:

- f: This sound is pronounced between the lips as when you try to blow out a candle but with a little rounding of the lips. It occurs only before u. It may sound more like h to you than f.
- r: The pronunciation of this sound is between the t in water and the d in pudding.
- n: This sound can be a syllabic nasal. 'Syllabic' means that the sound acts like a syllable by itself. (We will talk about Japanese syllables below.) It sounds like n in button. Before k or g it sounds like ng in sing.
- ts: This sound is pronounced like ts in hats and nuts. Unlike English, the sound can occur at the beginning of a word in Japanese.

Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

2. The Syllable

English speakers usually consider consonants and vowels as the basic units of pronunciation. Native speakers of Japanese, however, perceive syllables as the basic units of pronunciation.

Japanese syllables receive approximately equal stress and time no matter how many or how few consonants or vowels they contain. The simplest syllable consists of a single vowel and the most common type is composed of a consonant and a vowel.

You may find the following charts of Japanese syllables convenient. Note that the charts are read across, from left to right. The first symbol in each of the boxes outlined in heavy ink is romanization or romaji, the second is katakana, and the third is hiragana.

BASIC SYLLABLES

a	ア	あ	i	イ	い	u	ウ	う	e	エ	え	o	オ	お
ka	カ	か	ki	キ	き	ku	ク	く	ke	ケ	け	ko	コ	こ
sa	サ	さ	shi	シ	し	su	ス	す	se	セ	せ	so	ソ	そ
ta	タ	た	chi	チ	ち	tsu	ツ	つ	te	テ	て	to	ト	と
na	ナ	な	ni	ニ	に	nu	ヌ	ぬ	ne	ネ	ね	no	ノ	の
ha	ハ	は	hi	ヒ	ひ	fu	フ	ふ	he	ヘ	へ	ho	ホ	ほ
ma	マ	ま	mi	ミ	み	mu	ム	む	me	メ	め	mo	モ	も
ya	ヤ	や				yu	ユ	ゆ				yo	ヨ	よ
ra	ラ	ら	ri	リ	り	ru	ル	る	re	レ	れ	ro	ロ	ろ
wa	ワ	わ										o	ヲ	を
n	ン	ん												

VOICED/VOICELESS COUNTERPARTS OF BASIC SYLLABLES

ga	ガ	が	gi	ギ	ぎ	gu	グ	ぐ	ge	ゲ	げ	go	ゴ	ご
za	ザ	ざ	ji	ジ	じ	zu	ズ	ず	ze	ゼ	ぜ	zo	ゾ	ぞ
da	ダ	だ							de	デ	で	do	ド	ど
pa	パ	ぱ	pi	ピ	ぴ	pu	プ	ぷ	pe	ペ	ペ	po	ポ	ぼ
ba	バ	ば	bi	ビ	び	bu	ブ	ぶ	be	ベ	ベ	bo	ボ	ぼ

Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

PALATALIZED COUNTERPARTS OF BASIC SYLLABLES

kya	キヤ	きや	kyu	キュ	きゅ	kyo	キョ	きょ
gya	ギヤ	ぎや	gyu	ギュ	ぎゅ	gyo	ギョ	ぎょ
sha	シャ	しゃ	shu	シュ	しゅ	sho	ショ	しょ
ja	ジャ	じや	ju	ジュ	じゅ	jo	ジョ	じょ
cha	チャ	ちや	chu	チュ	ちゅ	cho	チョ	ちょ
nya	ニヤ	にや	nyu	ニュ	にゅ	nyo	ニヨ	によ
hya	ヒヤ	ひや	hyu	ヒュ	ひゅ	hyo	ヒョ	ひょ
pya	ピヤ	ぴや	pyu	ピュ	ぴゅ	pyo	ピョ	ぴょ
bya	ビヤ	びや	byu	ビュ	びゅ	byo	ビョ	びょ
mya	ミヤ	みや	myu	ミュ	みゅ	myo	ミョ	みょ
rya	リヤ	りや	ryu	リュ	りゅ	ryo	リョ	りょ

As mentioned above, a single vowel can be a syllable by itself. Vowel combinations like ai, ie, ue and long vowels like aa, ii, uu, ee, and oo should be considered as two syllables.

Not all syllables end in a vowel. The sound n can be a full syllable by itself. Similarly, when two identical consonants occur one after another, the first consonant is considered a full syllable. This is somewhat similar to the double consonant kk in bookkeeper in English.

You don't hear the sound of the first k in the word. It is like a momentary pause or silence with a tensing of the throat. In Japanese, this silence has the time duration of one syllable and is treated as such. For example, the word ikka 'family' is pronounced as i-(tense pause)-ka (three syllables). Other examples of double consonants follow:

- tt: pronounced like tt in hot tea
itten *one point*
- tch: pronounced like tch in hot chocolate
matchi *match*
- ss: pronounced like ss in Jack's son, not like ss in kiss
issei *first generation*
- ssh: pronounced like ssh in Miss Shepherd
isshoo *one's life*
- pp: pronounced like pp in top position
ippai *full*

Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

There is a difference in meaning between words with vowel combinations, long vowels, or double consonants on the one hand, and those with single vowels or single consonants on the other.

In any case, no matter how many vowels or consonants there are in the syllable, be sure to apply this general rule of Japanese pronunciation: ' Each syllable receives approximately equal stress and time.' The following are some examples:

kaa	car	vs.	ka	mosquito
iie	no	vs.	ie	house
uuru	wool	vs.	uru	to sell
eesu	ace	vs.	esu	(the letter) 's'
ooi	many	vs.	oi	nephew
ikka	family	vs.	ika	squid
matchi	match	vs.	machi	town
issei	first generation	vs.	isee	opposite sex
isshoo	one's life	vs.	isho	will, testament

In practicing the above words, you may find it helpful to beat in a metronomic fashion with your hand or a pencil, giving one full beat per syllable.

3. Accent

In English, accent is indicated by stress difference, which means the stressed syllable is pronounced louder than the other syllables.

In Japanese, accent is shown by pitch difference. Thus, in Japanese, instead of pronouncing one syllable louder, one or more syllables of a word are pronounced at a higher pitch than the rest. Japanese has numerous pairs of words which differ only in pitch. Compare:



However, such pitch differences seldom cause confusion in actual situations, for the context often tells you which word is meant by the speaker. You will find that pitch patterns differ according to regional dialects.

READING

KANA

1. スミス Sumisu 8. なは Naha

2. ブラウン Buraun 9. なごや Nagoya

3. コーヒー koohii 10. きょうと Kyooto

4. ビール biiru 11. こうべ Koobe

5. ビル biru 12. おおさか Oosaka

6. ソックス sokkusu 13. とうきょう Tookyoo

7. シャツ shatsu 14. ふくおか Fukuoka

The above are only a few examples of words written in katakana and hiragana. Your instructor will provide you with supplementary materials for additional practice.

Lesson 2

FINDING OUT WHERE YOU ARE

ここはどこですか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- ask where you are
- find out if you are in the place you want to be
- find out if you are at the right station (on a train)
- say 'Thank you'
- ask a Japanese person to repeat and speak more slowly

DIALOGS

KAIWA

Situation 1

Mrs Brown is going shopping in the Ginza. After getting off the subway at the Ginza and walking along the street, she becomes worried, for she is now not sure if she is really in the Ginza

Buraun: **Sumimasen, koko wa Ginza desu ka?** *Excuse me, is this the Ginza?*

Nihonjin: **Iie, Ginza wa mukoo desu.** *No, the Ginza is over in that direction.*

Buraun: **Doomo.** *Thank you.*

Nihonjin: **Doo itashimashite.** *You're welcome.*

Situation 2

Mr Taylor wants to take a taxi from the station at which he got off. He sees several people standing in line in front of the station. He thinks the place is a taxi stand but he is not sure

Teeraa: **Sumimasen, koko wa takushii-noriba desu ka?** *Excuse me, is this a taxi stand?*

Nihonjin: **Ee, soo desu yo.** *Yes, it is*

Teeraa: **Doomo arigatoo.** *Thank you very much.*

Nihonjin: **Doo itashimashite.** *You're welcome.*

Situation 3

Ms. White is taking the subway to Akasaka, where the American Embassy is located. Just as her train is about to stop at a station, she checks with a person nearby to find out if the station is Akasaka

Howaito: **Sumimasen. Koko wa Akasaka desu ka?** *Excuse me, is this Akasaka?*

Nihonjin: **Ha?** *Pardon?*

Howaito: **Koko wa Akasaka desu ka?** *Are we at Akasaka?*

Nihonjin: **Iie, Akasaka wa tsugi desu.** *No, Akasaka is next.*

Howaito: **Doomo.** *Thank you*

Situation 4

Mrs. Smith is in a cab and notices a shopping area where many shops and stores are located. She asks the cab driver what the name of the area is so that she may come back to shop on a later occasion.

- | | |
|--|---|
| Sumisu: Koko wa doko desu ka? | <i>Where is this?</i> |
| Untenshu: Shinjuku desu. | <i>It's Shinjuku.</i> |
| Sumisu: Sumimasen. Moo ichi-do
yukkuri itte kudasai. | <i>Excuse me. Please say it again
slowly.</i> |
| Untenshu: Shinjuku desu. | <i>It's Shinjuku.</i> |
| Sumisu: Doomo arigatoo. | <i>Thank you.</i> |

VOCABULARY

KOTOBA

Dialogs

koko	here	ここ
mukoo	yonder, over there	むこう
doomo	thanks, thank you	どうも
doo itashimashite	you're welcome	どういたしまして
takushii	taxi	タクシー
noriba	(bus) stop, (taxi) stand	のりば
ee	yes (less formal than hai)	ええ
yo	(shows emphasis)	よ
doomo arigatoo	thank you very much	どうもありがとうございます
arigatoo	thank you	ありがとうございます
ha?	pardon? (I don't understand)	は?
tsugi	next	つぎ
doko	where	どこ
yukkuri	slowly	ゆっくり

Practice

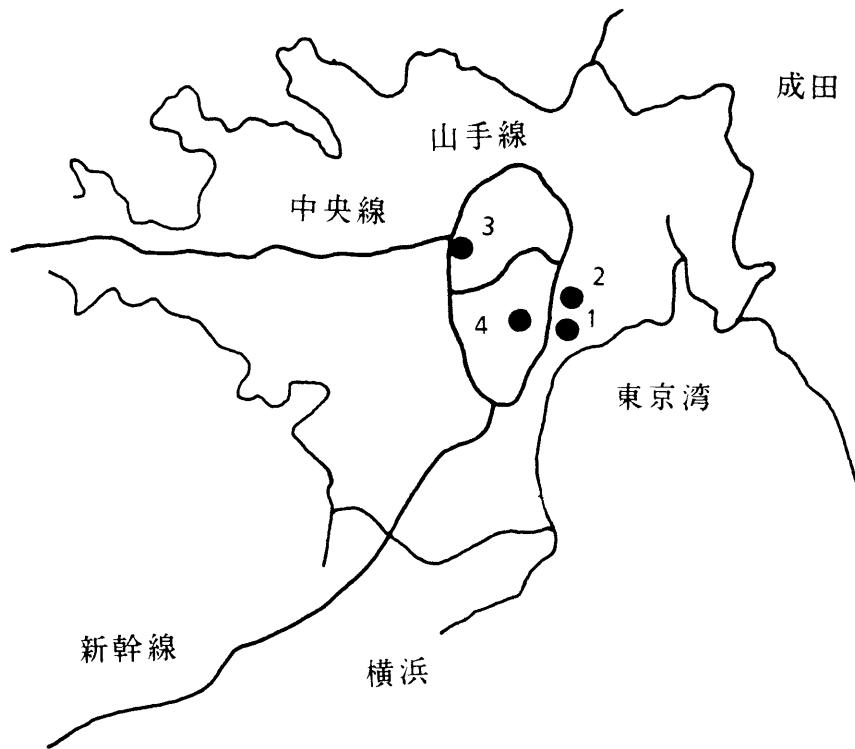
basu	bus	バス
------	-----	----

Place names

Tokyo-to	Tokyo City	東京都
Shinjuku-ku	Shinjuku Ward	新宿区
Marunouchi		丸の内
Akasaka		赤坂
Nihonbashi		日本橋
Shinbashi		新橋
Roppongi		六本木
Ginza		銀座
Ueno		上野

PRACTICE**RENSHUU**

- A.** Here is a map of Tokyo in which some of the main districts are marked. Practice the pronunciation of the names of the districts by repeating after the teacher.



- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| 1. Ginza | 銀座 |
| 2. Marunouchi | 丸の内 |
| 3. Shinjuku | 新宿 |
| 4. Akasaka | (where the American Embassy is located) |

B. Substitution Drill

Sumimasen, koko wa Ginza desu ka?

Akasaka
Shinbashi
Marunouchi
Roppongi
takushii noriba
Ginza
basu noriba
Ueno
doko
Shinjuku

C. Communication Exercise

Example:

Student: Koko wa Ginza desu ka?

Instructor: Hai, soo desu.

Student: Doomo arigatoo.

Instructor: lie, doo itashimashite.

Student's list

takushii noriba
Roppongi
basu noriba
Ueno
Marunouchi
Shinbashi
Shinjuku
Ginza
Akasaka
Nihonbashi

注: 教師は下記の返事をまぜて使用する

1. いいえ。
2. どういたしまして。
3. いいえ、どういたしまして。

D. Communication Exercise

Directions:

Student A selects a photo and asks where s/he is. Student B answers, referring to the place name written under the photo. Student A responds appropriately. Student B acknowledges A's expression of appreciation.

Example:

- Student A: Koko wa doko desu ka?
(showing a photo that s/he has picked up)*
- Student B: Ginza desu.*
- Student A: Doomo arigatoo.*
- Student B: Doo itashimashite.*

E. Communication Exercise

Directions:

Student picks up a photo and asks if it is a particular place. Instructor says 'Pardon me?' Student repeats the same question. Instructor says 'yes' or 'no.' Student thanks instructor and instructor acknowledges student's thanks.

Example:

- Student: Sumimasen, koko wa Ginza desu ka? (showing a photo)*
- Instructor: Ha?*
- Student: Koko wa Ginza desu ka?*
- Instructor: Hai, soo desu.*
- Student: Doomo arigatoo.*
- Instructor: Doo itashimashite.*

Lesson 2 Finding out where you are

F. Communication Exercise

Directions:

Student asks where a place is by pointing to a circle on the map below. Instructor answers where it is. Student asks the instructor to repeat slowly. Instructor repeats slowly. Student writes down the name of the place. Instructor checks if the student got it right.

Example:

- Student: Sumimasen, koko wa doko desu ka? (pointing to a circle)*
Instructor: Ginza desu.
Student: Sumimasen, moo ichi-do itte kudasai.
Instructor: Ginza desu.
Student: (writes it down)
Instructor: (checks the name that the student wrote)



教師用

1. 上野
2. 浅草
3. 日本橋
4. 六本木
5. 新橋

G. Production & Aural Comprehension (教師用スクリプト下記参照)

Directions.

Student asks if s/he is in a particular place. Instructor answers by reading the script. Student checks 'yes' or 'no' on the answer sheet.

Example:

Student: Sumimasen, koko wa Nihonbashi desu ka?
Instructor: lie, koko wa Toranomon desu.
Nihonbashi wa madamada desu yo.
Student: (puts 'X' in the 'no' column)

Student questions

1. Ask whether or not you are in the Ginza.
2. Ask whether or not you are at Marunouchi.
3. Ask whether or not you are in Akasaka.
4. Ask whether or not you are in Shinjuku.
5. Ask whether or not the place is a taxi stand.
6. Ask whether or not the place is a bus stop.

Student answers

教師用スクリプト

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. yes () no () | いいえ、ここは丸の内です。
銀座はもっと向こうの方ですよ。 |
| 2. yes () no () | いいえ、丸の内はこのすと先です。
まっすぐ行けばわかります。 |
| 3. yes () no () | ええ、そうです。赤坂のとっちへ
いらっしゃるんですか。 |
| 4. yes () no () | は? 新宿ですか。
ここは渋谷ですから、三つ目ですよ。 |
| 5. yes () no () | はい、そうです。 |
| 6. yes () no () | いいえ、あそこに見えるのかそうです。 |

Lesson 2 Finding out where you are

H. Look at the following sentences written in Japanese. Can you tell your instructor which parts of the sentences are written in each of the following? (Each is defined later in this lesson.)

1. Kanji
2. Hiragana
3. Katakana

Also find instances of **Furigana**.

とう きょう ほんしゅう の ほぼ ちゅうおう とう きょう わん
東京は本州のほぼ中央にあって、東京湾
に面しています。東西約 90 キロメートル、南北
やく 約 25 キロメートルの細長い形をしています。

The following is a translation of the above sentence. Compare the Japanese sentence with its translation. Can you guess why Arabic numerals are used?

Translation

Tokyo is located in the center of Honshu and faces the Bay of Tokyo. It has a long, narrow shape, extending approximately 90 kilometers from east to west and about 25 kilometers from north to south.

READING**KANJI**

Names of places in Tokyo

1. 銀座 Ginza

2. 新橋 Shinbashi

3. 六本木 Roppongi

4. 赤坂 Akasaka

5. 丸の内 Marunouchi

6. 日本橋 Nihonbashi

7. 新宿 Shinjuku

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. Notes on the Writing System

In modern written Japanese, the following five kinds of symbols are used:

1. Kanji (Chinese characters)
2. Hiragana
3. Katakana
4. Romaji
5. Arabic numerals

About 90% of the characters used in Japanese sentences are Kanji and Hiragana.

1. Kanji

Although Japanese and Chinese are completely separate languages, Japanese adopted written symbols and much vocabulary from Chinese beginning in the 4th or 5th century A.D. These symbols or Chinese characters are called Kanji. Kanji represent both meaning and sound, and it is often the case that one Kanji has more than one reading (or pronunciation) and meaning. There are more than 45,000 Kanji. However, only 3,000 to 4,000 occur in daily use, of which 1,926 have been chosen as the most important. These 1,926 Kanji are the ones used in newspapers, magazines, and school textbooks (about 1,000 are taught in elementary school). In this text, you will learn to read and comprehend some of these Kanji. They are used in some names of persons, places, signs, etc., and knowledge of these Kanji will be useful for you in Japan.

2. Hiragana

Hiragana and Katakana are used to represent syllables (cf. Lesson 1: FOR FURTHER STUDY). The Hiragana were derived from the cursive style of Kanji and are used for native Japanese words, words that are not written in Kanji, etc. As you have seen in Practice 8, Hiragana are also used to show the reading or pronunciation of a Kanji when put above or to the side of the Kanji. This use of Hiragana is called Furigana.

3. Katakana

The Katakana syllabary is also derived from Kanji. It is more angular than Hiragana. The essential function of Katakana is exactly the same as Hiragana, i.e., to represent syllables. However, Katakana are mainly used for words of foreign origin and in telegrams. Thus, when you write your name in Japanese, you should write it in Katakana.

4. Romaji (*Roman letters*)

Since Romaji is taught in elementary school, most Japanese know it. However, its use in Japanese is very limited.

You will find Romaji in

- some road signs, station signs, store signs, etc
- some abbreviated foreign words,
e.g., PR, CM (*commercial*), YMCA

5 Arabic numerals and Kanji numerals

Numerals in Japanese are written in Kanji or Arabic figures. Kanji numerals are used when sentences are written vertically, while Arabic figures are used when they are written horizontally. (Scientific formulas are written only in Arabic numerals.) The following are examples of the usage of Arabic Numerals

1	$1 + 2 = 3$	
2	46 センチ	46 centimeters
3	11 月 27 日	November 27th
4	494 - 3586	(telephone number)

For reference, the Kanji numerals for examples 2 - 4 above are given below

2.	3.	4.
四	十	四
十	一	九
六	月	四
七	二	一
八	十	三
九	七	五
セ	日	八
ン		六
チ		

2. Particles

In Japanese, the roles participants play in actions and the relationships of words in sentences are usually indicated by markers called particles. In this lesson there are three particles, *wa*, *ka* and *yo*.

The particle *wa* is a marker that indicates that the preceding word(s) or phrase is the topic of the sentence, i.e., the thing(s) or person(s) being talked about. For example, in Lesson 1, we studied the expression

Watakushi wa (name) desu. *I'm (name)*

The particle *wa* here indicates that the speaker is talking about him/herself (*watakushi* 'I') and makes the statement about the topic (him/herself) that his/her name is X.

Lesson 2 Finding out where you are

Another particle taken up in this lesson is the particle *ka*, which indicates that the sentence preceding it is a question. We will have more to say about this particle below.

The third particle *yo*, like *ka*, is a member of the small set of particles that occur at the end of a sentence. They express the speaker's attitude toward the contents of the preceding statement. The function of *yo* is to call the hearer's attention to the contents of the statement. Thus, the word is often translated as 'I tell you' or 'I assure you.' This particle is frequently used. However, since it carries a subtle nuance without changing the basic meaning of the statement, it will take some time to really get a 'feeling' for how to use it. Therefore, at present, just try to understand the basic function of *yo* when you hear it, but don't feel you must be able to use it.

3. Ka as a question marker

One of the areas where English and Japanese are not alike is the different ways in which question sentences are formed. Japanese is much simpler in this area, for all you need to do is add the word *ka* at the end of a statement. For example, in Lesson 1 we studied the expression *Kore wa Tokyo desu.*, 'This is Tokyo', in locating a city (or area) on a map. If we place *ka* at the end of this sentence, we get a question sentence *Kore wa Tokyo desu ka?*, 'Is this Tokyo?', which we also studied in Lesson 1. Try making a similar question, 'Is this place the Ginza?', from *Koko wa Ginza desu*, 'This place is the Ginza' (The word *koko* means 'this place'. We will talk more about this word below.)

(Answer Koko wa Ginza desu ka?)

4. **Koko wa (place name) desu ka? and Koko wa doko desu ka?**

When you want to make sure you know where you are or when you want to ask where you are, you can use the following two questions:

Koko wa Ginza desu ka ?	<i>Is this place the Ginza?</i> <i>(Am I in the Ginza?)</i>
Koko wa doko desu ka?	<i>Where is this place?</i> <i>(Where am I?)</i>

As we studied in Lesson 1, responses to the first question usually begin with *hai* 'yes' (ee has the same meaning but is less formal than *hai*), or *iie* 'no.' Thus, if you listen for these words in the responses given by a Japanese person, you can at least guess pretty accurately whether the person answered your question negatively or affirmatively. (Of course, this does not mean that Japanese people will always use one of these words in their answers.)

As for the answer to the second question, the Japanese usually say *(place name) desu*, as in the following example:

Koko wa doko desu ka?	<i>Where is this place?</i>
Shinjuku desu.	<i>Shinjuku.</i>

The main thing to remember when you ask a question with a word like *doko* 'where' (or 'who' or 'when', which come up later) is that the Japanese sentence structure (word order) is

not the same as the English word order. That is, a question like **doko** 'where' will usually come in the middle of the sentence, not at the beginning.

5. **Moo ichido yakkuri itte kudasai.** 'Please say it again slowly'

To any person who is not fully familiar with a language, native speaker speech sounds very fast. This is exactly what you will experience in Japan. Therefore, it will often be important for you to be able to ask the Japanese to repeat and slow down. You will find the expression **Moo ichi-do yakkuri itte kudasai** very helpful. The following is a rough sketch of the way the expression is constructed:

Moo ichi-do yakkuri itte kudasai.
one more time slowly please say

When you want to say 'Please speak slowly,' you can use the following expression:

Yakkuri itte kudasai. *Please say slowly.*

Likewise, when you want to say 'Please say it again,' you can use the following expression:

Moo ichi-do itte kudasai. *Please say it again.*

6. **How to say 'thank you' in Japanese**

One of the most common ways to say 'thank you' in Japanese is to use the expression **Arigatoo**. If you want to be a little more polite, you can say **Doomo arigatoo** (**doomo** is an intensifier). In a less formal situation, **doomo** can be used alone as an expression of gratitude.

7. **Sumimasen** 'Excuse me,' 'I'm sorry,' or 'Thank you'

In English, when you address a stranger in order to elicit some information (getting directions, for example), or when you want to get the attention of a clerk at a store, you first say 'Excuse me.' A comparable Japanese expression used for these purposes is **Sumimasen**. This expression can also be used when you want to apologize. For example, you can use it when you bump into a person on the street.

Another usage of this expression, which seems to be closely related to the way Japanese think, is to show gratitude. In Japanese, one way to show gratitude for a favor done for you is to say something like 'I'm sorry for the trouble you took for me,' **Doomo sumimasen**. We will study more about this usage in later lessons.

会話

Situation 1

ブラウン: すみません。ここは銀座ですか。
日本人: いいえ、銀座は向こうです。
ブラウン: どうも。
日本人: どういたしまして。

Situation 2

テーラー: すみません。ここはタクシー乗り場ですか。
日本人: ええ。そうです。
テーラー: どうもありがとうございます。
日本人: どういたしまして。

Situation 3

ホワイト: すみません。ここは赤坂ですか。
日本人: は?
ホワイト: ここは赤坂ですか。
日本人: いいえ、赤坂は次です。
ホワイト: どうも。

Situation 4

スマス: ここはどこですか。
運転手: 新宿です。
スマス: すみません。もう一度、ゆっくり言ってください。
運転手: 新宿です。
スマス: どうもありがとうございます。

Lesson 3

IDENTIFYING OBJECTS

これはなんですか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- find out the name of a building
- find out the name of a food dish
- respond appropriately to the information you receive
- order a dish at a restaurant by using words like 'this', 'that', and 'that one over there, please'
- find out if the train you indicate (on a platform) is the one you want to get on
- say that you don't speak Japanese well
- ask someone to give the Japanese equivalent of an English word

DIALOGS

KAIWA

Situation 1

Ms. Jones enters a restaurant and sees someone eating something that looks appealing to her. She doesn't know the name of the dish but would like to order the same thing.

Joonzu: (pointing to the dish)
Are wa nan desu ka?

What's that over there?

Ueetoresu: Sukiyaki desu.

It's Sukiyaki.

Joonzu: Jaa, are onegai shimasu.

Then I'd like to have some of that please.

Ueetoresu: Hai, kashikomarimashita.

Certainly.

Situation 2

Ms. Kelly is on a platform waiting for a Yamanote Line train. After a short while, she sees a train coming in. She checks with a Japanese person standing nearby to make sure it's her train.

Kerii: Sumimasen. Are wa Yamanote-sen desu ka?

Excuse me. Is that the Yamanote-line over there?

Nihonjin: Iie, Yamanote-sen ja arimasen. Yamanote-sen wa san-bansen desu yo.

No, it's not the Yamanote-line train. The Yamanote-line comes on Track number 3.

Kerii: Sumimasen. Yoku wakarimasen.

I'm sorry. I don't understand very well.

Nihonjin: Soo desu ka. Komatta na... No Yamanote-sen.

Oh. What shall I say... That is not the Yamanote-line.

Kerii: Aa, wakarimasu. Domo arigatoo.

Oh, I see. Thank you very much.

Nihonjin: Doo itashimashite.

You're welcome.

Situation 3

Mr. Davis is walking back to the American Embassy. He looks for the Hotel Okura, a tall building near the Embassy, as a landmark. He sees a tall building and asks a passerby if it is the hotel. He finds out it is not. The passerby points out a different building which is the Okura.

- | | | |
|------------------|--|---|
| <i>Deibisu:</i> | Sumimasen. Are wa Okura Hoteru desu ka? | <i>Excuse me. Is that Hotel Okura over there?</i> |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | Iie, Okura Hoteru wa are desu.
<i>(pointing to the building)</i> | <i>No, Hotel Okura is that one over there</i> |
| <i>Deibisu:</i> | Aa, soo desu ka.
Doomo arigatoo. | <i>Oh</i>
<i>Thank you very much.</i> |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | Doo itashimashite. | <i>You're welcome.</i> |

Situation 4

Ms. Robinson is walking along the street in the American Center area. She comes across an old, traditional Japanese building which looks like a shrine and asks a passerby what it is. She wants to be sure she can remember the word for shrine.

- | | | |
|------------------|--|---|
| <i>Robinson:</i> | Sumimasen. Kore wa nan desu ka? | <i>Excuse me. What is this?</i> |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | Jinja desu yo. | <i>It's a shrine.</i> |
| <i>Robinson:</i> | Sumimasen. Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasen.
Moo ichi-do itte kudasai. | <i>I'm sorry. I don't understand Japanese very well.</i>
<i>Please say it again.</i> |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | Jinja desu. | <i>It's a shrine.</i> |
| <i>Robinson:</i> | Soo desu ka. Doomo arigatoo. | <i>I see. Thank you very much</i> |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | Doo itashimashite. | <i>Don't mention it.</i> |

VOCABULARY**KOTOBA****Dialogs**

are	that (thing over there)	あれ
sukiyaki	sukiyaki (a beef and vegetable dish)	すきやき
jaa	well (then)	じゃあ
onegai shimasu	(may I have it) please	おねがいします
kashikomarimashita	certainly, of course (response to a request)	かしこまりました
Yamanote-sen	Yamanote-line train	やまのてせん
ja arimasen	am /is /are not	じゃありません
...bansen	(track) numberばんせん
yoku	well	よく
Komatta na	It's a problem; I don't know what to do /say	こまったな
aa	Oh!	ああ
jinja	shrine	じんじゃ
Nihongo	Japanese language	にほんご
ga	(subject marker)	が

Practice

tenpura	tempura (deep fried food)	てんぷら
teriyaki	teriyaki (meat broiled with teriyaki sauce)	てりやき
katsudon	katsudon (a bowl of rice topped with a fried pork cutlet)	かつどん
tendon	tendon (a bowl of rice topped with fried prawns)	てんどん
(o)sashimi	sashimi (sliced raw fish)	(お)さしみ
raamen	ramen (Chinese noodles)	ラーメン

soba	soba (buckwheat noodles)	そば
(o)sushi	(a small oblong piece of vinegared rice topped with raw fish, shellfish, etc. Commonly called nigiri .)	(お)すし

Notes

sore	that (thing)	それ
de	by means of	で

Japanese objects

kimono	Japanese native clothing	きもの
obi	Japanese sash used for kimono	おび
(o)hashi	chopsticks	(お)はし
origami	folding paper	おりがみ
(o)kane	money	(お)かね
soroban	abacus	そろばん
uchiwa	Japanese fan	うちわ
geta	wooden clogs	げた
ningyoo	doll	にんぎょう
furoshiki	square cloth for wrapping things	ふろしき

Loan words

fuirumu	film	フィルム
kamera	camera	カメラ
terebi	television	テレビ
miruku	milk	ミルク
rekoodo	record	レコード
aisukuriimu	ice cream	アイスクリーム
rajio	radio	ラジオ
tabako	tobacco, cigarettes	たばこ
uisukii	whisky	ウイスキー
seetaa	sweater	セーター
biru	building	ビル

Lesson 3 Identifying objects

Personalized list -- favorite food names

PRACTICE

RENSHUU

A. Transformation Drill

Kore wa sukiyaki desu ka? → Sore wa sukiyaki desu ka?

(o)sashimi
raamen
tempura
nan
teriyaki
katsudon
Yamanote-sen

B. Communication Exercise

Directions:

Goal: Find out the names of the objects on the table or in the photos.

Steps: (1) Pick an object and choose the name for it from the list below.

(2) Pointing to the object, ask the instructor if the object is that item by saying: Kore/sore/are wa (*item*) desu ka? You must choose the correct word among kore, sore and are, depending on the position of the object, i.e., whether it is near you or near the instructor, etc.

Student's list

kimono	uchiwa	soroban
origami	furoshiki	okane
(o)hashi	geta	obi

Lesson 3 Identifying objects

C. Dialog Exercise

Directions:

The student asks what the name of a building is, using the expression **Are wa nan desu ka?** The instructor answers. The student says that s/he doesn't understand Japanese very well and asks the instructor to repeat.

Example:

Student: **Are wa nan desu ka?**

Instructor: **Okura Hoteru desu.**

Student: **Sumimasen. Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasen.
Moo ichi-do itte kudasai.**

Instructor: **Okura Hoteru desu.**

注: 教師は答をえた後、出来ればその場所、建物の写真を見せること。

- 教師用リスト
- | | | |
|------------|-------------|---------|
| 1. オークラホテル | 2. 日枝(ひえ)神社 | 3. 皇居 |
| 4. 国会議事堂 | 5. 霞が関ビル | 6. 国立劇場 |

D. Communication Exercise

注 教師はこの練習問題を始める前、日本の食べ物について一応説明しておく。

Directions.

The student asks what a particular dish is, pointing to an item on the menu below. The instructor answers. The student orders the food about which s/he has asked. If the student doesn't think s/he'd like it, s/he tries another item.

Example:

*Student: Kore wa nan desu ka?
(pointing to the item on the menu)*

Instructor: Sukiyaki desu.

*Student: Aa, soo desu ka.
Kore wa nan desu ka?
(pointing to another name item on the menu)*

Instructor: Katsudon desu.

Student: Jaa, kore onegai shimasu

<u>メニュー</u>	
すきやき	2,500
おすし	1,500
おさしみ	1,200
てんぷら	1,000
てりやき	900
かつどん	850
てんどん	700
ラーメン	550

Lesson 3 Identifying objects

E. Communication Game 注: 教師は下記参照

Directions:

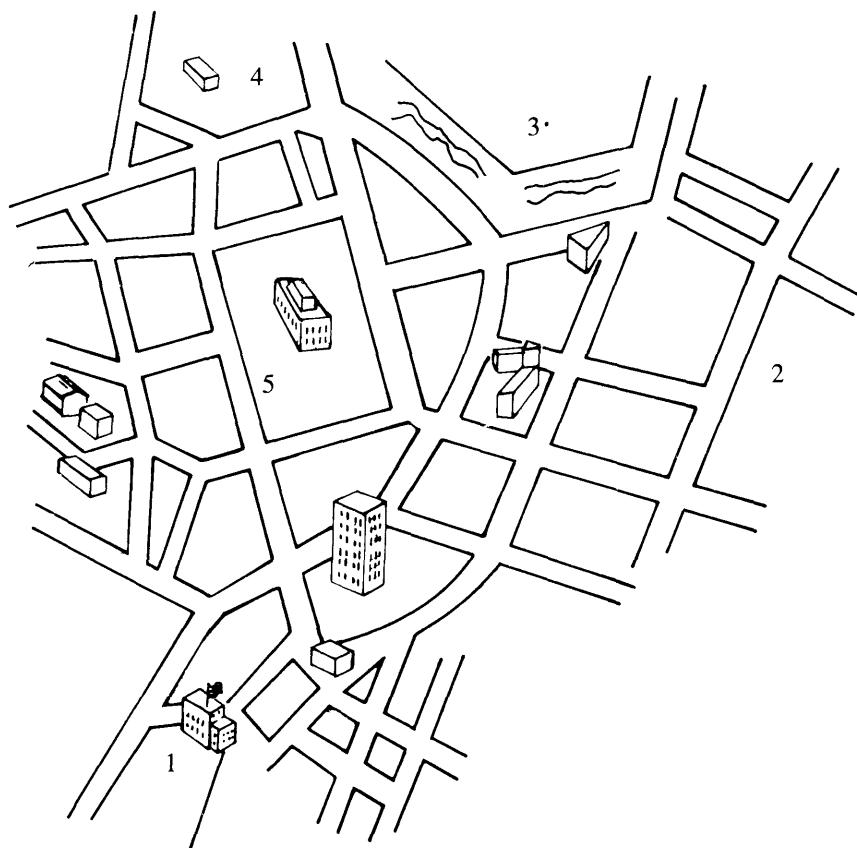
The student chooses the name of a building from the map of the Embassy area and asks what it is called in Japanese. The instructor gives the answers.

Example:

Student: 'Hie Shrine' wa Nihongo de nan desu ka?
Instructor: 'Hie jinja' desu.

Student's list

1. American Embassy
2. Hibiya Park
3. Imperial Palace
4. National Theater
5. National Diet



1. アメリカ大使館
2. 日比谷公園
3. 皇居
4. 国立劇場
5. 国会議事堂

F. Production & Comprehension

Think of two things you would like to know the Japanese for. Use (thing) wa Nihongo de nan desu ka? to find out.

READING

KANJI

The names of buildings and places:

1. 日比谷公園 Hibiya Kooen Hibiya Park
2. 国立劇場 Kokuritsu Gekijoo National Theater
3. 大使館 taishikan embassy
4. 神社 jinja shrine
5. 浅草 Asakusa (*place name in Tokyo*)

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. 'this' and 'that'

When you refer or point to an object (or person), you often use 'this' and 'that' in English. Japanese has the following three words:

kore	<i>used for an object near the speaker (comparable to 'this')</i>
sore	<i>used for an object near the listener (comparable to 'that')</i>
are	<i>used for an object away from the speaker and listener (comparable to 'that (one) over there')</i>

When you want to know what the object you have in mind is called, you can ask the following question:

Kore/sore/are wa nan desu ka? *What is this/that/that over there?*

2. How to say 'I'll take it' or 'I'll have it'

When you want to order a dish or buy some merchandise, you can use the following expression:

Jaa, sore onegai shimasu. *Well, then, that one please*

The word **jaa** means 'well (then)' and **onegai shimasu** literally means 'I make a request (for)' and is comparable to 'please' in English.

In place of **sore** in the above expression, you can use names of various objects or dishes. For example, when you want to order **sukiyaki**, you can say

Sukiyaki onegai shimasu.

3. How to indicate acknowledgement

In English, you can sometimes say 'Is that right?' or the like to acknowledge that you have heard what another said without necessarily agreeing. Look at the following:

Aa, soo desu ka? *Oh, is that so?/I see /Good*

The expression looks like a question but is really an acknowledgement. It is used when you want to indicate that you've understood what was said.

Lesson 3 Identifying objects

4. 'I don't understand Japanese well.'

It may happen that you need to tell a Japanese person that you don't speak Japanese very well. You can use the following expression for this purpose.

(Yoku) Nihongo ga wakarimasen. *I don't understand Japanese (well).*

OR

Nihongo ga(yoku) wakarimasen.

In Lesson 1 you learned that wakarimasu means 'to understand.' The word wakarimasen in the above sentence is the negative form of wakarimasu.

5. How to find out the name of an object in Japanese

When you want to find out the name of an object in Japanese, you can use the following expression:

... wa Nihongo de nan desu ka? *What is . . . in Japanese?*

For example, when you want to know the Japanese word for 'radio', you can say:

'Radio' wa Nihongo de nan desu ka? *What is 'radio' in Japanese?*

You can use the above question pattern whenever you want to ask the instructor Japanese words for objects you may need to know.

6. Particles ga and de

The particle **ga** ordinarily indicates that the preceding word or phrase is the subject of the sentence. Thus it is sometimes called the 'subject marker.' You will sometimes see **ga** used with words that are not translated into English as subjects, e.g., **Nihongo ga wakarimasen**, which is normally translated as '*I don't understand Japanese.*' What this really means is '*Japanese is not understandable to me,*' so **ga** really does mark the subject in this sentence as well.

The particle **de** has several meanings. The meaning in this lesson is '*in,*' as in **Nihongo de 'in Japanese.'** Later (Lesson 10), we will see it also has the meaning of '*by means of,*' as in **basu de 'by bus.'**

会話

Situation 1

ジョーンス: あれは何ですか。
ウエイトレス: すきやきてす。
ジョーンス: じゃあ、あれお願ひします。
ウエイトレス: はい、かしこまりました。

Situation 2

ケリー: すみません。あれは山の手線ですか。
日本人: いいえ、山の手線じゃありません。
山の手線は三番線ですよ。
ケリー: すみません。よくわかりません。
日本人: そうですか。困ったな…… ノー・山の手線。
ケリー: ああ、わかります。とうもありがとうございます。
日本人: どういたしまして。

Situation 3

ティヒス: すみません。あれはオークラホテルですか。
日本人: いいえ、オークラホテルは あれてす。
ティヒス: ああ、そうですか。とうもありがとうございます。
日本人: どういたしまして。

Situation 4

ロビンソン: すみません。これは何ですか。
日本人: 神社ですよ。
ロビンソン: すみません。日本語がよくわかりません。
もう一度言って下さい。
日本人: 神社です。
ロビンソン: そうですか。どうもありがとうございます。
日本人: どういたしまして。

Lesson 3 Identifying objects

Lesson 4

ASKING ABOUT THE AVAILABILITY OF MERCHANDISE OR SERVICES

アスビルンありますか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- find out if a store or shop carries the merchandise you want**
- find out if a restaurant serves the dish you want**
- find out if a place you want to go to is nearby**
- find out if a hotel has any vacant rooms**
- find out if there is a person available who can speak English**

DIALOGS

KAIWA

Situation 1

While walking in the street, Mrs. Brown suddenly gets a headache, so she goes into a pharmacy nearby and asks if they have aspirin.

Buraun:	Sumimasen. Asupirin arimasu ka?	<i>Excuse me. Do you have aspirin?</i>
Nihonjin:	Hai, gozaimasu.	<i>Yes, we do.</i>

Situation 2

Mr. Brown goes to a snack bar to eat lunch. When he is waited on, he asks whether they serve spaghetti.

Ueetoresu:	Irasshaimase.	<i>Welcome.</i>
Buraun:	Supagetti arimasu ka?	<i>Do you have spaghetti?</i>
Ueetoresu:	Hai, gozaimasu.	<i>Yes, we do.</i>
Buraun:	Jaa, onegai shimasu.	<i>Then, I'd like to have some.</i>

Situation 3

Mrs. Taylor is at a shopping area her friend recommended. She wants to go to a department store. Although she is quite sure there is at least one department store nearby, she can't find it, so she asks a Japanese person walking in the street.

Teeraa:	Sumimasen. Kono chikaku ni depaato ga arimasu ka?	<i>Excuse me. Is there a department store near here?</i>
Nihonjin:	Ee, tsugi no kado no migi ni arimasu.	<i>Yes, it's on your right at the next corner.</i>
Teeraa:	Sumimasen. Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasen. Koko ni kaite kudasai.	<i>I'm sorry. I don't understand Japanese very well. Could you please draw (a map) here?</i>
Nihonjin:	Ee, ii desu yo.	<i>Certainly.</i>



Lesson 4 Asking about the availability of merchandise or services

Situation 4

Mr. Evans is in a nearby city. Since he didn't have time to arrange for accommodations beforehand, he has to find a place to stay. He goes to a hotel to see if they have a vacant room. After he finds out that a room is available, the clerk begins to ask him a question he can't understand.

<i>Ebansu:</i>	Sumimasen. Heya ga arimasu ka?	<i>Excuse me. Do you have a room available?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Hai, gozaimasu. Ohitori-sama desu ka?	<i>Yes, we do. Are you alone?</i>
<i>Ebansu:</i>	Sumimasen. Eego ga wakaru hito wa imasen ka?	<i>I'm sorry. Is there anyone who understands English?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Chotto omachi kudasai. A, puriuzu ueeto a moomento.	<i>Wait a moment, please. Oh, please wait a moment.</i>

VOCABULARY**KOTOBA****Dialogs**

arimasu	there is /are, have (used with objects but not people)	あります
gozaimasu	there is /are, have (deferential)	ございます
kono chikaku	near here, close by	このちかく
ni	at, in, to	に
depaato	department store	デパート
no	of (indicates that word before no describes word after no)	の
kado	corner	かど
tsugi no kado	next corner	つきのかど
migi	right (side)	みき
kaite kudasai	please write	かいてくたさい
kaite	write, draw (TE form of kakimasu)	かいて
kudasai	please (usually used after TE form of a verb)	くたさい
ii	good, O.K.	いい
heya	room	へや
hitori	one person, single	
(o)hitori-sama	one person, single(polite)	(お)ひとりさま
...sama	polite form of ...san	. さま
Eego ga wakaru hito	a person who understands English	えいこかわかるひと
Eego	English (language)	えいこ
wakaru	understand (dictionary form of wakarimasu)	わかる
hito	person	ひと
imasen	there is not/are not (people or animals)	いません
chotto	a little	ちょっと
omachi kudasai	please wait (polite)	おまちくたさい

Practice

kissaten	tea parlor, coffee shop	きっさてん
irasshaimase	welcome (polite)	いらっしゃいませ
michi	street	みち
massugu	straight	まっすぐ
itte	go (TE form of ikimasu)	いって
hidari	left	ひだり
hidari ni magaru	turn left	ひだりにまがる
magaruto	after having turned	まがると
resutoran	restaurant	レストラン
supagetti	spaghetti	スパゲッティ
bifuteki	beefsteak	ビフテキ
karee-raisu	curried rice	カレーライス
(o)sake	sake	(お)さけ
sugu	soon, right there	すぐ
mo	also, too	も
soo desu ka	I see.	そうですか

Notes

imasu	there is/are (for people or animals)	います
chizu	map	ちず

Personalized list

PRACTICE

RENSHUU

A. Substitution Drill

Asupirin (ga) arimasu ka?

karee-raisu
fuirumu
sandoitchi
biiru
heya
koohii

B. Substitution Drill

Kono chikaku ni depaato ga arimasu ka?

takushii noriba
resutoran
kissaten
basu noriba
depaato
hoteru

C. Listening Activity

注: 教師用スクリプト次ページ参照

Directions:

The student asks whether a particular item is available, referring to the list below. The instructor gives an answer. The student indicates on the answer sheet below whether the item is available or not.

Example:

Student: Asupirin ga arimasu ka?

Instructor: Hai, gozaimasu.

Student: (Check X in parentheses next to yes)

Lesson 4 Asking about the availability of merchandise or services

Student's list

1. **asupirin**
2. **biiru**
3. **bifuteki**
4. **heya**
5. **fuirumu**
6. **tabako**
7. **koohii**

Answer sheet

- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| () yes | () no |
| () yes | () no |
| () yes | () no |
| () yes | () no |
| () yes | () no |
| () yes | () no |
| () yes | () no |

教師用スクリプト

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 はい、こさいます。 | 5 はい、「桜」ですか、「富士」ですか。 |
| 2 はい、「きりん」で
よろしいですか。 | 6 申し訳ございません。たはこは置いて
こさいません。 |
| 3 申し訳ございませんか、
ヒフテキはこさいません。 | 7 いいえ、お茶しかございません。 |
| 4 あいにくですか、今日は備員で
一つも部屋はこさいません。 | |

D. Question and Answer Activity

注 教師は下記スクリプト参照

Directions

The student asks whether or not a place is located in the vicinity. The instructor answers. The student checks if the answer from the instructor is yes, no, or don't know.

Example:

- Student: Sumimasen. Kono chikaku ni depaato ga arimasu ka?*
Instructor: Ee, sugu soko ni arimasu yo.
Student: (Check yes on the answer sheet.)

Student's list

1. **resotoran**
2. **kissaten**
3. **takushii noriba**
4. **depaato**
5. **basu noriba**

Answer sheet

- | | | |
|-----------|----------|------------------|
| () yes | () no | () don't know |
| () yes | () no | () don't know |
| () yes | () no | () don't know |
| () yes | () no | () don't know |
| () yes | () no | () don't know |

教師用スクリプト

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. はい、あれかそうです。 | 4. ええ、あの角の左にあります。 |
| 2. さあ、私もわかりません。 | 5. ハス乗り場ですか。この近くには
ありませんよ。 |
| 3. ええ、すぐそこにあります。 | |

Lesson 4 Asking about the availability of merchandise or services

E. Ordering Practice

Directions:

The instructor greets the student. The student asks about the availability of food or a beverage, referring to the list below. The instructor says yes. The student orders the food or beverage s/he asked about.

Example:

Instructor: Irasshaimase.
Student: Biiru arimasu ka?
Instructor: Hai, gozaimasu.
Student: Jaa, onegai shimasu.

Student's list

(o)sushi
biiru
aisukuriimu
(o)sake
karee-raisu
bifuteki
kokakoora

F. Practice in Getting Directions

注: 教師用スクリプト次ページ参照

Directions:

The student asks whether or not the place on the list is located in the vicinity. The instructor gives an answer by referring to his/her script. The student asks the instructor to draw a map if the answer is yes (example 1), otherwise s/he says: Soo desuka? Domo. (example 2)

Example 1:

Student: Sumimasen, kono chikaku ni depaato ga arimasu ka?
Instructor: Ee, kono michi o massugu itte, tsugi no kado o hidari ni magaruto sugu desu.
Student: Sumimasen. Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasen.
Koko ni chizu o kaite kudasai.
Instructor: Ee, ii desu yo.

Example 2:

Student: Sumimasen, kono chikaku ni depaato ga arimasu ka?
Instructor: Saa, watashi mo wakarimasen ga . . .
Student: Soo desu ka. Domo.

Student's list

basu noriba
resutoran
hoteru
takushii noriba
kissaten
depaato

教師用スクリプト

1. ありますよ。この道を真っ直ぐ行って、次の信号で左に曲がって、
それから100メートル位のところですよ。
2. は？ レストランですか。ああ、この先の四つ角の左にあります。
3. さあ、私もわかりません。
4. タクシー乗り場？ ええと…… ああ、あのホテルの前にありますよ。
5. 喫茶店ねえ…… さあ、この近くにはありませんねえ。
6. はい、この道をまっすぐ行って、二つ目の角を左に曲がるとすぐです。
大きい建物ですから、すぐわかりますよ。.

READING

KANJI

1. のりば noriba a (bus) stop, (taxi) stand
2. 右 migi right
3. 左 hidari left
4. 駅 eki a (train) station

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. How to ask about the existence of an object

The word arimasu means 'exist,' and this word can be used when you want to ask about the existence or availability of objects or merchandise. Look at the following.

... ga arimasu ka?

Is there ... ?

The above expression can mean '*Do you carry ... ?*' or '*Do you have ... ?*' Thus, in a pharmacy, if you want to ask whether they have aspirin, you can say:

Asupirin ga arimasu ka?

Do you have aspirin?

Likewise, when you want to ask if a hotel has a room available, you can say:

Heya ga arimasu ka?

Do you have a room (available)?

Please note that when you are talking about people, you should use imasu, not arimasu.

Example:

Kono heyā ni Amerikajin ga imasu ka? *Is there an American in this room?*

2. How to ask about the location of an object, store, etc.

The expression kono chikaku ni means '*in this vicinity*' or '*near here*.' You can use it when you ask about the location of an object, store, etc., as in the following example

Kono chikaku ni depaato ga arimasu ka?

Is there a department store near here?

3. How to find a person who understands English

A very good way to get help is to find a person who understands English. You can use the following expression for this purpose

Eego ga wakaru hito wa imasen ka?

Isn't there a person who understands English?

The word wakaru is a form of the verb wakarimasu, '*understand*' While wakarimasu is used at the end of a sentence (in polite speech), wakaru is used in the middle of a sentence, as in the above example. The word hito means 'person,' and the phrase Eego ga wakaru hito means '*a person who understands English*.' The word imasen is the negative form of imasu.

Lesson 4 Asking about the availability of merchandise or services

4. How to say 'Please write it here'

In getting directions to a place, you may want to ask a Japanese person to draw you a map. You can use the following expression for this purpose:

Chizu o kaite kudasai.

Draw me a map, please.

The word *kudasai* at the end of the above sentence is comparable to '*please*' in English, and is used when you ask a person to do something for you. The phrase *kaite kudasai* means '*please write down*' or '*please draw*.' Thus, when you want to say something like '*Please draw a map here*,' you can say:

Koko ni chizu o kaite kudasai.

Please draw a map here.

You may wonder what the difference is between . . . *onegai shimasu*, which you learned in Lesson 3, and . . . *kudasai*, because both can mean '*please*' in English. *Onegai shimasu* is used when you place an order at a restaurant, order some merchandise at a store, etc. while . . . *kudasai* is used when you ask somebody to do something for you.

Compare the expressions in 1 and 2 below.

1. Are onegai shimasu.

That one, please.

Sukiyaki onegai shimasu.

Sukiyaki, please.

2. Chizu o kaite kudasai.

Draw (me) a map, please.

Koko ni kaite kudasai.

Write (it) here, please.

As the above examples indicate, *onegai shimasu* is used after some objects (e.g., *are* and *sukiyaki* in the above sentences), while *kudasai* is used after a word that indicates some action (e.g., *kaite* '*write/draw*' in the above sentences).

会話

Situation 1

フラン
日本人

すみません。アスピリン ありますか。
はい、こさいます。

Situation 2

フラン
日本人
フラン

スパケノティ ありますか。
はい、こさいます。
しゃ、お願いします。

Situation 3

テラー
日本人
テラー
日本人

すみません。この近くにテパートかありますか。
ええ、次の角の右にあります。
すみません。日本語かよくわかりません。
ここに書いてください。
ええ、いいですよ。

Situation 4

エハンス
日本人
エハンス
日本人

すみません。部屋かありますか。
はい、こさいます。お一人様ですか。
すみません。英語かわかる人はいませんか。
ちょっとお待ちください。
あ、プリース ウエイト ア モーメント。

Lesson 4 Asking about the availability of merchandise or services

Lesson 5

INTRODUCTIONS

どうぞよろしく。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- find out if a person is the one you have in mind
- state your name and where you work
- introduce yourself and your spouse after being introduced to a Japanese person
- confirm the name of a person to whom you are introduced
- cope with a compliment of the sort Japanese people often make, like 'You speak Japanese well' (even if you only know a few sentences)

DIALOGS

KAIWA

Situation 1

*Mr Brown is in his office at the Embassy expecting Ms Suzuki, whom he has never met
He sees a Japanese woman looking for someone*

Buraun:	Shitsurei desu ga, Suzuki-san desu ka?	<i>Excuse me, are you Ms Suzuki?</i>
Suzuki:	Hai, soo desu.	<i>Yes, I am</i>
Buraun:	Hajimemashite. Buraun desu.	<i>How do you do? My name is Brown</i>
Suzuki:	Hajimemashite. Doozo yoroshiku.	<i>How do you do? Pleased to meet you</i>

Situation 2

*Ms O'Neil is Mr Black's secretary at the American Embassy Mr Black is meeting with
Mr Kobayashi*

Burakku:	Kobayashi-san, kore wa hisho no Oniiru desu.	<i>Mr Kobayashi, this is my secretary, Ms O'Neil</i>
Oniiru:	Kobayashi-san desu ne. Hajimemashite. Oniiru desu. Doozo yoroshiku.	<i>Mr Kobayashi, how do you do? My name is O'Neil Pleased to meet you</i>
Kobayashi:	Kobayashi desu. Doozo yoroshiku.	<i>My name is Kobayashi Pleased to meet you</i>

Situation 3

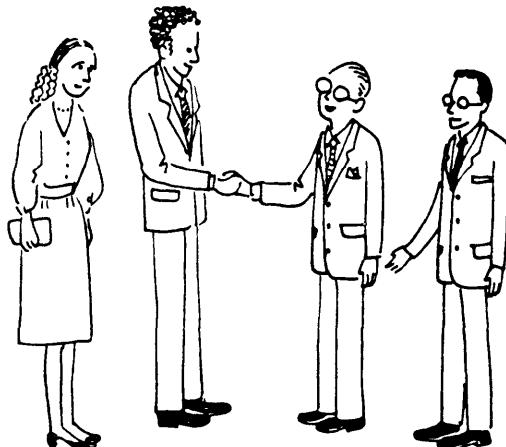
*Mr Williams is an American businessman who has been in Japan for five years and
speaks fluent Japanese He is at a party with Mr Sato of the Ministry of International Trade
and Industry He sees Mr Porter, who works at the American Consulate and has been in Japan
just a couple of weeks*

Uirimamusu:	Pootaa-san, kochira wa Tsuusanshoo no Satoo-san desu.	<i>Mr Porter, this is Mr Sato of the Ministry of International Trade and Industry</i>
Pootaa:	Hajimemashite. Amerika Taishikan no Pootaa desu. Kore wa meeshi desu.	<i>How do you do? My name is Porter, from the American Embassy This is my calling card</i>
Satoo:	Hajimemashite. Satoo desu. Doozo yoroshiku.	<i>How do you do? (handing his calling card to Mr Porter) My name is Sato Pleased to meet you</i>

Situation 4

Mr. and Mrs. Kelly are at a reception. They are introduced to Mr. Ogawa by Mr. Taylor, who works at the American Embassy.

Taylor:	Mr. Ogawa, this is Mr. Kelly. Mr. Kelly, this is Mr. Ogawa.	(in English) <i>Mr. Ogawa, this is Mr. Kelly. Mr. Kelly, this is Mr. Ogawa.</i>
Ogawa:	How do you do? Pleased to meet you.	(in English) <i>How do you do? Pleased to meet you.</i>
Kerii:	Kerii desu. Hajimemashite. Kore wa kanai desu.	<i>My name is Kelly. How do you do? This is my wife.</i>
Kerii(okusan):	Hajimemashite. Doozo yoroshiku.	<i>How do you do? Pleased to meet you.</i>
Ogawa:	Nihongo ga ojoozu desu ne.	<i>You speak Japanese very well.</i>
Kerii(okusan):	lie, madamada desu.	<i>Oh, no. We're still beginners.</i>



VOCABULARY**KOTOBA****Dialogs**

shitsuree desu ga...	excuse me, but...	しつれいですが
hajimemashite	How do you do? Glad to meet you. (lit., It's the first time.)	はじめまして
hisho	secretary	ひしょ
ne	isn't it? (asks for confirmation)	ね
doozo yoroshiku	Pleased to meet you. (lit., I ask your favor /good treatment)	どうぞよろしく
kochira	this (thing, person) (polite)	こちら
Tsuusanshoo	M.I.T.I. (Ministry of International Trade and Industry)	つうさんしょう
meeshi	name card, calling card, business card	めいし
kanai	(one's own) wife	かない
(o)joozu	skillful, good	(お)じょうず
madamada	not yet, still	まだまだ

Practice

taishikan	embassy	たいしかん
ryoojikan	consulate	りょうじかん
Kokumushoo	State Department	こくむしょう
Amerikan Sentaa	American Center	アメリカンセンター

Notes

shujin	(one's own) husband	しゅじん
goshujin	(someone else's) husband	ごしゅじん
okusan	(someone else's) wife	おくさん

Supplement

getsu-yoobi	Monday	げつようび
ka-yoobi	Tuesday	かようび
sui-yoobi	Wednesday	すいようび
moku-yoobi	Thursday	もくようび
kin-yoobi	Friday	きんようび
do-yoobi	Saturday	どようび
nichi-yoobi	Sunday	にちようび
nan-yoobi	what day (of the week)	なんようび

PRACTICE

RENSHUU

A. Substitution Drill

Kochira wa Amerika Taishikan no Howaito-san desu.

Amerika Ryoojikan
Buraun
Kokumushoo
Kerii
Sumisu
Amerikan Sentaa

B. Introduction Practice

Directions:

Student A introduces the instructor to student B by mentioning his/her real name and work place. Student B introduces himself/herself by repeating his/her name and greets the instructor.

Example:

Student A: Kochira wa [work place]no [name]-san desu.
Student B: [name]-san desu ne. Hajimemashite.
[name] desu. Doozo yoroshiku.
Instructor: Hajimemashite. Doozo yoroshiku.

C. Identification Practice

注: 教師次ページ参照

Directions:

Instructor asks the identification of a student, either using the student's real identification or choosing one from the instructor's list. Student answers yes if the name and the work place are correct and no if they aren't. When the answer is no, the instructor apologizes. The student responds to his/her apology.

Examples:

(1) Instructor: Sumimasen/shitsuree desu ga, [student's work place] no [student's name]-san desu ka?
Student: Hai, soo desu.

- (2) *Instructor:* **Sumimasen, [not student's work place] no [not student's name]-san desu ka?**
Student: **Iie, chigaimasu.**
Instructor: **Doomo sumimasen.**
Student: **Iie.**

教師用リスト

アメリカ大使館のホワイト	アメリカンセンターのテーラー
アメリカ領事館のシャクソン	国務省のショーンソン
アメリカ領事館のホームズ	アメリカ大使館のフラウン

D. Introduction Practice

Directions:

Student A introduces Student B to the instructor by saying '*This is so-and-so's husband/wife*' Student B introduces himself/herself and greets the instructor.

Note: If you are the wife of an employee, it is customary to say that you are so-and-so's kanai. If you are the husband of an employee, you should simply give your name (not so-and-so's husband).

Examples:

- (1) *Student A:* **Kochira wa Buraun-san no okusan desu.**
Student B: **Buraun no kanai desu. Doozo yoroshiku.**
- (2) *Student A:* **Kochira wa Hoomuzu-san no goshujin desu.**
Student B: **Hoomuzu desu. Doozo yoroshiku.**

E. Introduction Practice

Directions:

Student A introduces a married couple to the instructor. The husband, after introducing himself, introduces his wife to the instructor. The wife greets the instructor.

Example:

- Student A:* **Kochira wa [name]-san desu.**
Student B (husband): **[Name] desu. Hajimemashite. Kore wa kanai desu.**
Student C (wife): **Hajimemashite. Doozo yoroshiku.**

F. Introduction Practice

Directions:

With the help of your instructor, make your own meeshi and practice exchanging meeshi with your partner.

READING REVIEW**KANJI**

1. 東京

8. 新橋

15. 赤坂

2. 銀座

9. 新宿

16. 浅草

3. 上野

10. 六本木

17. 丸の内

4. 駅

11. 日比谷

18. 大阪

5. 神社

12. 大使館

19. 右

6. 左

13. 福岡

20. 京都

7. 名古屋

14. 国立劇場

21. 日本橋

Supplementary material***Days of the week***

The following is a table of the days of the week in Japanese. Your instructor will read each word. Repeat after the instructor to practice pronunciation.

注: 教師はカレンダーを使って、曜日を練習させる

Sunday	nichi-yoobi	日曜日
Monday	getsu-yoobi	月曜日
Tuesday	ka-yoobi	火曜日
Wednesday	sui-yoobi	水曜日
Thursday	moku-yoobi	木曜日
Friday	kin-yoobi	金曜日
Saturday	do-yoobi	土曜日
what day of the week	nan-yoobi	何曜日

Match the following:

ka-yoobi	Wednesday
nichi-yoobi	Friday
getsu-yoobi	Sunday
sui-yoobi	Thursday
moku-yoobi	Saturday
do-yoobi	Monday
kin-yoobi	Tuesday

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. Greeting expressions used in introductions

Hajimemashite.	<i>How do you do? (lit., It's the first time [for me to meet you])</i>
Doozo yoroshiku.	<i>Pleased to meet you (lit., ask your favor [good treatment])</i>

These two expressions can be used just like the comparable English expressions

2. Particle no

As mentioned in the previous lesson, no occurring between two nouns indicates that what comes before the no describes what comes after it. Study these patterns

(work place) no (name)	
Amerika Taishikan no Sumisu	<i>Smith of the American Embassy</i>
(possessor) no (belonging)	
watakushi no hon	<i>my book</i>

3. Confirmation particle ne

The particle ne at the end of a sentence expresses something like 'aren't you?' or 'isn't it?' in English. Thus, this particle can be used to confirm the name of a person to whom you are introduced. Look at the following example

Yamada-san desu ne? *You're Mr Yamada, aren't you?*

Depending on the pronoun and auxiliary, the confirmation question varies in English, e.g., 'isn't he,' 'don't they,' etc. In Japanese, ne is used no matter what the preceding sentence is.

4. *Kore* vs. *kochira*

Kore and *kochira* are Japanese equivalents of English 'this'. They often refer to a person (or thing in the case of *kore*, cf. Lesson 3) that is near the speaker. The two words are, however, used differently in introducing people. *Kore* is used when introducing a person who is an in-group member (e.g., his family, his company), while *kochira* is used when introducing a person who is not a member of the speaker's group. Many times, the distinction between in-groupness and out-groupness becomes a determining factor in the use of words which have basically the same meaning, as in *kore* and *kochira*. As a rule, Japanese people use politer expressions when they deal with out-group members than when they deal with in-group members. In addressing out-group members, they may refer to in-group members as they would to themselves. In this regard, we can say *kochira* is a politer expression than *kore* in

introducing people, and **kore** is used only to introduce an in-group member. Thus, when you introduce an out-group member, for example a Mr. Tanaka, you should say **Kochira wa Tanaka-san desu** 'This is Mr. Tanaka.'

The in-group/out-group distinction is also reflected in the use of the terms of address you studied in Lesson 1. When you refer to yourself or in-group members, don't use the term **-san** after your name.

5. Kinship terms

Another instance of the in-group/out-group distinction shows up in the use of kinship terms. (In this case, in-group members are one's own family members and out-group members are another person's family members.)

(my)	(other's)	
shujin	goshujin	<i>husband</i>
kanai	okusan	<i>wife</i>

The following is a summary of the use of **kore** and **kochira** with kinship terms.

kore + *in-group kinship terms*

kochira + *out-group kinship terms*

6. *Nihongo ga ojoozu desu ne.* 'You speak Japanese very well.'

You may hear Japanese say to you **Nihongo ga ojoozu desu ne**, regardless of your real proficiency in Japanese. It's a compliment Japanese often make to foreigners, even beginners. The underlying assumption of the expression is that foreigners can't speak Japanese. Many foreigners too often take the expression literally (and sometimes emotionally) so that they feel offended or insulted, for they think the Japanese use the expression to ridicule them since they know their Japanese can't be that good. However, the fact is that the Japanese feel that one way to show politeness is to praise a person's ability.

The Japanese frequently use this expression as a 'starter' in conversations with foreigners. Such being the case, one should take the expression as a sort of greeting. Like in any other greeting, what counts is the fact that you use the expression, rather than its literal meaning. A good way to respond to this 'greeting' expression would be to say something like '*Oh, no, I'm still a beginner.*' A comparable Japanese expression is **lie, madamada desu**. '*No, (I'm not good at it) yet.*'

7. *meeshi* (名刺) 'calling card'

At the beginning of a business encounter, Japanese people almost always exchange **meeshi** ('calling card'), unless the people have met each other before. You may wonder why the **meeshi** is so important to the Japanese. The Japanese view all relations as hierarchical. It is rare that any two people will be perceived as true equals. Japanese usually adjust their verbal and nonverbal behavior to each other according to the social position of a person in this hierarchy, which characterizes almost all relations among the Japanese. The **meeshi**

Lesson 5 Introductions

provides the kind of information that helps people evaluate one's social position. It includes the following information:

- a. name of the company/agency
- b. person's position
- c. person's name
- d. address and telephone number of the company/agency

In some cases, the **meeshi** is written in Japanese on one side and in English on the other. You will probably get this type of **meeshi** at your post.

It should be noted that institutional affiliation usually carries more weight than position in the institution.

In exchanging **meeshi**, Japanese usually

- bow and
- make a few remarks concerning the other person's job, institution, etc., to show that the speaker is interested in the person.

Although most Japanese don't use any formula when presenting **meeshi**, it may be a good idea for you to say **Kore wa meeshi desu**, '*This is (my) calling card*,' in order to let the person know that you are giving him/her your **meeshi**.

 会話

Situation 1

フラン 失礼ですか、鈴木さんですか。
 鈴木 はい、そうです。
 フラン はじめまして。フランです。
 鈴木 はじめまして。どうぞよろしく。

Situation 2

フランク 小林さん、これは私書のオニールです。
 オニール 小林さんですね。はじめまして。オニールです。
 どうぞよろしく。
 小林 小林です。どうぞよろしく。

Situation 3

ウイリアムス ポーターさん、こちらは通産省の佐藤さんです。
 ポーター はじめまして。アメリカ大使館のポーターです。
 これは名刺です。
 佐藤 はじめまして。佐藤です。
 (名刺を渡しながら)どうぞよろしく。

Situation 4

テラー Mr Ogawa, this is Mr. Kelly.
 Mr. Kelly, this is Mr. Ogawa.
 小川 How do you do? Pleased to meet you.
 ケリーです。はじめまして。これは家内です。
 ケリー夫人 はじめまして。どうぞよろしく。
 小川 日本語かお上手ですね。
 ケリー夫人 いいえ、またまたです。

Lesson 5 Introductions

Lesson 6

PLACE NAMES OF INTEREST IN TOKYO

ここは銀座ですか。

In this lesson, you will learn the names and locations of the following:

- major islands
- major cities
- two districts in Tokyo
- major areas in Tokyo
- place names of interest,
e.g., Imperial Palace, museums, etc.

Lesson 6 Place names of interest in Tokyo

Presentation

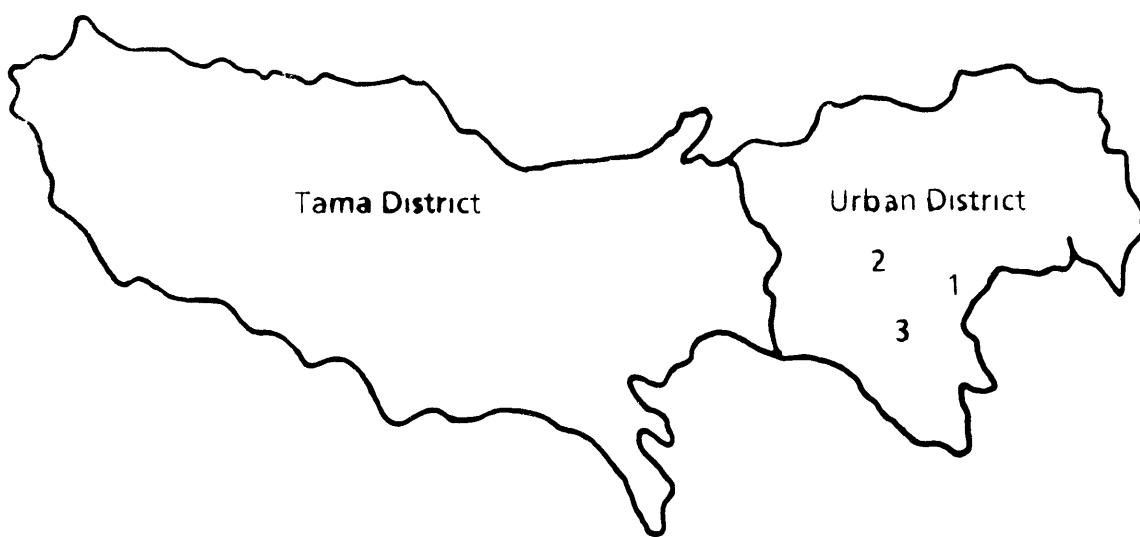
In this lesson, you will learn some more names of places and areas in Tokyo in addition to those you studied in Lesson 2. (You will learn some landmarks and street names of the Embassy area in later lessons.)

Look at the map of Tokyo below. The official name of the Tokyo jurisdiction is **Tokyo-to** (東京都; **to** literally means '*capital*'). It consists of the Urban District, the Tama District and the Ogasawara Islands (not included on the map). As of 1985, the population of **Tokyo-to** was approximately twelve million, representing approximately 10% of the entire population of Japan.

When people talk about Tokyo they often refer to the Urban District, which is composed of 23 wards or **Ku** (区). It is in this district where you find government offices, headquarters of major companies, museums, and the American Embassy and American Center. The Urban District is the center of political, economic, cultural, and educational activities in Japan. The Tama District, especially the areas near the Urban District, consist of satellite towns or what the Japanese call 'bed towns,' from which many people commute to downtown Tokyo.

The Ogasawara Islands came under U.S. control after World War II and were returned to Japan in 1968. The main industry there is fishing.

The areas marked (1), (2) and (3) on the map of the Urban District below will be covered in Practice 1.



1. Chiyoda
2. Shinjuku
3. Minato

Place names in Tokyo

Kasumigaseki	Kasumigaseki	霞ヶ関
Ueno Kooen	Ueno Park	上野公園
Tokyo Eki	Tokyo Station	東京駅
Tokyo Tawaa	Tokyo Tower	東京タワー
Shinjuku Gyoen	Shinjuku National Garden	新宿御苑
Kookyo	Imperial Palace	皇居
Kokuritsu Gekijoo	National Theater	国立劇場
Kabukiza	Kabuki Theater	歌舞伎座
Meiji Jinguu	Meiji Shrine	明治神宮
Shinjuku-ku	Shinjuku Ward	新宿区
Chiyoda-ku	Chiyoda Ward	千代田区
Shinagawa-ku	Shinagawa Ward	品川区
Akasaka	Akasaka	赤坂
Kokkai Gijidoo	the Diet Building	国会議事堂

PRACTICE

RENSHUU

A. *Map reading Practice*

Look at the map of Shinjuku-ku (新宿区), Chiyoda-ku (千代田区), and Minato-ku (港区) on the next page.

(You may want to refer to the map of Tokyo-to on the page before last to find out the locations of these areas within the Urban District.)

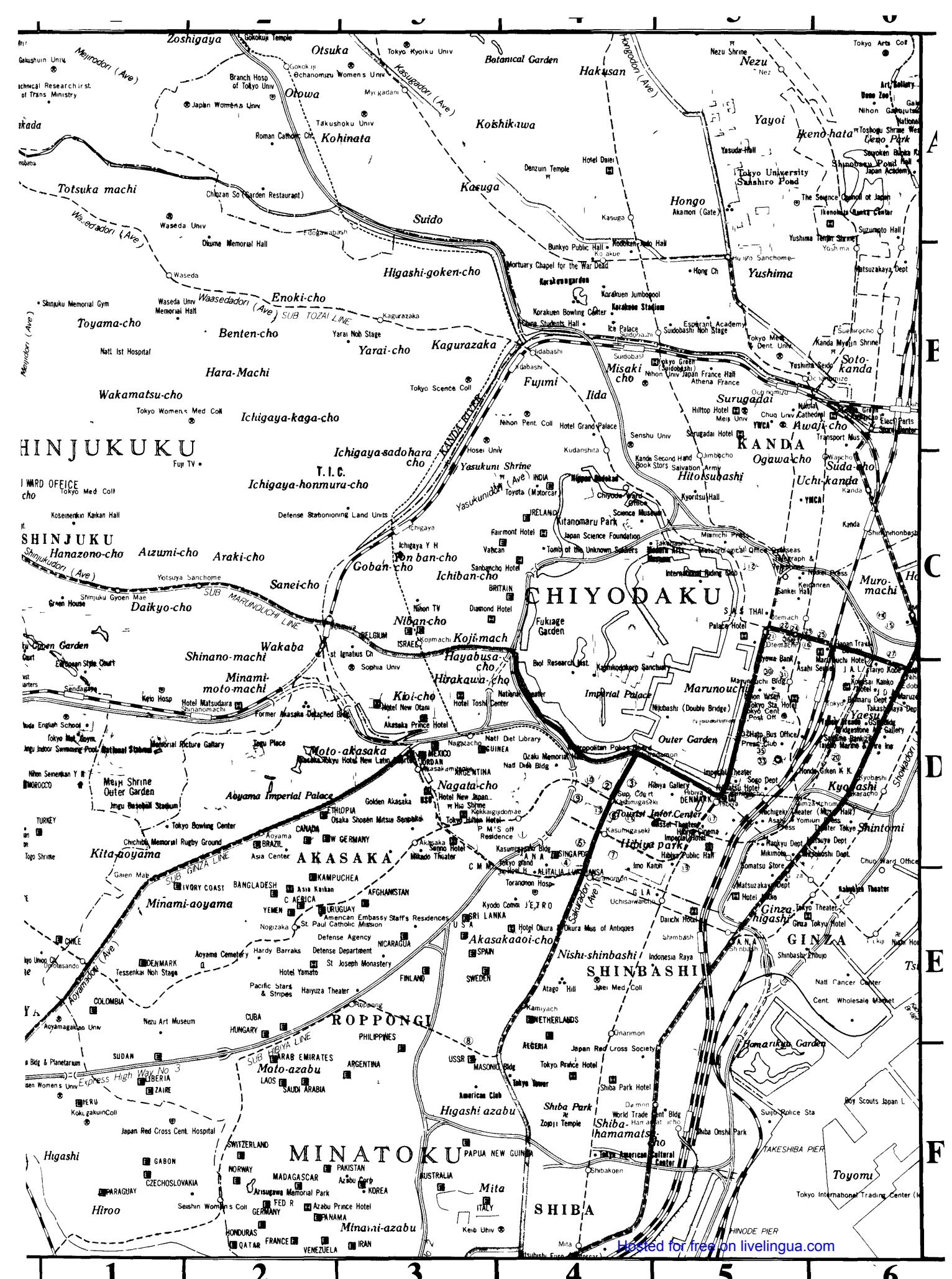
Identify the area names and place names of interest below on the map on the next page and practice the pronunciation of the names by repeating them after the instructor.

Area Names

Akasaka	赤坂	3-D
Ginza	銀座	6-E
Shinbashi	新橋	4-E
Marunouchi	丸ノ内	5-D
Kanda	神田	5-B
Roppongi	六本木	3-E

Place names of Interest

Kokkai Gijidoo	国会議事堂	4-D
Kokuritsu Gekijoo	国立劇場	4-D
Meiji Jinguu	明治神宮	1-D
Tokyo Tawaa	東京タワー	4-F
Tokyo Eki	東京駅	6-D
Ueno Kooen	上野公園	6-A
Kabukiza	歌舞伎座	6-E



Lesson 6 Place names of interest in Tokyo

B. Response Drill

Directions:

Student A asks Student B ... **wa doko ni arimasu ka?**, referring to the list below.
Student B answers, using the cue.

Example:

Student A: **Amerika Taishikan wa doko ni arimasu ka?**
Student B: **Akasaka ni arimasu.**

List for student A Cue for student B

Shinjuku Gyoen	Shinjuku
Hie Jinja	Akasaka
Kasumigaseki Biru	Kasumigaseki
Ueno Kooen	Ueno
Amerika Taishikan	Akasaka

C. Map Reading Practice

Directions:

Student A asks the name of an area in Tokyo, referring to the list in Practice A.
Student B answers, referring to the map.

Example:

Student A: **3D. Koko wa doko desu ka?**
Student B: **(referring to 3D on the map) Akasaka desu.**

List for student A

1. 3E
2. 5B
3. 4E
4. 6E
5. 5D
6. 3D

D. Map Reading Practice

Directions:

Use the map in Practice A. Student A asks the location of places on the list, using the following expression:

(place name) wa doko ni arimasu ka?

Student B answers by giving the area name or the name of the ward.

Example:

Student A: Amerika Taishikan wa doko ni arimasu ka?

Student B: (referring to the map) Akasaka desu.

List for student A

Kabukiza
Tokyo Eki
Shinjuku Gyoen
Kookyo

E. Map Reading Practice

注: 教師は下記のリスト参照

Directions:

The instructor asks whether or not the place s/he indicates is the right one, referring to the index and the map in Practice A. The student answers, using one of the expressions below:

- a. Hai, soo desu.
- b. lie, ... ja arimasen.

In the latter case, give the correct name of the place.

Example:

Instructor: 3D. Koko wa Shinjuku desu ka?

Student: lie, Shinjuku ja arimasen. Akasaka desu.

教師用リスト

1. 6A 明治神宮
2. 6D 東京駅
3. 1C 六本木
4. 5D 国会議事堂
5. 4D 国立劇場

Lesson 6 Place names of interest in Tokyo

F. Finding Places

Directions:

Student A asks Student B where the places on the list below are located.
Student B answers, referring to the map below

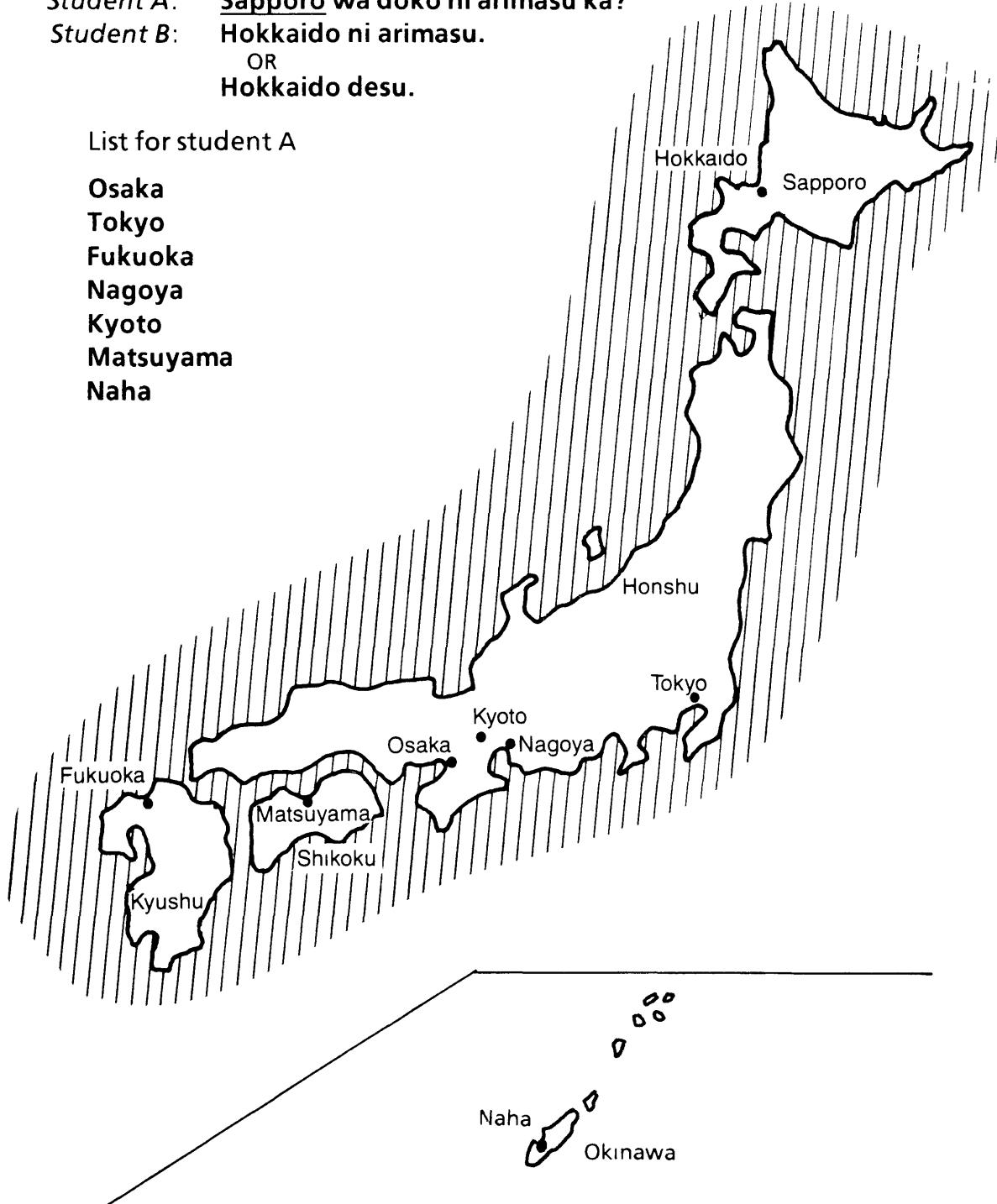
Example:

Student A: **Sapporo wa doko ni arimasu ka?**

Student B: **Hokkaido ni arimasu.**
OR
Hokkaido desu.

List for student A

Osaka
Tokyo
Fukuoka
Nagoya
Kyoto
Matsuyama
Naha



READING

KANJI

Place names of Interest

1. 上野公園 Ueno Kooen Ueno Park
2. 新宿御苑 Shinjuku Gyoen Shinjuku National Garden
3. 明治神宮 Meiji Jinguu Meiji Shrine
4. 日比谷公園 Hibiya Kooen Hibiya Park

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. Expressions for asking the location of a place

The following are expressions that can be used when you ask the location of a place:

Koko wa doko desu ka ?

Where is this place? (Lesson 2)

**Kono chikaku ni depaato ga
arimasu ka?**

*Is there a department store
in this vicinity? (Lesson 4)*

In place of *koko* 'this place' in the first sentence, you can use place names, as in the following:

Tokyo-eki wa doko desu ka?

Where is Tokyo Station?

The following questions about location mean approximately the same thing:

- Depaato wa doko desu ka?**
- Depaato wa doko ni arimasu ka?**

2. Answers to questions about the location of a place

When you ask **Depaato wa doko desu ka?** OR **Depaato wa doko ni arimasu ka?** some Japanese may answer in the following way:

Depaato wa (place) desu/ni arimasu.

In ordinary conversation, however, the answer is usually simplified to:

(place) desu/ni arimasu.

The following are some examples:

Question: **Amerika Taishikan wa doko desu ka ?/ni arimasu ka?**
Where is the American Embassy (located)?

Answer: **Akasaka desu/ni arimasu.**
(It's) in Akasaka.

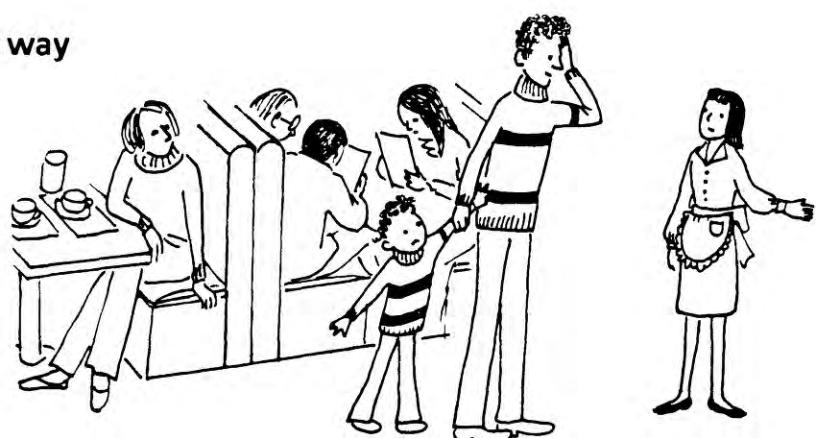
Lesson 7

SOME BASIC PLACE EXPRESIONS

ここ, そこ, 右, 左, 前, 後ろ

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- ask where the rest room is
- ask directions to the nearest station, pharmacy, etc.
- understand directions that contain words like the following:
 - a. on the right/left
 - b. in front/back of
 - c. next to
 - d. this/that way



DIALOGS

KAIWA

Situation 1

At a restaurant, Mr. Moore asks a waitress where the rest room is.

Muaa:	Sumimasen.	Excuse me.
Ueetoresu:	Hai.	Yes.
Muaa:	(O)tearai wa doko desu ka?	Where is the rest room?
Ueetoresu:	Achira desu.	(pointing) It's over there
Muaa:	Doomo arigatoo.	Thank you.

Situation 2

Mr. Roberts was involved in a car accident while driving in Tokyo. He decides to call the embassy to get some assistance, so he asks a passer-by if there is a phone located nearby.

Robaatsu:	Sumimasen, kono hen ni kooshuu denwa ga arimasu ka?	Excuse me, is there a public phone near here?
Nihonjin:	Eeto... A, asoko desu. Tabako-ya ni arimasu yo.	(looking around to find one) Let me see Oh, it's over there at the tobacco shop
Robaatsu:	Doomo arigatoo.	Thank you.
Nihonjin:	Doo itashimashite.	You're welcome.

Situation 3

After shopping in the Ginza, Ms Taylor wants to go home by subway. She thinks that once she finds the station, she can manage.

Teeraa:	Sumimasen. Kono hen ni chikatetsu no eki ga arimasu ka?	Excuse me Is there a subway station in this vicinity?
Nihonjin:	Chikatetsu no eki desu ka? Soko ni arimasu yo. Kooban no tonari desu.	A subway station? There is one over there (pointing) It's next to the police box.
Teeraa:	Soo desu ka. Doomo arigatoo.	Oh, I see. Thank you.
Nihonjin:	lie, doo itashimashite.	Don't mention it.

Situation 4

Mrs. Douglas is going to the American Pharmacy, which her friend had recommended. She knows it's very close to the station where she got off.

- | | | |
|-----------|---|---|
| Dagurasu: | Sumimasen, Amerikan Faamashii wa doko desu ka? | <i>Excuse me, where is the American Pharmacy?</i> |
| Ekiin: | Nikkatsu Biru ni arimasu yo. | <i>It's in the Nikkatsu Building.</i> |
| Dagurasu: | Nikkatsu Biru wa doko desu ka? | <i>Where is the Nikkatsu Building?</i> |
| Ekiin: | Eki no mae ni arimasu. | <i>It's in front of the station.</i> |
| Dagurasu: | Doomo. | <i>Thanks.</i> |
| Ekiin: | Doo itashimashite. | <i>You're welcome.</i> |

VOCABULARY**KOTOBA****Dialogs**

kono hen	this vicinity, this area	このへん
(o)tearai	bathroom, toilet, rest room	(お)てあらい
achira	that way, over there	あちら
kooshuu denwa	public telephone	こうしゅうでんわ
denwa	telephone	でんわ
Eeto...	Let me see... (hesitation word)	ええと.....
asoko	over there	あそこ
tabako-ya	tobacco shop	たばこや
chikatetsu	subway	ちかでつ
soko	there	そこ
kooban	police box	こうばん
tonari	next to	となり
mae	front, in front of	まえ

Practice

hon-ya	bookstore	ほんや
kusuri-ya	drugstore	くすりや
erebeetaa	elevator	エレベーター
hijooguchi	emergency exit	ひじょうぐち
tatte kudasai	please stand	たってください
shingoo	traffic light	しんごう
gakkoo	school	がっこう

Notes

ushiro	back	うしろ
sochira	that way	そちら
kochira	this way	こちら
sotchi	that way	そっち
atchi	that way, over there	あっち
kotchi	this way	こっち

Personalized list

PRACTICE

RENSHUU

A. Substitution Drill

Sumimasen, (o)tearai wa doko desu ka?

kooshuu denwa	Tokyo Eki
chikatetsu no eki	takushii noriba
kooban	JR-sen no eki
tabako-ya	(o)tearai

B. Transformation Drill

Kooban wa doko desu ka? → Kooban wa doko ni arimasu ka?

kooshuu denwa	basu noriba
(o)tearai	JR-sen no eki
tabako-ya	takushii noriba
hon-ya	chikatetsu no eki
kusuri-ya	kooban

C. Response Drill

Student: (O)tearai wa doko ni arimasu ka?

Instructor: Kooshuu denwa no mae desu.

Student: Kooshuu denwa no mae desu ka?

Instructor: Hai, soo desu.

Student's list**教師用リスト**

depaato	駅の前
kooban	テパートの右
chikatetsu no eki	交番の左
hon-ya	薬屋の隣
resutoran	テパートの近く

D. Substitution Drill

Kono chikaku ni kooshuu denwa ga arimasu ka?

(o)tearai	resutoran
kooban	chikatetsu no eki
kusuri-ya	JR-sen no eki
kissaten	depaato
basu noriba	takushii noriba

E. Substitution Drill

Kooshuu denwa wa depaato no mae ni arimasu.

asoko	depaato no tonari
eki no mae	kusuri-ya no mae
kooban no mae	kooban no hidari

F. Communication Exercise

Directions:

Student A asks the location of the places on the List for student A below. Student B selects an appropriate place word from the List for student B below and points in that direction.

Example:

Student A: Hijooguchi wa doko desu ka?
(hijooguchi = emergency exit)

Student B: Soko desu.

List for student A

erebeetaa 'elevator'
one of your teacher's rooms
(use ...san/sensee no heya)
supervisor's room
(use ...san/sensee no heya)
(o)tearai
hijooguchi

List for student B

koko
sotchi
mukoo
asoko
kotchi
soko
atchi

Lesson 7 Some basic place expressions

G. Production Exercise

Directions:

A student stands in front of the classroom. The instructor stands in front of, in back of, on the right of, or on the left of the student. The other students describe the position of the instructor relative to the student. Students should use the following expression:

(Instructor's name)-san/sensee wa (student's name)-san no
mae/ushiro/hidari/migi desu.

H. Communication Exercise

Directions:

The instructor stands, facing the students. Student A gives Student B directions, referring to the list below. Student B follows the directions by standing on the right/left or in front/back of the instructor. Student A uses the following expression:

(Instructor's name)-san/sensee no (position) ni tatte kudasai.
(*tatte kudasai* means 'please stand').

Example:

Student A: . . . san/sensee no migi ni tatte kudasai.
Student B: (stands on the right of the instructor)

List for student A

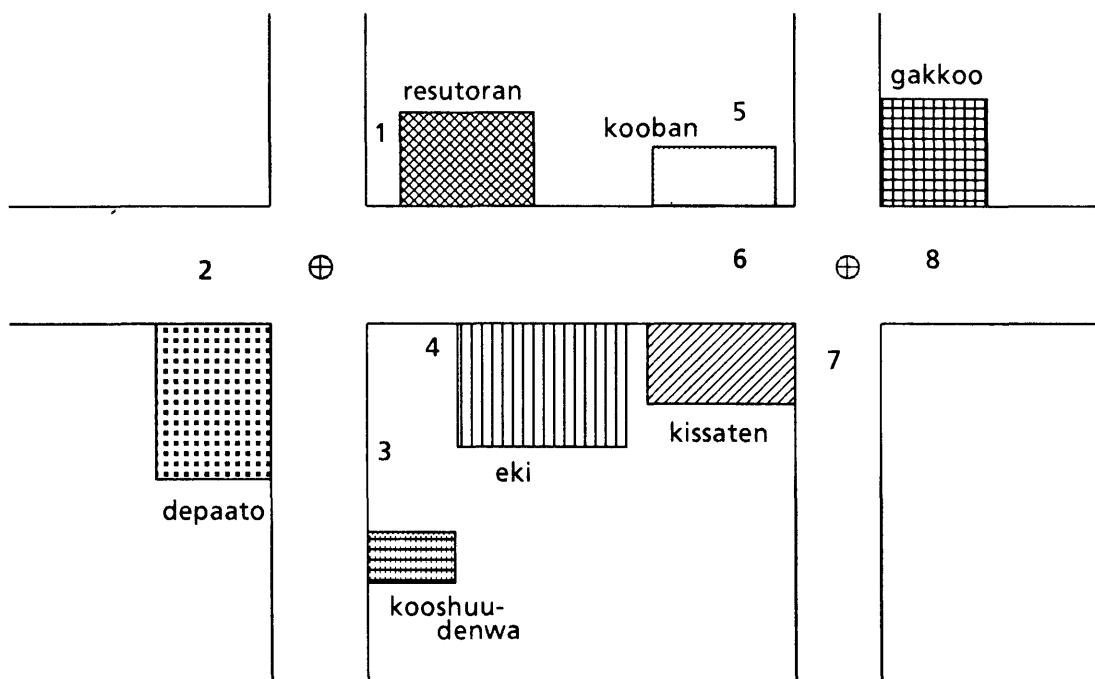
on the right
on the left
in front of
behind

I. Reading Comprehension

Directions:

Read the following and then select the number of the location on the map that matches its description below.

1. Watakushi no mae ni depaato ga arimasu.
Hidari ni kooshuu denwa ga arimasu. ()
2. Watakushi no ushiro ni *shingoo ga arimasu.
Migi ni kooban ga arimasu. ()
3. Watakushi no mae ni *gakkoo ga arimasu.
Watakushi no hidari ni shingoo ga arimasu. ()
4. Watakushi no migi wa eki desu.
Mae ni resotoran ga arimasu. ()
5. Mukoo ni kooban ga arimasu.
Watakushi no mae ni kissaten ga arimasu. ()



*shingoo = \oplus = traffic light
 *gakkoo = school

Lesson 7 Some basic place expressions

J. Aural Comprehension Exercise

注: 教師用スクリプト次ページ参照

Directions:

The following conversations take place on the street. Listen to the tape and answer the questions below.

Conversation 1

The first Japanese asks the location of

The second Japanese said the location is

Conversation 2

The first Japanese asks the location of

The second Japanese said the location is

Conversation 3

The first Japanese asks the location of

(choose the correct answer)

The second Japanese () knows the location.

() doesn't know the location.

Conversation 4

The first Japanese asks the location of

The answer is

Conversation 5

The first Japanese asks the location of

(choose the correct answer)

The second Japanese () knows the location.

() doesn't know the location.

教師用スクリプト

会話 1 日本人 1 すみません。この近くに交番かありますか。
 日本人 2 え、交番ですか？ あそこにありますよ。
 日本人 1 ああ、とうも。
 日本人 2 とういたしまして。

会話 2 日本人 1 ちょっと伺いますか、山王ヒルはこの近くですか。
 日本人 2 は？
 日本人 1 山王ヒルです。
 日本人 2 ああ、向こうにあります。
 日本人 1 とうも。
 日本人 2 いいえ。

会話 3 日本人 1 ちょっと、すみません。この近くの駅はどこですか。
 日本人 2 さあ 私も知りません。
 日本人 1 そうですか。とつも。

会話 4 日本人 1 すみません。この近くに本屋かありますか？
 日本人 2 本屋ねえ ああ、駅の前にあったと思いますか
 日本人 1 とうもすみません。
 日本人 2 いいえ、とういたしまして。

会話 5 日本人 1 ちょっと、すみません。東京駅はどこにありますか。
 日本人 2 さあ、私も分かりません。

READING

KANJI

1. 化粧室 keshooshitsu powder room
2. 御手洗 otearai toilet, rest room
3. 婦人用 fujinyoo for ladies
4. 殿方用 tonogatayoo for gentlemen
5. 男 otoko man, men
6. 女 onna woman, women
7. 地下鉄 chikatetsu subway

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. Summary of basic location words

- a. 'here,' 'there,' and 'over there'

In Lesson 3, we studied the following series of words:

kore	<i>this</i> (refers to things/persons near the speaker)
sore	<i>that</i> (refers to things/persons near the listener)
are	<i>that (one) over there</i> (refers to things/persons relatively far from the speaker and listener)

The first syllables ko-, so-, and a- in the above words occur in several other series of words having to do with location where they carry related meanings. Compare:

koko	<i>here</i> (refers to a place near the speaker) (Lesson 2)
soko	<i>there</i> (refers to a place near the listener)
asoko	<i>over there</i> (refers to a place relatively far from the speaker and listener)

We have also studied the question word *doko* 'where,' which can be used to ask the location of something (Lesson 2).

- b. Other location words

migi/hidari	<i>right/left</i>
mae/ushiro	<i>front/back</i>
tonari	<i>next</i>
mukoo	<i>beyond</i>

2. Some direction words

Ko-, so-, and a- can also be used to indicate direction, as in:

kochira OR kotchi	<i>this way</i> (refers to the direction of the speaker)
sochira OR sotchi	<i>that way</i> (refers to the direction of the listener)
achira OR atchi	<i>that way over there</i> (refers to a direction away from the speaker and listener)

3. Particle no and place expressions

- a. Place expressions that occur with the particle no, 'of'

Example:

(Depaato wa) eki no migi/hidari desu/ni arimasu. *(The department store) is on the right/left of the station*

- b. Place expressions that do not require no

Example:

(Depaato wa) koko/soko/asoko desu/ni arimasu. *(The department store) is here/there/that way.*

会話

Situation 1

ムアー	すみません。
ウエイトレス	はい。
ムアー	(お)手洗いはどこですか。
ウエイトレス	あちらです。
ムアー	とうもありかとう。

Situation 2

ロハーノ	すみません。この辺に公衆電話がありますか。
日本人	ええと あ、あそこです。たはこ屋にありますよ。
ロハーノ	とうも ありかとう。
日本人	とういたしまして。

Situation 3

テーラー	すみません。この辺に地下鉄の駅がありますか。
日本人	地下鉄の駅ですか。そこにありますよ。
交番のとなりです。	
テーラー	そうですか。とうもありかとう。
日本人	いいえ、とういたしまして。

Situation 4

ダクラス	すみません。アメリカンファーマニーはどこですか。
駅員	日活ビルにありますよ。
タクラス	日活ビルはどこですか。
駅員	駅の前にあります。
タクラス	とうも。
駅員	とういたしまして。

Lesson 7 Some basic place expressions

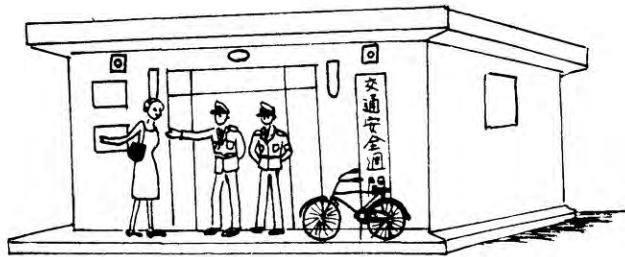
Lesson 8

GETTING THE ANSWER YOU WANT (1)

すみません。
もう一ど言ってください。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- comprehend and produce key words like 'the first/second/third,' 'intersection,' 'traffic light,' etc.
- confirm your understanding or ask a question to get the information you want by using key words



DIALOGS

KAIWA

Situation 1

Mr. Jones is going to see a Kabuki play at Kabukiza, which is located near the Ginza subway station. Mr. Jones has been told by his friend that Kabukiza is on Harumi Street

Joonzu:	Sumimasen. Koko wa Harumi Doori desu ka?	<i>Excuse me, is this Harumi Avenue?</i>
Nihonjin:	Ee, soo desu yo.	<i>Yes, it is.</i>
Joonzu:	Kabukiza wa doko desu ka?	<i>Where is Kabukiza located?</i>
Nihonjin:	Koko kara mitsu-me no hidari no kado desu.	<i>It's at the third corner from here, on the left</i>
Joonzu:	Mitsu-me no hidari no kado desu ne?	<i>At the third corner on the left, right?</i>
Nihonjin:	Ee, soo desu yo.	<i>Yes.</i>
Joonzu:	Doomo.	<i>Thank you.</i>

Situation 2

Mrs. Anderson is going to the Mitsukoshi department store in the Ginza. She has been told by her friend that it is near a large intersection at Ginza 4-chome.

Andaason:	Sumimasen. Koko wa Ginza yon-choome no koosaten desu ka?	<i>Excuse me, is this the Ginza 4-chome intersection?</i>
Nihonjin:	Iie, Ginza yon-choome wa tsugi no shingoo desu.	<i>No, it isn't. The Ginza 4-chome intersection is at the next traffic light.</i>
Andaason:	Aa, soo desu ka. Tsugi no shingoo desu ne? Mitsukoshi wa sono soba desu ka?	<i>Oh. It's the next traffic light, right? Is Mitsukoshi near there?</i>
Nihonjin:	Ee, Mitsukoshi wa koosaten no migi no kado desu.	<i>Yes, Mitsukoshi is on the right-hand corner of the intersection.</i>
Andaason:	Migi no kado desu ka? Doomo arigatoo.	<i>On the right-hand corner? Thank you.</i>
Nihonjin:	Iie.	<i>Sure.</i>

Situation 3

It's spring and Mrs Smith is going to Shinjuku Gyoen, which is famous for its cherry blossoms She gets off at the closest subway station

<i>Sumisu:</i>	Sumimasen. Shinjuku Gyoen wa kono chikaku desu ka?	<i>Is Shinjuku Gyoen near here?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Ee, sugu soba desu. Sono koosaten no mukoo desu.	<i>Yes, it's very near It's beyond that intersection</i>
<i>Sumisu:</i>	Achira desu ka?	<i>Is it in that direction? (pointing)</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Hai, ano depaato no mukoo desu.	<i>Yes, it's beyond that department store</i>
<i>Sumisu:</i>	Aa, soo desu ka. Depaato no mukoo desu ne? Domo arigatoo.	<i>Oh It's beyond that department store, right? Thank you</i>

Situation 4

Ms Patterson is on her way home after doing some shopping She wants to take the subway at Tokyo station She knows the station is within a few blocks

<i>Pataason:</i>	Sumimasen. Tokyo-eki wa doko desu ka?	<i>Excuse me, where is Tokyo station?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Chikatetsu desu ka, JR-sen desu ka?	<i>The subway station or the Metropolitan Railway (station)?</i>
<i>Pataason:</i>	Chikatetsu desu.	<i>The subway station</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Tsugi no koosaten no mukoo ni Daimaru Depaato ga arimasu. Eki wa sono mae desu.	<i>Beyond the next intersection is the Daimaru department store The station is in front of it</i>
<i>Pataason:</i>	Daimaru Depaato no mae desu ne? Wakarimashita. Domo arigatoo.	<i>In front of the Daimaru department store, right? I understand Thank you very much</i>

VOCABULARY

KOTOBA

Dialogs

...doori	...street, ...avenueどおり
Kabukiza	Kabuki Theater	かぶきざ
kara	from	から
mittsu-me	the third	みつめ
choome	chome (counter of blocks/streets)	ちょうめ
koosaten	intersection	こうさてん
sono	its; that	その
sugu soba	very near	すぐそば
ano	that (over there)	あの
JR-sen	Metropolitan Railway (of J.R.)	JR-せん

Practice

hajime no... the first... はじめの.....

Notes

saisho no...	the first...	さいしょの.....
futatsu-me no...	the second...	ふたつめの.....
tsurete itte agemashoo	I'll take you there.	つれていって あげましょう
arigatoo gozaimasu	Thank you. (polite)	ありがとうございます

PRACTICERENSHUU

A. Substitution Drill

Sumimasen, koko wa Harumi Doori desu ka?

Ginza 4-choome

JR-sen no eki

chikatetsu no eki

Ginza Doori

doko

B. Substitution Drill

Tsugi no koosaten desu ka?

Tsugi no kado

Mukoo

Koosaten no mukoo

Futatsu-me no kado

Mittsu-me no shingoo

C. Response Drill

Example:

Student: Sumimasen, koko wa Harumi Doori desu ka?

Instructor: Iie, Harumi Doori wa tsugi no koosaten desu.

Student: Tsugi no koosaten desu ne?

Instructor: Hai, soo desu.

Student: Domo.

Student's list

教師用リスト

Ginza Doori

次の信号

JR-sen no eki

交差点のむこう

chikatetsu no eki

二つ目の角

Mitsukoshi

三つ目の信号の右

Lesson 8 Getting the answer you want (1)

D. Substitution Drill

Shinjuku Gyoen wa kono chikaku desu ka?

Kabukiza	JR-sen no eki
Mitsukoshi	chikatetsu no eki
Daimaru Depaato	Harumi Doori

E. Production & Comprehension Exercise

注: 教師用スクリプト下記参照

Directions:

The student asks directions to a place on the list below. The instructor gives directions. The student puts an X in the parentheses beside the correct location on the List of choices.

Example:

Student: Sumimasen, Harumi Doori wa kono chikaku desu ka?
Instructor: Tsugi no shingoo desu.

Harumi Doori (X) the next traffic light
() the second traffic light
() the third traffic light

次の信号です。

Student's list List of choices 教師用スクリプト

Ginza Doori () the next intersection
() the second intersection
() the third intersection

二つ目の交差点です。

chikatetsu no eki () at the second corner from here
() at the third traffic light from here
() beyond the second corner

二つ目の角です。

Mitsukoshi () the next traffic light
() the third traffic light
() the traffic light over there

三つ目の信号です。

Daimaru depaato () beyond that intersection
over there
() on the first intersection
from here
() on that corner over there

あの交差点のむこう
です。

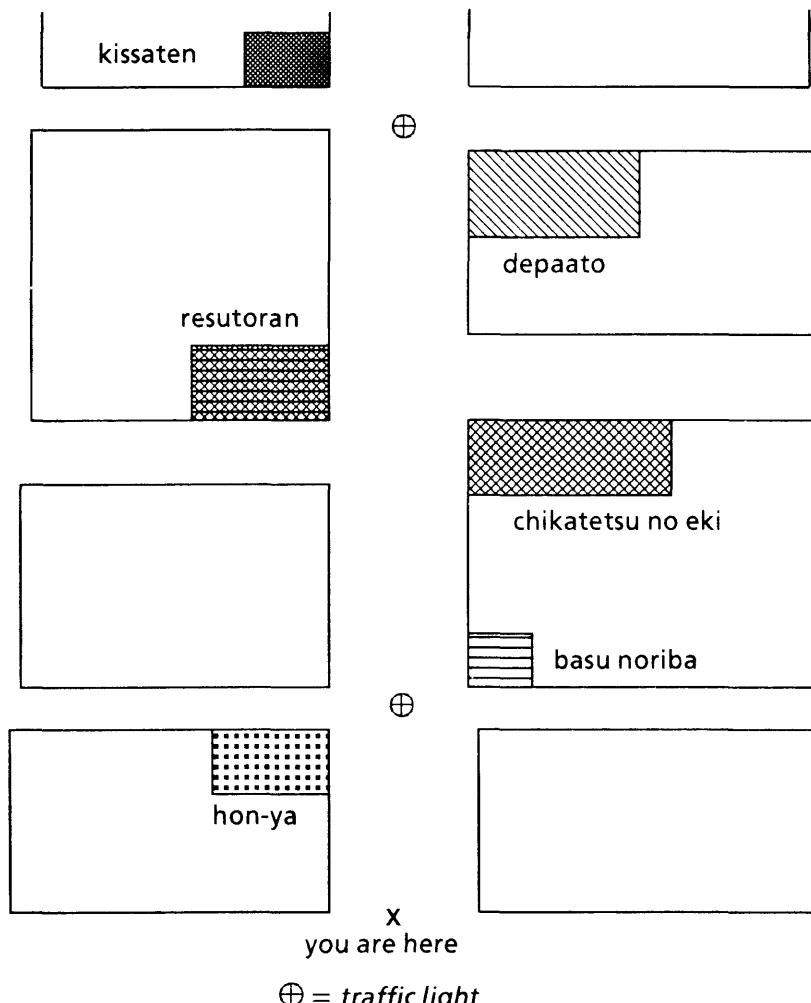
F. Comprehension and Response Exercise

Directions:

The instructor gives the directions to one of the places on the map below and asks what the place is. The student traces the directions on the map and answers.

Example:

Instructor: **Tsugi no hidari no kado ni arimasu.
Hon-ya desu ka, basu noriba desu ka?**
Student: **Hon-ya desu.**



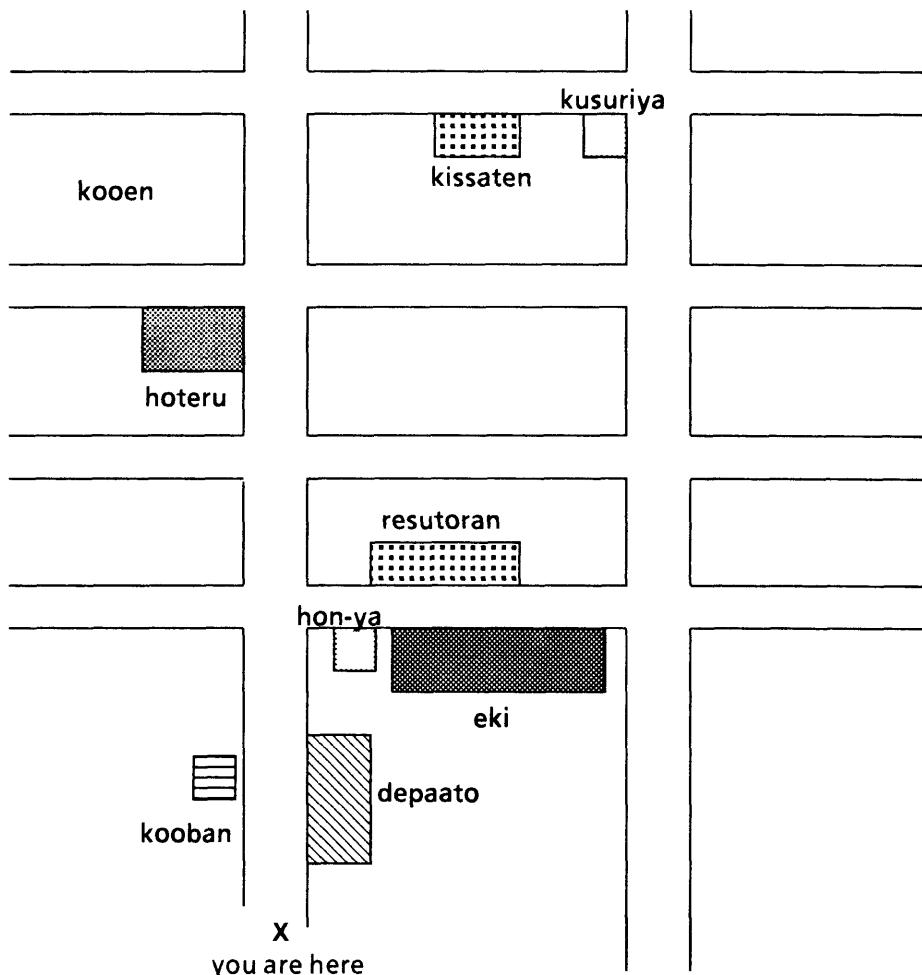
教師用スクリプト

1. 二つ目の信号の右にあります。喫茶店ですか、テパートですか。
2. 三つ目の左の角にあります。喫茶店ですか、レストランですか。
3. 次の交差点の向こうです。本屋ですか、バス乗り場ですか。
4. 二つめの右の角です。地下鉄の駅ですか、テパートですか。

G. Comprehension and Response Exercise

Correct the following statements by referring to the map below.

1. Kooban wa eki no mae ni arimasu.
2. Kissaten wa eki no soba desu.
3. Hoteru wa resotoran no tonari ni arimasu.
4. Kusuriya wa kissaten no mae ni arimasu.
5. Kooen wa eki no sugu soba desu.
6. Resotoran wa depaato no mae ni arimasu.
7. Hon-ya wa resotoran no tonari ni arimasu.



H. Comprehension and Production Exercise 注: 教師用スクリプト下記参照

Directions:

Listen to the instructor read the directions to the following places:

1. **Mitsukoshi**
2. **Shinjuku Gyoen**
3. **Kabukiza**
4. **Subway station**

Write down below the key words that you picked up. When you don't understand the directions, stop the instructor and ask him/her to repeat and confirm your understanding. You can use the following expressions for these purposes:

Sumimasen, moo ichi-do (yukkuri) itte kudasai.
Excuse me, would you say it again (slowly)?

...desu ka? *Is it ...?*
...desu ne? *It is ..., isn't it?*

When you think you understand, repeat the directions in English so as to check your comprehension.

1. Directions to the Mitsukoshi department store

KEY WORDS:

2. Directions to Shinjuku Gyoen

KEY WORDS:

3. Directions to Kabukiza

KEY WORDS:

4. Directions to the subway station

KEY WORDS:

教師用スクリプト

ここから二つ目の交差点の右です。

ここから三つ目の交差点の左の角です。

ここから二つ目の信号のむこうです。左側にあります。

ここから二つ目の角にデパートがあります。駅はそのデパートの隣りです。

READING

KANJI

1. 晴海通り Harumi Doori Harumi Avenue
2. 四丁目 yon-choome 4-chome
3. 喫茶店 kissaten coffee shop
4. 薬局 yakkyoku drugstore
5. 交番 kooban police box

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. Some important words in getting directions

Japanese do not have a word for 'block,' so they frequently use the following words in giving directions

kado	<i>corner</i>
shingoo	<i>traffic light</i>
koosaten	<i>intersection</i>

For example, when an American says 'Go two blocks,' a Japanese would say something like 'Go as far as the second intersection.' The following words are frequently used with the above three words

tsugi/saisho no (shingoo)	<i>the next/first (traffic light)</i>
futatsu-me no (shingoo)	<i>the second (traffic light)</i>
mittsu-me no (shingoo)	<i>the third (traffic light)</i>

The following are some more place expressions introduced in this lesson

(eki) no soba	<i>near (the station)</i>
(eki) kara	<i>from (the station)</i>

2. Is it A or B?

When the directions you get are rather complicated and you want to make sure that you got them correctly, you may want to ask a question like 'Is it on the right or left?' In Japanese, questions of this kind are formed by simply adding the phrase desu ka to each alternative. Look at the following

English:	<i>Is it A or B?</i>
Japanese:	A desu ka, B desu ka?

In English, when there are three or more items to ask about, you place 'or' only in front of the last item. In Japanese, however, the sentence construction is the same as in the question that has two items. Compare the following

English:	<i>Is it A, B, or C?</i>
Japanese:	A desu ka, B desu ka, C desu ka?

Lesson 8 Getting the answer you want (1)

Thus, when you want to ask if the place you are looking for is in front of the station or behind the station, you can say:

Eki no mae desu ka, ushiro desu ka?

Is it in front of or behind the station?

3. **Helpful things to know in getting directions**

- a. When directions you have asked for are complicated and the place you are looking for is not far, Japanese will often take you there instead of giving you the directions. In such a case, s/he would say **Tsurete itte agemashoo** 'I'll take you there.' You should show your gratitude with an expression like **Doomo arigatoo** or **Arigatoo gozaimasu**, etc. (cf. Lesson 11)
- b. If your efforts to locate a place are in vain, try to find the nearest kooban 'police box' or tabako-ya 'tabacco shop.' There are quite a few kooban in any downtown area. The policemen there may not speak English but they will certainly help you find the place you are looking for. Of course, it will help a lot if you have the address of the place with you. The clerk at a tabako-ya also knows a lot about the places in his/her neighborhood. In fact, these are the two places where Japanese often go for directions.

会話

Situation 1

ショーンス すみません。ここは 晴海通りですか。
日本人 ええ、そうですよ。
ショーンス 歌舞伎座はどこですか。
日本人 ここから 三つ目の左の角です。
ショーンス 三つ目の左の角ですね。
日本人 ええ、そうですよ。
ショーンス どうも。

Situation 2

アンターソン すみません。ここは 銀座四丁目の交差点ですか。
日本人 いいえ、銀座四丁目は次の信号です。
アンターソン ああ、そうですか。次の信号ですね。
日本人 三越はそのそばですか。
アンターソン ええ、三越は交差点の右の角です。
日本人 右の角ですか。どうもありがとうございます。
日本人 いいえ。

Situation 3

スミス すみません。新宿御苑はこの近くですか。
日本人 ええ、すぐそばです。その交差点のむこうです。
スミス あちらですか。
日本人 はい。あのテパートのむこうです。
スミス ああ、そうですか。テパートのむこうですね。
日本人 どうもありがとうございます。

Situation 4

パターソン すみません。東京駅はどこですか。
日本人 地下鉄ですか、JR線ですか。
パターソン 地下鉄です。
日本人 次の交差点のむこうに大丸テパートがあります。
駅はその前です。
パターソン 大丸テパートの前ですね。わかりました。
日本人 どうもありがとうございます。

Lesson 8 Getting the answer you want (1)

Lesson 9

GETTING THE ANSWER YOU WANT (2)

この道をまっすぐ行って.....

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- understand such key words as 'straight,' 'street,' 'toward,' 'beyond,' and 'at the end (of the street)'
- understand where to make a turn and in which direction you should turn



DIALOGS

KAIWA

Note: *In each of the following situations, the American does not understand the directions right away so s/he asks the Japanese person to repeat, making sure of the directions phrase by phrase or sentence by sentence.*

Situation 1

Mrs Taylor is looking for a subway station. She asks a passer-by where it is located.

Teeraa:	Sumimasen. Kono chikaku ni chikatetsu no eki ga arimasu ka?	<i>Excuse me. Is there a subway station near here?</i>
Nihonjin:	Ee, kono michi o massugu itte, futatsu-me no . . .	<i>Yes. Go straight down this street. At the second . . .</i>
Teeraa:	Sumimasen, moo ichi-do yukkuri itte kudasai.	<i>I'm sorry. Could you say that again slowly?</i>
Nihonjin:	Kono michi o massugu itte . . .	<i>(speaking slowly) Go straight down this street.</i>
Teeraa:	Massugu . . .	<i>Straight . . .</i>
Nihonjin:	Futatsu-me no kado o migi ni magarimasu.	<i>At the second corner, turn right.</i>
Teeraa:	Futatsu-me no kado, migi . . .	<i>Second corner, right . . .</i>
Nihonjin:	Eki wa hidari ni arimasu yo.	<i>The station is on the left.</i>
Teeraa:	Hidari desu ne?	<i>On the left?</i>
Nihonjin:	Ee, soo desu.	<i>Yes. That's right.</i>
Teeraa:	Doomo arigatoo.	<i>Thank you.</i>
Nihonjin:	Doo itashimashite.	<i>You're welcome.</i>

Situation 2

Ms Baker is going to see her friend, who has just arrived in Tokyo and is staying at the Fairmont Hotel. She has checked the location of the hotel and is in the general neighborhood but is not sure of its exact location. She asks a Japanese person on the street.

Beekaa:	Sumimasen ga . . . Feamoto Hoteru wa doko ni arimasu ka?	<i>Excuse me Where is the Fairmont Hotel?</i>
Nihonjin:	Feamoto Hoteru desu ka? Eeto . . . Kono michi o massugu itte, hajime no kado o hidari ni magatta tokoro desu yo.	<i>Fairmont Hotel? Let me see Go down this street At the first corner, turn left</i>
Beekaa:	Sumimasen, moo ichi-do itte kudasai.	<i>I'm sorry, but could you say that again?</i>
Nihonjin:	Kono michi o massugu itte, hajime no kado o hidari ni magatta tokoro desu.	<i>(speaking slowly) Go straight down this street At the first corner, turn left.</i>
Beekaa:	Ano kado desu ne? Ano kado no hidari desu ka, migi desu ka?	<i>You mean that corner? Is it to the left or right at the corner?</i>
Nihonjin:	Hidari desu.	<i>It's to the left</i>
Beekaa:	Soo desu ka. Doomo arigatoo.	<i>I see Thank you very much</i>

Situation 3

Ms Jackson is going to Aoyama to see some antiques. Her friend has told her that there is a nice shop near Meiji Shrine called 'Oriental Bazaar'. She takes a bus and gets off at a stop near a shrine. She asks directions at a kiosk.

Jakuson:	Sumimasen. Koko wa Meiji Jinguu desu ka?	<i>Excuse me Is this here the Meiji Shrine?</i>
Nihonjin:	Ee, soo desu.	<i>Yes, it is</i>
Jakuson:	Orientaru Bazaa wa doko desu ka?	<i>Where is the Oriental Bazaar?</i>
Nihonjin:	Orientaru Bazaa wa kono michi o massugu itte, ano shingoo no chotto saki desu yo.	<i>The Oriental Bazaar is a little beyond the traffic light, down this street</i>
Jakuson:	Chotto saki? Shingoo no chikaku desu ka?	<i>A little beyond? Is it near the traffic light?</i>
Nihonjin:	Ee, soo desu.	<i>Yes, it is</i>
Jakuson:	Doomo arigatoo.	<i>Thank you</i>

Lesson 9 Getting the answer you want (2)

Situation 4

Mr Clark is going to see a special exhibition at the National Art Museum in Ueno Park. After consulting a map, he takes the JR-line and gets off at Uguisudani station, which is the station closest to the museum. He asks a station employee for directions.

Kuraaku:	Chotto sumimasen ga, Bijutsukan wa atchi desu ka?	Excuse me. Is the National Museum of Art over there? (pointing)
Ekiin:	Ee, sono michi no mukoo no hoo desu.	Yes. It's over that way, up the street.
Kuraaku:	Mukoo no hoo?	Over in that direction?
Ekiin:	Ee, soko o migi ni magatte, massugu itta tokoro desu.	Yes. Turn right there and it's straight ahead.
Kuraaku:	Massugu itta tokoro desu ka?	Straight ahead?
Ekiin:	Ee, soo desu. Soko o migi ni magatte, massugu ikimasu ne. Massugu itta tokoro wa tsukiatari desu yo. Sono tsukiatari ni arimasu. Sugu wakarimasu yo.	Yes. Turn right there and then go straight. The museum is at the end of the street. You'll find it easily.
Kuraaku:	Aa, tsukiatari desu ka. Doomo arigatoo.	Oh, at the end of the street? Thank you.

VOCABULARY**KOTOBA**

Dialogs

kono	this	この
o	(marks the object of a verb)	を
magatta tokoro desu	it's at the place (you) turn	まかったところです
saki	ahead, beyond	さき
...no chikaku	the vicinity of (see kono chikaku , Lesson 4) のちかく
hoo	direction, way, toward	ほう
magatte	(TE form of magarimasu 'turn')	まがって
massugu itta tokoro desu	go straight (then, you'll see it)	まっすくいったところです
tsukiatari	end of a street, dead end, 'T' intersection	つきあたり
bijutsukan	art museum	びじゅつかん

Practice

Gaimushoo Foreign Ministry がいむしょう

Notes

ikimasu	go	いきます
magarimasu	turn	まかります

Street Names

Sakurada Dori	Sakurada Avenue	桜田通り
Uchibori Dori	Uchibori Avenue	内堀通り
Sotobori Dori	Sotobori Avenue	外堀通り
Aoyama Dori	Aoyama Avenue	青山通り

Note: Although **Dori** is pronounced with a long **o**, the word is often spelled **Dori** in street signs, as above.

Personalized list

PRACTICE

RENSHUU

A. Substitution Drill

Kooban wa kono michi no migi no hoo ni arimasu.

futatsu-me no kado
 ano shingoo no mukoo
 ano koosaten no kado
 ano kado no migi
 ano eki no soba
 kono michi no hidari

B. Substitution Drill

Hidari desu ka, migi desu ka?

atchi, kotchi
 futatsu-me, mittsu-me
 migi no kado, hidari no kado
 basu, chikatetsu
 koosaten no migi, koosaten no hidari
 migi no hoo, hidari no hoo

C. Translation-Substitution Drill

cue: on the third corner
 response: Depaato wa mittsu-me no kado ni arimasu.

on the left at the third corner
 on the right at the next intersection
 beyond the second traffic light
 to the right at the next corner
 to the left at the second traffic light

D. Comprehension Exercise

注: 教師用スクリプト次ページ参照

Directions:

The student chooses a place from the list of places below and asks whether or not the place is located nearby. The instructor gives directions. The student traces the directions on the map on the next page and marks an X at the destination. S/he also writes the name of the place near the X. The instructor checks the student's map to determine whether or not s/he has arrived at the right place.

Examples:

Student: **Sumimasen, kono chikaku ni Makudonarudo ga arimasu ka?**

Instructor: **Hai, kono michi o massugu itte, tsugi no kado o migi ni magarimasu. Makudonarudo wa migi ni arimasu.**

Student: (Traces the instructor's directions on the map, marks an X and writes the name of the place near the X.)

Instructor: (Checks the student's map to see whether s/he has marked the right place.)

List of places

kooban

tabako-ya

resutoran

Sumitomo Ginkoo

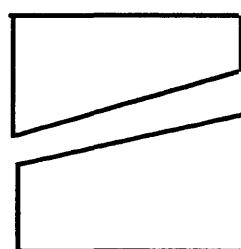
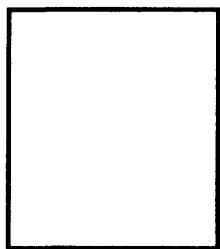
Makudonarudo

depaato

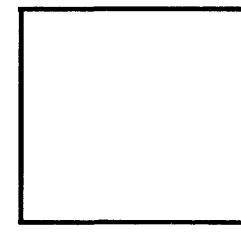
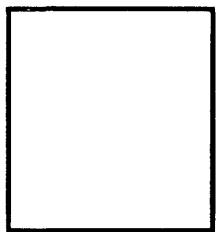
Student's Map

教師用スクリプト

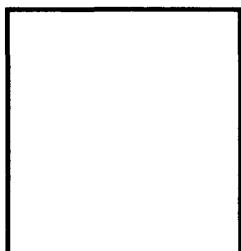
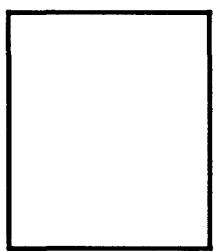
⊕ indicates a traffic light



⊕



⊕



X

you are here

1. 交番

ここから二つ目の信号を右に曲がります。交番は左にあります。

2. たばこ屋

この道をまっすぐ行って、初めの交差点を左に曲がります。たばこ屋は右の方にあります。

3. レストラン

次の信号を右に曲がって右の方です。

4. 住友銀行

この道をまっすぐ行って、二つ目の信号のちょっと先の道を右に曲がります。銀行は左の方にあります。

5. マクドナルド

この道をまっすぐ行って、二つ目の信号を右に曲がります。マクドナルドは右です。

6. テパート

この道をまっすぐ行って、二つ目の信号を左に曲がります。テパートは右にあります。

E. Comprehension Exercise

Directions

The instructor will give you directions to get to several places from the American Embassy (see the map on the next page.) Listen to the directions and check the names of the place to which they get you below. Make sure that you (1) practice pronouncing the names of places and streets on the map before you start the exercise; and (2) start from the American Embassy.

教師用スクリプト

1. () Kasumigaseki Biru
() Tokyu Hoteru
() Okura Hoteru

この道をまっすぐ行って、外堀通りを左に曲かると、三つ目の信号の右の角です。

2. () Hie Jinja
() Kasumigaseki Biru
() Okura Hoteru

この道をまっすぐ行って、外堀通りを左に曲かります。そこからまっすぐ行くと右の方にあります。
東亜ホテルの手前で。

3. () Hie Jinja
() Okura Hoteru
() Gaimushoo

この道をまっすぐ行って、三つ目の信号のむこうの右にあります。

4. () Hibiya Kooen
() Gaimushoo
() Kokuritsu Gekijoo

この道をまっすぐ行って、二つ目の交差点を左に曲かります。
国会議事堂の前をまっすぐ行くと右の方です。

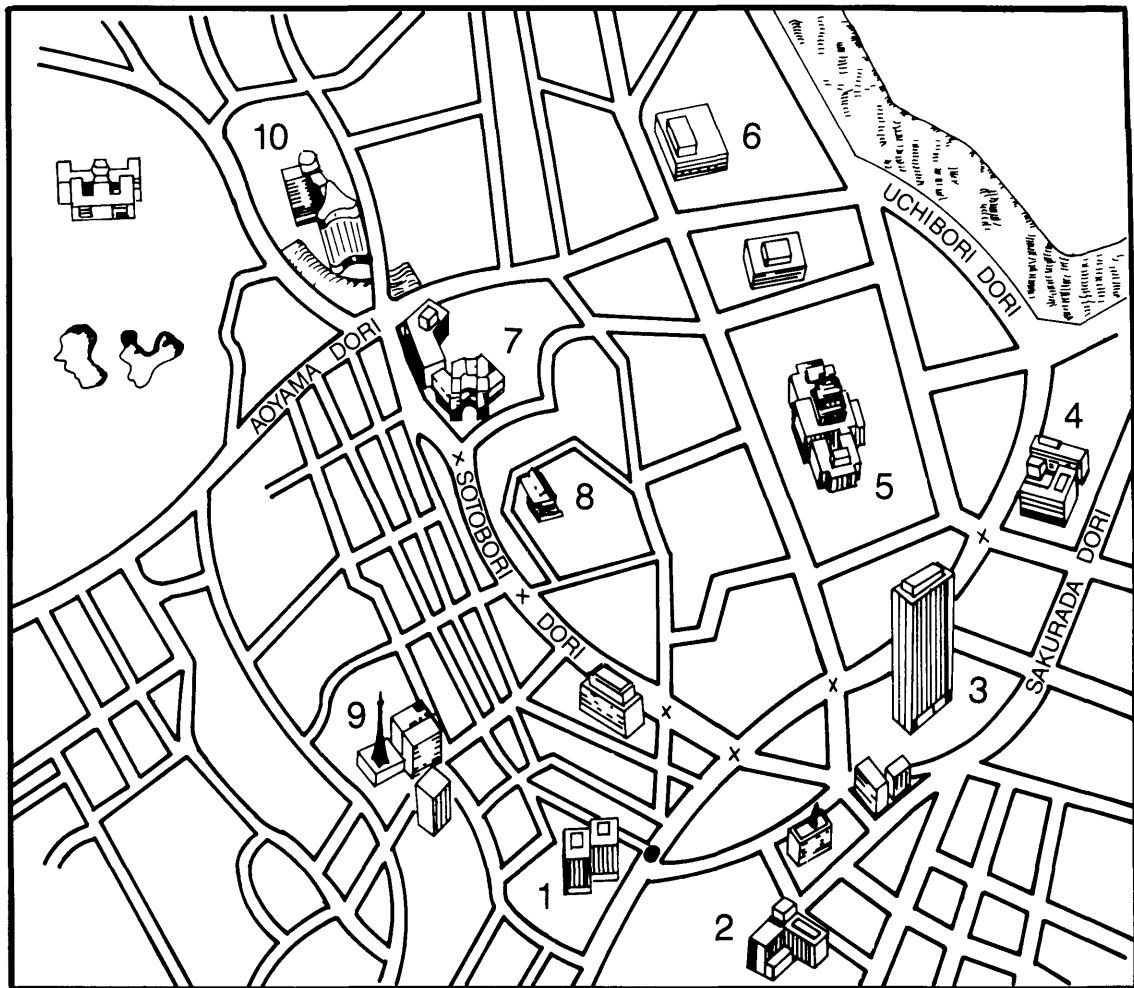
5. () Tokyu Hoteru
() TBS
() Akasaka Prince Hoteru

大使館を出て外堀通りまで行って、左に曲かります。二つ目の角を、又左に曲って、すっとまっすぐ行くと、右に大きなタワーが見えます。

Place names

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Amerika Taishikan | 6. Kokuritsu Gekijoo |
| 2. Okura Hotel | 7. Tokyu Hotel |
| 3. Kasumigaseki Biru | 8. Hie Jinja |
| 4. Gaimushoo | 9. TBS |
| 5. Kokkai Gijidoo | 10. Akasaka Prince Hotel |

X = koosaten
● = starting point



F. Comprehension Exercise

注 教師用スクリプト次ページ参照

Directions

The instructor gives directions to the following places from the place marked 'You are here'. The student traces the directions on the map and writes the number of the place at which s/he has arrived in the parentheses after the place name. The instructor then checks the student's answers.

Note Use Sumimasen, Yukkuri itte kudasai, and ...desu ka/ne? if necessary

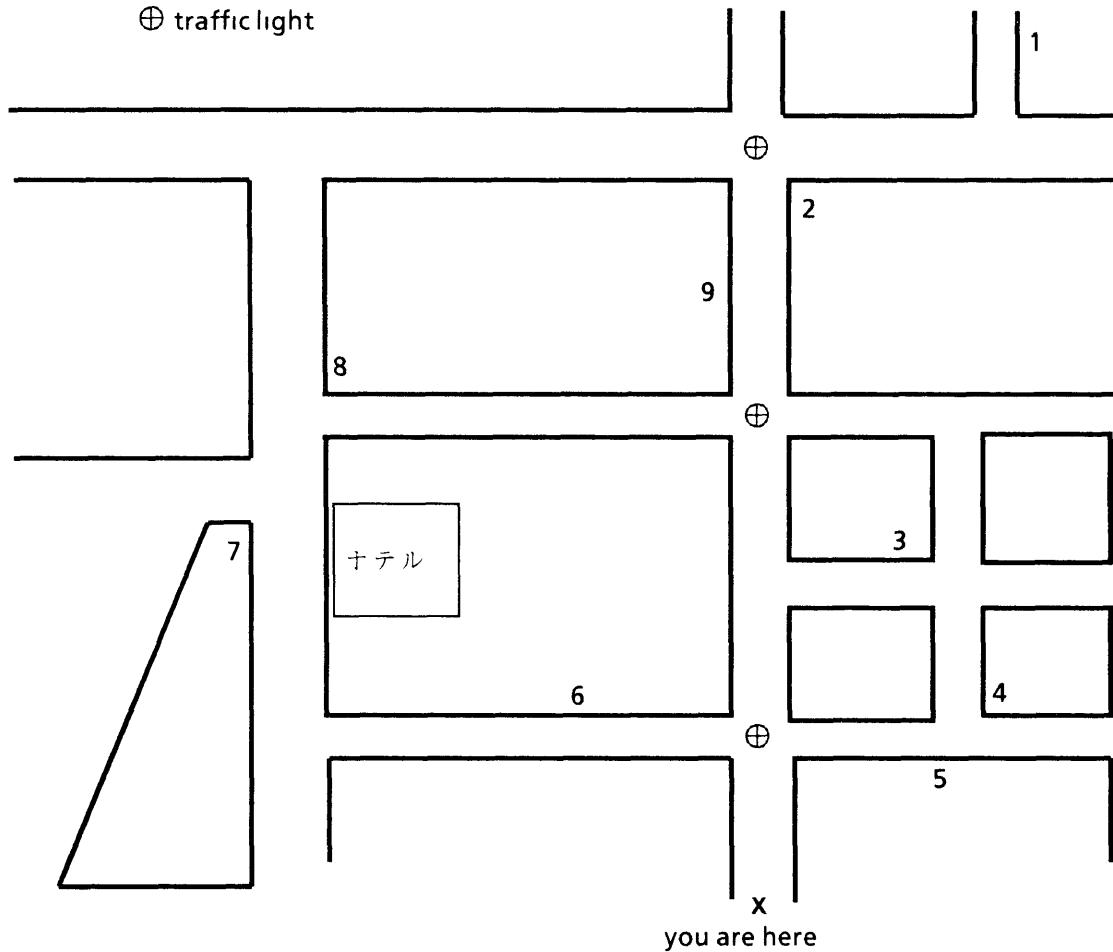
Place name

Answer sheet

sensei no uchi
kissaten
suupaa
tabakoya
hon-ya

()
()
()
()
()

⊕ traffic light



教師用スクリプト

1. この道をまっすぐ行って、二つ目の角を右へ曲がります。
先生の家は次の左の角にあります。
2. 喫茶店ですか？次の交差点を左へ曲がって、つきあたりを右へまっすぐ行きます。
右の方にホテルがあります。ホテルの前の角が喫茶店です。
3. スーパーですね。この道をまっすぐ行って、三つ目の信号を右に曲がります。
それから初めの角を左に曲がると、すぐわかりますよ。
4. たばこ屋はここから二つ目の信号を左へ曲がって、まっすぐ行きます。
次の右の角にあります。
5. 本屋は次の角を右に曲がって、まっすぐ行ったところの右にあります。

READING

KANJI

1. たばこ屋 tabakoya tobacco shop
タバコ屋
2. 銀行 ginkoo bank
3. 右折禁止 Usetsu Kinshi No Right Turn
4. 左折禁止 Sasetsu Kinshi No Left Turn
5. 一方通行 Ippo Tsuukoo One-way Street

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. More key words in comprehending directions

The following words are useful for comprehending directions:

massugu	<i>straight</i>	e.g., massugu itte	<i>going straight</i>
michi	<i>street</i>	e.g., kono michi	<i>this street</i>
...no hoo	<i>toward...</i>	e.g., migi no hoo	<i>to(ward) the right</i>
...no saki	<i>beyond...</i>	e.g., koosaten no saki	<i>beyond the intersection</i>
tsukiatari	<i>end (of a street)</i>	e.g., Kono michi no tsukiatari desu.	<i>It's at the end of this street.</i>

2. Verbs frequently used in directions

'Go' and 'turn' are probably the two most frequently used verbs in giving directions. The Japanese words for these two verbs have different forms depending on their position in a sentence or how they occur with other words.

The following is a brief summary of some of these forms:

ikimasu/magarimasu	<i>used at the end of a sentence</i>
itte/magatte	<i>used when you mention other actions (e.g., itte magarimasu go and turn)</i>

itta tokoro/magatta tokoro	<i>(tokoro means 'place'. The whole phrases mean 'the place you are to go' and 'the place to make a turn,' respectively.)</i>
-----------------------------------	---

At this point it is not necessary for you to be able to produce these forms, but you should be able to guess the meaning of a sentence that contains either word if you can pick up such key words as 'straight,' 'right,' etc. It should be noted, however, that unlike English, in Japanese these key words occur before the verbs, as in the following examples:

Kono michi o massugu ikimasu.

Go straight (down) this street.

Tsugi no shingoo o migi ni magarimasu.

Turn to the right at the next traffic light.

3. *Helpful things to know in getting directions*

Streets in most Japanese cities do not run straight from north to south or from east to west. Furthermore, not all streets have names. Instead, Japanese normally use the area name and/or number like **yon-choome** when referring to the location of a building or a place.

Since Japanese does not have a word equivalent to English '*block*,' in giving directions a Japanese will use words like **kado** 'corner,' **shingoo** 'traffic light,' **koosaten** 'intersection,' etc. For example, for '*Go one block and turn left...*' a Japanese person would say **Tsugi no kado o hidari ni magatte...** '*Turn left at the next corner...*' It is, therefore, very important for you to become familiar with these words and to learn how to use them.

会話

Situation 1

テーラー すみません。この近くに地下鉄の駅がありますか。
日本人 ええ、この道をまっすぐ行って二つ目の
テーラー すみません。もう一度ゆっくり言ってください。
日本人 この道をまっすぐ行って
テーラー まっすぐ
日本人 二つ目の角を右に曲ります。
テーラー 二つ目の角、右
日本人 駅は左にありますよ。
テーラー 左ですね。
日本人 ええ、そうです。
テーラー どうもありがとうございます。
日本人 どういたしまして。

Situation 2

ヘーカー すみませんか フェアモントホテルはどこに
日本人 ありますか。
フェアモントナテルですか。ええと この道を
まっすぐ行って、はじめの角を左に曲かった
ところですよ。
ヘーカー すみません。もう一度言ってください。
日本人 この道をまっすぐ行って、はじめの角を左に
曲かったところです。
ヘーカー あの角ですね。あの角の左ですか、右ですか。
日本人 左です。
ヘーカー そうですか。どうもありがとうございます。

Lesson 9 Getting the answer you want (2)

Situation 3

ノヤクノン すみません。ここは明治神宮ですか。
日本人 ええ、そうです。
ンヤクソン オリエンタルハサーはどこですか。
日本人 オリエンタルハサーはこの道をまっすぐ行って、あの
信号のちょっと先ですよ。
ンヤクソン ちょっと先? 信号の近くですか。
日本人 ええ、そうです。
ンヤクソン どうもありがとうございます。

Situation 4

クラーク ちょっと、すみませんか、美術館はあっちですか。
駅員 ええ、その道のむこうの方です。
クラーク むこうの方?
駅員 ええ、そこを右に曲がって、まっすぐ行ったところ
です。
クラーク まっすぐ行ったところですか。
駅員 ええ、そうです。そこを右に曲がって、まっすぐ行き
ますね。
まっすぐ行ったところは、つきあたりですよ。
そのつきあたりにあります。すぐわかりますよ。
クラーク ああ、つきあたりですか。どうもありがとうございます。

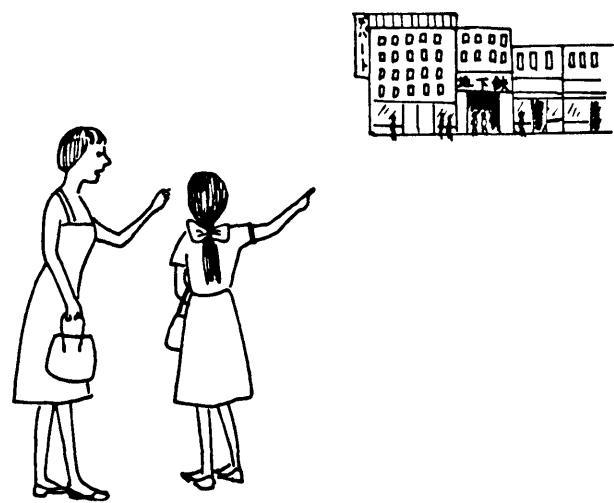
Lesson 10

ASKING THE DISTANCE

遠いですか、近いですか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- ask if a place is nearby or far away
- talk about distance and how long it takes to get to a particular place
- tell time



DIALOGS**KAIWA****Situation 1**

Ms. Davis is in the Ginza, intending to go shopping at Takashimaya department store. She thought the department store was close by but she can not find it.

Deebisu:	Sumimasen. Takashimaya wa kono chikaku desu ka?	<i>Excuse me. Is Takashimaya department store near here?</i>
Nihonjin:	Takashimaya desu ka? Kono michi o massugu itte, tsugi no koosaten o migi ni magaruto, hidari ni arimasu.	<i>Takashimaya ? Go straight and then make a right at the next intersection. It's on your left.</i>
Deebisu:	Soo desu ka. Koko kara tooi desu ka?	<i>Oh. Is it far from here?</i>
Nihonjin:	lie, tooku arimasen yo. Hachijuu meetoru gurai desu.	<i>No, it isn't far. It's about 80 meters.</i>
Deebisu:	Wakarimashita. Doomo.	<i>I see. Thanks.</i>

Situation 2

Mr. Collins is on his way home from a visit to a colleague, who lives in Shibuya. He got off a bus near Shibuya station to window-shop at a department store. After a while, he realizes that he has walked far from the station and is not sure how to get back.

Korinzu:	Sumimasen. Shibuya-eki wa doko desu ka?	<i>Excuse me. Where is Shibuya Station?</i>
Nihonjin:	Eki wa chotto tooi desu yo. Futatsu-me no kado o migi e massugu ikuto, tsukiatari ni depaato ga miemasu. Eki wa sono mae desu. Soo desu nee... Koko kara eki made aruite juugo-fun gurai desu.	<i>The station is a bit far. If you turn right at the second corner and then go straight, you'll see a department store at the end of the street. The station is in front of it Let me see. It's about a 15-minute walk from here to the station.</i>
Korinzu:	Aruite juugo-fun?	<i>A 15-minute walk?</i>
Nihonjin:	Ee.	<i>Yes.</i>
Korinzu:	Soo desu ka. Doomo.	<i>I see. Thanks.</i>

Situation 3

Mrs. Howard visited a friend in Yokohama and, on the way home, attended an outdoor concert at Hibiya Park. Her friend gave Mrs. Howard directions to the park and also suggested that she take a subway home. After the concert, Mrs. Howard asks someone on the street whether Hibiya station is far.

<i>Hawaado:</i>	Sumimasen. Chikatetsu no eki wa koko kara too desu ka?	<i>Excuse me. Is the subway station far from here?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	lie, sugu desu yo. Asoko ni depaato ga arimasu ne? Ano depaato no migi desu. Koko o massugu ikeba, sugu wakarimasu yo.	<i>No, it's right there. You see a department store over there, don't you? It's to the right of that department store. If you go straight from here, you'll find it right away.</i>
<i>Hawaado:</i>	Soo desu ka. Domo arigatoo.	<i>I see. Thank you.</i>

VOCABULARY**KOTOBA****Dialogs**

tooi	is far	とおい
tooku arimasen	is not far	とおくありません
meetoru	meter(s)	メートル
wakarimashita	I understand (lit. I understood)	わかりました
e	to, towards	へ
iku	go (dictionary form of ikimasu)	いく
miemasu	is visible, can be seen	みえます
made	until, as far as	まで
aruite	on foot, walking (TE form of arukimasu)	あるいて
...fun	minute(s)ふん
gurai	approximately, about	ぐらい
ikeba	if (you) go	いけば

Practice

chikai	is near	ちかい
de	by means of	で
kuruma	car, automobile	くるま
densha	electric train	でんしゃ
hikooki	air plane	ひこうき

Notes

...pun	minuteぶん
hitotsu	one	ひとつ
yottsu	four	よつつ
itsutsu	five	いつつ
muttsu	six	むつつ
nanatsu	seven	ななつ
yattsu	eight	やつつ
kokonotsu	nine	ここのつ
too	ten	とう
gaijin	foreigner	がいじん

Supplement

ichi-ji	one o'clock	いちじ
ni-ji	two o'clock	にじ
san-ji	three o'clock	さんじ
yo-ji	four o'clock	よじ
go-ji	five o'clock	ごじ
roku-ji	six o'clock	ろくじ
shichi-ji	seven o'clock	しちじ
hachi-ji	eight o'clock	はちじ
ku-ji	nine o'clock	くじ
juu-ji	ten o'clock	じゅうじ
juu ichi-ji	eleven o'clock	じゅういちじ
juu ni-ji	twelve o'clock	じゅうにじ
nan-ji	what time?	なんじ
han	half	はん
mae	before	まえ
sugi	after, past	すぎ

PRACTICE**RENSHUU****A. Pronunciation Drill**

In giving directions, Japanese people often mention the distance and/or how long it takes to get from one point to another. In this lesson, we will study the words for 'minute' and 'meter.' Study the following by repeating after the instructor.

Note how the pronunciation of the numerals and the words for 'minute' changes in different environments.

minutes	pronunciation	meters	pronunciation
1-pun	ip-pun	1 meetoru	ichi meetoru
2-fun	ni-fun	2 meetoru	ni meetoru
3-pun	san-pun	3 meetoru	san meetoru
4-pun	yon-pun	4 meetoru	yon meetoru
5-fun	go-fun	5 meetoru	go meetoru
6-pun	rop-pun	6 meetoru	roku meetoru
7-fun	nana-fun	7 meetoru	nana meetoru
8-pun	hap-pun	8 meetoru	hachi meetoru
9-fun	kyuu-fun	9 meetoru	kyuu meetoru
10-pun	jup-pun	10 meetoru	juu meetoru

Read the following:

minutes	meters
21 minutes	58 meters
36 minutes	23 meters
54 minutes	60 meters
60 minutes	36 meters
43 minutes	90 meters
13 minutes	85 meters
45 minutes	44 meters
37 minutes	30 meters
48 minutes	15 meters
32 minutes	80 meters

B. Comprehension Drill 注: 教師は次の練習のために何分と何メートルを用意する

The instructor will say several different periods of time or distances. Write down below the English equivalents of what you hear.

- | | |
|----|-----|
| 1. | 6. |
| 2. | 7. |
| 3. | 8. |
| 4. | 9. |
| 5. | 10. |

C. Substitution Drill

Eki kara depaato made aruite 5-fun gurai desu.

40-pun	25-fun
15-fun	7-fun
20-pun	10-fun
35-fun	5-fun
30-pun	3-fun

D. Substitution Drill

Koko kara soko made aruite 30-pun gurai desu.

basu de
takushii de
chikatetsu de
kuruma de
densha de
hikooki de

E. Substitution Drill

Eki wa koko kara tooi desu ka?

kono chikaku desu
doko desu
doko ni arimasu
kono chikaku ni arimasu
koko kara chikai desu
koko kara tooi desu

Lesson 10 Asking the distance

F. Production Exercise

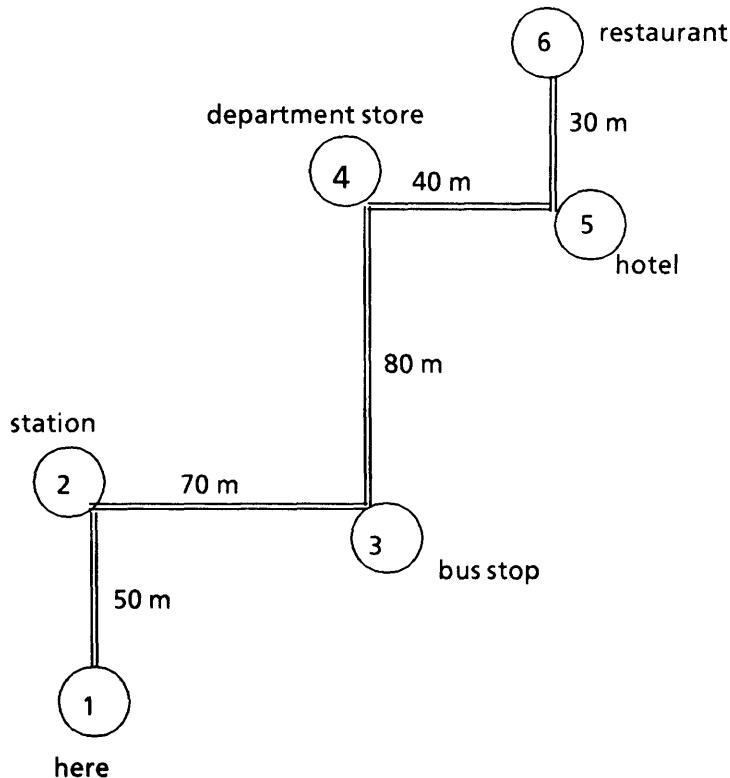
Directions:

Look at the illustration below and give the distance between points 1 and 2, 2 and 3, etc., using the following expression:

...kara ...made ...meetoru gurai desu.

Example:

Koko kara eki made 50 meetoru gurai desu.
(from point 1 to point 2)



G. Question and Answer Exercise

Directions:

Student A asks whether it is far from point 1 to point 2, from point 2 to point 3, etc., in the illustration for Exercise F above. Student B answers 'no' and gives the distance.

Example:

A: Koko kara eki made tooi desu ka? (from point 1 to point 2)

B: lie, tooku arimasen. 50 meetoru gurai desu.

H. Production Drill

Referring to the list below, say how long it takes to go from a particular place to a destination on foot. Use the following pattern:

Example:

Hibiya Kooen kara Kokkai Gijidoo made aruite 25-fun gurai desu.

Student's list

departure point	destination	minutes
chikatetsu no eki	Kabukiza	5
Amerika Taishikan	Sannoo Hoteru	20
Shinjuku-eki	Shinjuku Gyoen	15
Ueno-eki	Ueno Kooen	10
Hibiya Kooen	Kokkai Gijidoo	25

I. Conversation Management Exercise

注: 教師用スクリプト次ページ参照

Directions:

1. Choose the place to which you are going from the list below.
2. Ask the instructor the location of the place of your choice.
You can use the following expressions:

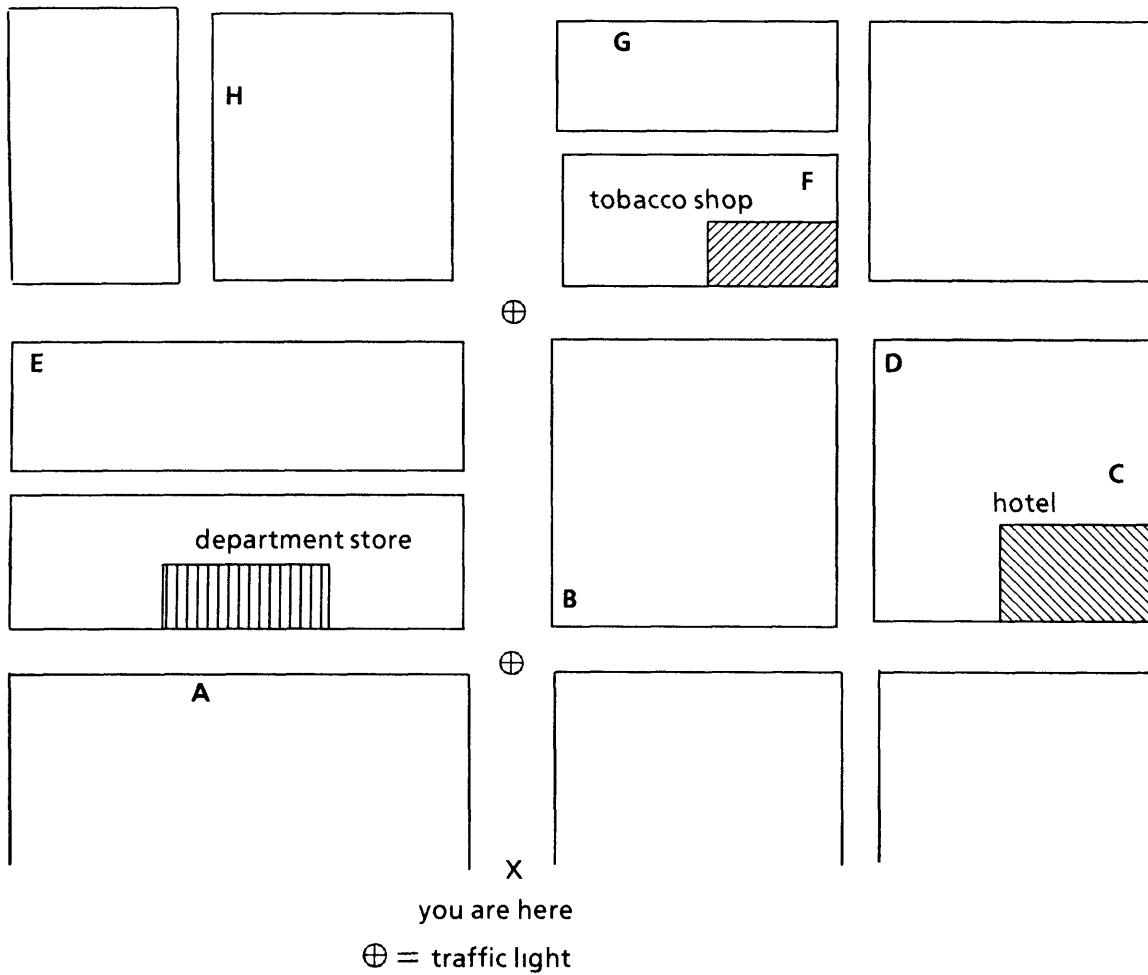
...wa doko desu ka?
...wa doko ni arimasu ka?
...wa kono chikaku desu ka?

3. Get directions from the instructor. When you don't understand the directions, ask her/him to repeat or slow down, confirm, etc.
4. Find the correct location of the place on the map on the next page and tell the instructor the letter of the place on the map. If your answer is correct, the instructor will say, *Hai, soo desu*. If it isn't, s/he will say, *lie, chigaimasu*. If your answer is not correct, go back to (3) above.

Student's list

supermarket
coffee shop
police box
subway station
park

Lesson 10 Asking the distance



教師用スクリプト

1. (スーパー)この道をまっ直く行くと、つきあたりです。そこを右に曲かると、すぐです。歩いて二十分くらいです。
2. (喫茶店)初めの信号を右に曲かって、まっ直く行くと、二つ目の左の角にホテルか見えます。ホテルの隣りにあります。
3. (交番)この道をまっ直く行って、次の交差点を左に曲がります。そこから五十メートルくらい行くと、右にテパートか見えます。そのテパートの前です。
4. (地下鉄駅)ここをまっ直く行って、二つ目の信号を右に曲かると、角にたはこ屋があります。そこを左に曲かって、次の左の角にあります。
5. (公園)この道をまっ直く行って、二つ目の信号を左に曲がります。次の角を右に曲かって五十メートルくらい行くと、右にあります。

READING**KANJI**

1.	一	ichi	one
2.	二	ni	two
3.	三	san	three
4.	四	shi/yon	four
5.	五	go	five
6.	六	roku	six
7.	七	shichi/nana	seven
8.	八	hachi	eight
9.	九	ku/kyuu	nine
10.	十	juu	ten

Lesson 10 Asking the distance

Supplementary Materials

A. Age 注: 教師は「才」を用いる(例: 五十二才)

1. The instructor will read the ages of several people.
Check the correct age.

Tanaka () 25
 () 52

Yamada () 46
 () 64

Ueda () 37
 () 73

2. Write the following ages in Japanese:

1 year old _____

2 years old _____

3 years old _____

4 years old _____

5 years old _____

6 years old _____

7 years old _____

8 years old _____

9 years old _____

10 years old _____

3. The instructor will now read the above ages. Check your answers and find out how the pronunciation changes in the cases of some of the numbers.

4. Write the following ages in Japanese:

11 years old _____ 28 years old _____

38 years old _____ 45 years old _____

B. Telling time

1. Repeat after the instructor for pronunciation practice:

ichi-ji
ni-ji
san-ji
yo-ji
go-ji
roku-ji
shichi-ji
hachi-ji
ku-ji
juu-ji
juu ichi-ji
juu ni-ji
nan-ji

2. Read the following out loud:

(Examples: 1:52=ichi-ji gojuu ni-fun, 2:30=ni-ji han)

1:15	2:47	3:13	4:25	5:38	6:29
7:51	8:46	9:34	10:18	11:26	12:35
9:30	3:40	4:10	12:25	10:34	11:19

3. Your instructor will read several times. Write each one down in Arabic numerals.

注: 教師は適宜に時間をいう

- | | |
|----|-----|
| 1. | 6. |
| 2. | 7. |
| 3. | 8. |
| 4. | 9. |
| 5. | 10. |

Lesson 10 Asking the distance

4. Production Exercise

Directions:

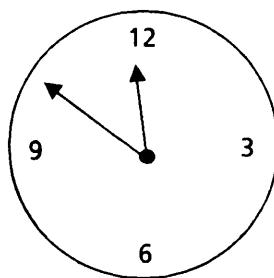
Student A asks Student B what time it is. Student B answers by referring to the diagrams below.

Example:

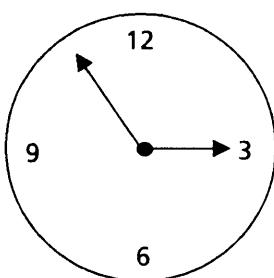
Student A: Ima nan-ji desu ka?

Student B: (referring to [a] below) Juu ichi-ji gojup-pun desu.

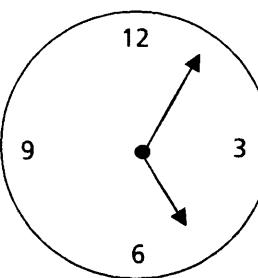
[a]



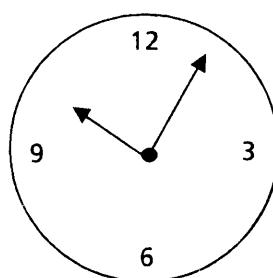
[b]



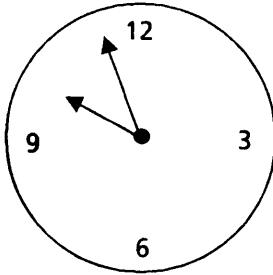
[c]



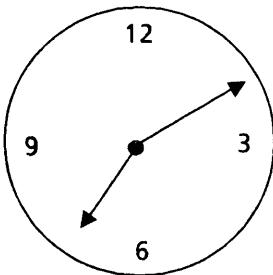
[d]



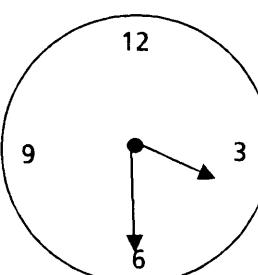
[e]



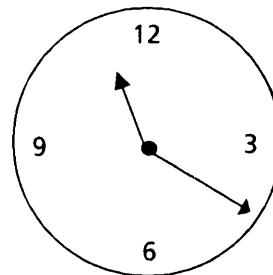
[f]



[g]



[h]



USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. *tooī* 'far'

You can use the word *tooī* 'far', when you want to find out if the place to which you are going is far or near, as in the following example:

Tooī desu ka? *Is it far?*

To understand the answer to this question, you will need to be able to pick up the following expression in addition to words like *hai*, *ee*, and *iie*.

Tooku arimasen. *(It's) not far.*

2. *gurai* 'about'

The word *gurai* is comparable to English 'about' or 'approximately.' Note that in Japanese *gurai* follows the quantity expression while in English 'about' or 'approximately' precedes.

Examples:

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| a. 10-pun gurai desu. | <i>(It's) about 10 minutes.</i> |
| b. 50 meetoru gurai desu. | <i>(It's) about 50 meters.</i> |

3. ...*made* 'as far as...'

You may sometimes hear a Japanese use the word *made* 'as far as' when s/he mentions a destination, as in the following example :

Soko made 10-pun gurai desu. *It's about 10 minutes to there.*

Again, note the difference in English and Japanese word order, as in the following:

eki made	<i>to/as far as the station</i>
tsugi no shingoo made	<i>to/as far as the next traffic light</i>

If we use the words ...*kara* 'from' and ...*made* 'as far as...', we can indicate the distance between two places, as in the following examples:

Tokyo kara Osaka made	<i>from Tokyo to Osaka</i>
koko kara soko made	<i>from here to there</i>

4. Other expressions often encountered in getting directions

- (a) Japanese people will often say something like 'If you go 50 meters, you will...' The Japanese expression for 'if you go' is ikuto or ieba.
- (b) Similarly, they will often say something like 'You will see a department store on your right.' The Japanese expression for 'You will see' is ...ga miemasu, which literally means 'is visible'

Example.

50 meetoru gurai ikuto, migi ni depaato ga miemasu.

If you go about 50 meters, you will see a department store on the right

- (c) When indicating how long it takes to get to a place, the Japanese will often specify the means of transportation, e.g., 'on foot'
The expression for 'on foot' in Japanese is aruite.

Example.

Soko made aruite 10-pun gurai desu.

It is/takes about 10 minutes to get there on foot

5. Two sets of numerals

In Lesson 8, we learned such expressions as futatsu-me (no shingoo), 'the second (traffic light)', and mittsu-me (no kado) 'the third (corner)'. The words futatsu-me and mittsu-me mean 'the second' and 'the third,' respectively, and futa- and mi- indicate the numbers 'two' and 'three'. These two words are native Japanese numerals. When simply counting numbers, however, the Japanese use another set of numerals which are of Chinese origin. The native Japanese numerals are used only for the numbers one to ten. Any numbers larger than ten are expressed in Chinese numerals. Below is a table that shows the difference between the two systems (Japanese = native Japanese numerals, Chinese = numerals of Chinese origin).

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Japanese	hi-	fu-	mi-	yo-	itsu-	mu-	nana-	ya-	kokono-	too
Chinese	ichi	ni	san	shi	go	roku	shichi	hachi	ku/kyuu	juu

As indicated by the hyphen following the Japanese numerals above, the native Japanese numerals are always used with some other element. The exception is the number 10, too, which occurs without tsu at the end. Ask your instructor how these two sets of numerals are used in counting objects in Japanese.

6. Helpful things to know in getting directions

(a) You may experience a situation in which a Japanese person says to you '*I can't speak English*,' even if you are talking to the person in Japanese! This remark is certainly a very discouraging one, especially to a person who has painstakingly studied Japanese before coming to Japan.

However, don't be too discouraged because even foreigners whose Japanese is quite fluent will have this experience occasionally. This is because ordinary Japanese assume that gaijin (外人) 'foreigners' don't speak Japanese. Furthermore, most Japanese have little confidence in their ability to speak and understand English. Therefore, the first thing a Japanese person might do would be to '*proclaim*' that s/he can't speak English (sometimes even before you start to talk).

In order not to embarrass such a person (or not to get embarrassed), be sure to use an attention-getter like **Sumimasen** and to wait for the answer. If you get a reply in Japanese, you can simply go ahead and ask for directions. If the person still does not answer, try someone else.

You may also experience a situation in which a Japanese person replies only in English, even if you are talking to the person in Japanese. In one sense, such a situation is convenient for you, for you can then begin communicating in English. However, you may feel discouraged or even insulted, because you may feel the person believes your Japanese is not good enough. Again, don't take these things too seriously, because it may be that the Japanese is simply trying to be courteous or friendly by speaking in English or that s/he wants to practice his/her English.

(b) The metric system is used in Japan and it may take some time to get the 'feeling' of the amount expressed in meters, unless you are already familiar with the system. The following conversion tables are provided to give you a rough idea:

Meters to feet (approximate)					
meters	1	5	10	15	20
feet	3.3	16.4	32.8	49.2	65.6

Feet to meters (approximate)					
feet	1	5	10	15	20
meters	0.3	1.5	3.1	4.6	6.1

会話

Situation 1

ティヒス すみません。高島屋はこの近くですか。
日本人 高島屋ですか。この道をまっすぐ行って、
次の交差点を右に曲かると、左にあります。
ティヒス そうですか。ここから遠いですか。
日本人 いいえ、遠くありませんよ。80メートルくらいです。
ティヒス わかりました。どうも。

Situation 2

コリンス すみません。渋谷駅はどこですか。
日本人 駅はちょっと遠いですよ。二つ目の角を右へまっすぐ
行くと、つきあたりにテパートか見えます。
駅はその前です。
そうですねえ　ここから駅まで歩いて15分くらいです。
歩いて15分?
ええ。
コリンス そうですか。どうも。

Situation 3

ハワート すみません。地下鉄の駅はここから遠いですか。
日本人 いいえ、すぐですよ。あそこにテパートがありますね。
あのテパートの右です。
ここをまっすぐ行けば、すぐわかりますよ。
ハワート そうですか。どうもありかとう。

REVIEW LESSON:**MAKING IT WORK(1)**

This is a review lesson. You will be asked to act out or make up a conversation with the instructor based on the situations listed below. Try to use the expressions you have learned so far as appropriately as possible.

What do you do or say in the following situations?

- 1 You want to find out if that building over there is Tokyo Station
- 2 You want to find out if Ginza 4-chome is far from where you are
- 3 Someone gives you directions
- 4 You are shopping in a department store and have to go to the bathroom. When you can't find it, how would you ask your way?
- 5 You want to find out from a Japanese if this is the office of Mr. Johnson
- 6 You are on your way to work in the morning and you want to greet a Japanese acquaintance you see on the way
- 7 You have been asked on the street by a Japanese whose English is poor where the U.S. Embassy is
- 8 You have received something from a Japanese
- 9 You have just gotten off the train and you think that this street goes to Ginza 4-chome. How would you check this?
- 10 It's after work and before you go home
- 11 You want to get a stranger's attention on the street so you can ask something
- 12 You want to find out if there is a taxi stand in the immediate vicinity
- 13 You asked the way to the station but the person you asked speaks Japanese so fast you can't understand
- 14 You want to find out what that building at the end of the street is
- 15 You want a favor done
- 16 You want to find out if the Mitsukoshi Department Store is on the second or third corner (from here)
- 17 You have made a telephone call to a certain office and gotten the wrong number
- 18 You are at a restaurant and have seen something among the plastic samples that you would like to try, but you don't know what it's called in Japanese
- 19 You want to find out if a given Japanese knows English
- 20 You want to go to the Kabuki Theater and you asked a Japanese the way but you didn't understand the answer well
- 21 You are asked by a Japanese 'Are you (your name)?'
- 22 You are asked by a Japanese 'Are you (someone else's name)?'

Review Lesson: Making It Work (1)

23. You have been looking for Mr. Johnson's office but you can't find it.
24. You want to find out where Mr. Sato's room is.
25. You are first introduced to someone.
26. You think it's Mr. Tanaka of the Trade Ministry but you want to make sure.
27. You meet a Japanese friend. Ask how his wife (or husband) is.
28. You are looking for the Sony Building. You want to find out if it's near or far from where you are now.
29. You're not sure where the station you're looking for is. Ask a Japanese to draw you a map.
30. You're on the train and you want to find out how many more stations there are before Roppongi.
31. You're on the train and you want to make sure that Shinjuku is the station after next.
32. You're on the train and you want to find out what the next station is.
33. You want to find out how long it will take to go from where you are to the subway station.
34. Your Japanese has been praised by a Japanese. How do you respond?
35. There's a phone call for Ms. Tanaka from a Japanese but she is out. What do you do?
36. You want to order sukiyaki.
37. You want to ask about the location of Takashimaya department store.
38. You want to ask for an English menu.
39. You want to propose a time.
40. You want to confirm the name of a person to whom you are introduced.
41. You want to ask a person when s/he wants to meet.
42. You want to ask for a person who understands English.
43. You propose to meet on Saturday.
44. You say you are the wife/husband of an employee.
45. You want to ask a person about a convenient time to meet.
46. You want to introduce your wife/husband to a Japanese.
47. You want to exchange business cards with someone.
48. You want to introduce a friend to your instructor.
49. You want to ask the location of the nearest bus stop.
50. You want to ask the time.

Lesson 11

BUYING A TRAIN TICKET

横浜へ行きたいんですが.....

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- ask a Japanese to tell you the fare to your destination
- ask a Japanese to buy a ticket for you
- find out where you can buy a ticket at a station
- buy a ticket at a ticket window
- count numbers up to 999



DIALOGS**KAIWA****Situation 1**

Ms Spencer wants to go to Shibuya to see a special exhibit at a department store. She is now at Tokyo Station. To go to Shibuya, she can use either the subway or the JR-sen. Since there is a subway exit that leads to an underground entrance to the department store, she decides to take the subway.

<i>Supensaa:</i>	Sumimasen.	<i>Excuse me</i>
	Shibuya e ikitain desu ga, kippu uriba wa doko desu ka?	<i>I want to go to Shibuya, (but) where is the ticket window?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Chikatetsu desu ka, JR-sen desu ka?	<i>The subway or the JR-sen?</i>
<i>Supensaa:</i>	Chikatetsu desu.	<i>The subway.</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Aa, jaa, koko o massugu itte, kaidan o agatte, chotto itta . . .	<i>Oh, well, go straight from here, go up the stairs and go a little further . . .</i>
<i>Supensaa:</i>	Sumimasen. Wakarimasen.	<i>Sorry, I don't understand</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Soo desu ka. Jaa, tsurete itte agemashoo.	<i>Oh. Well, then I'll take you there.</i>
<i>Supensaa:</i>	Doomo arigatoo.	<i>Thank you very much.</i>

Situation 2

Ms. Norris is at Tokyo station en route to Kamakura for sightseeing. Although her friend has told her how much the fare is to Kamakura, she doesn't remember. To find out the fare she tries to read the fare chart, but all the station names are written in Kanji which she doesn't recognize.

<i>Norisu:</i>	Sumimasen. Kamakura e ikitain desu ga, ikura desu ka?	<i>Excuse me I want to go to Kamakura, (but) how much is it?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Eeto. . . Koko kara Kamakura made 900-en desu.	<i>Let me see. . . It's 900 yen from here to Kamakura.</i>
<i>Norisu:</i>	Soo desu ka. Doomo.	<i>I see. Thank you.</i>

Situation 3

After a weekend in Hakone, Mr and Mrs. Murphy are going home to Shinjuku by train. Mr. Murphy sees several ticket-windows at the station. He goes to one of the windows.

Maafii: Sumimasen. Shinjuku e ikitain desu ga, kippu wa koko desu ka? (but) is this where tickets are sold?

Madoguchi no hito: Ee, soo desu yo. Yes, that's right.

Maafii: Jaa, Shinjuku, 2-mai. Well, then, two tickets to Shinjuku.

Madoguchi no hito: 1,280-en desu. That's 1,280 yen

VOCABULARY**KOTOBA****Dialogs**

ikitain desu ga	(I) want to go (TAI form of ikimasu)	いきたいんですか
ga	but (functions like English semicolon)	か
kippu	ticket	きっぷ
kippu uriba	ticket window	きっぷうりは
kaidan	stairway	かいたん
agatte	go up (TE form of agarimasu)	あかって
ikura	how much?	いくら
en	yen	えん
hyaku	hundred	ひゃく

Practice

...byaku	.. hundred (san-byaku)	ひゃく
...pyaku	...hundred (rop-pyaku and hap-pyaku)	ぴゃく
jidoo hanbaiki	vending machine	しどうはんはいき

Notes

mai	counter for flat objects	まい
madoguchi	(sales) window	まとくち
...ban	number...	はん
shirimasesen	doesn't/don't know	しりません
kaisuu-ken	coupon tickets	かいすうけん
teeki-ken	season pass, commuter ticket	ていきけん
unchin (ryookin) seesanjo	fare adjustment window	りょうきん せいさんじょ
katte kudasai- masen ka	won't you buy (it) for me?	かってくたさい ませんか

kaisatsuguchi

gate (at station)

かいさつぐち

Personalized List

PRACTICE

RENSHUU

A. Comprehension Exercise 注: 教師は適宜に枚数を言う

The instructor will read numbers of tickets (e.g., ichi-mai, ni-mai, etc.). Write down the number of tickets you hear mentioned.

- | | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|-----|
| 1. | 3. | 5. | 7. | 9. |
| 2. | 4. | 6. | 8. | 10. |

B. Translation Exercise

Example:

(cue) one ticket to Ueno
(response) Ueno, ichi-mai

two tickets to Yokohama
four tickets to Shinjuku
three tickets to Shibuya
five tickets to Asakusa
one ticket to the Ginza

C. Substitution Drill

Kippu uriba wa doko desu ka?

JR-sen no eki
Chikatetsu no eki
Chikatetsu no kippu uriba
Koko
JR-sen no kippu uriba
Jidoo hanbaiki

D. Substitution Drill

Ueno e ikitain desu ga, ikura desu ka?

Tokyo	Kyoto
Nagoya	Osaka
Fukuoka	Yokohama

E. Reading numbers

In Lesson 1, we learned how to count from 1 to 99. In this lesson, we will learn the numbers up to 999. Study the following and practice the pronunciation by repeating after the instructor.

100	hyaku
200	ni - hyaku
300	san - byaku
400	yon - hyaku
500	go - hyaku
600	rop - pyaku
700	nana - hyaku
800	hap - pyaku
900	kyuu - hyaku

123 is read as hyaku ni-juu san. Now read the following numbers:

- | | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|
| 1. 132 | 3. 243 | 5. 356 | 7. 404 | 9. 580 |
| 2. 671 | 4. 765 | 6. 818 | 8. 927 | 10. 999 |

The instructor will read some numbers. Write them down.

注: 教師は百から九百九十九までの数字を用意する

- | | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|-----|
| 1. | 2. | 3. | 4. | 5. |
| 6. | 7. | 8. | 9. | 10. |

F. Information Exchange Exercise

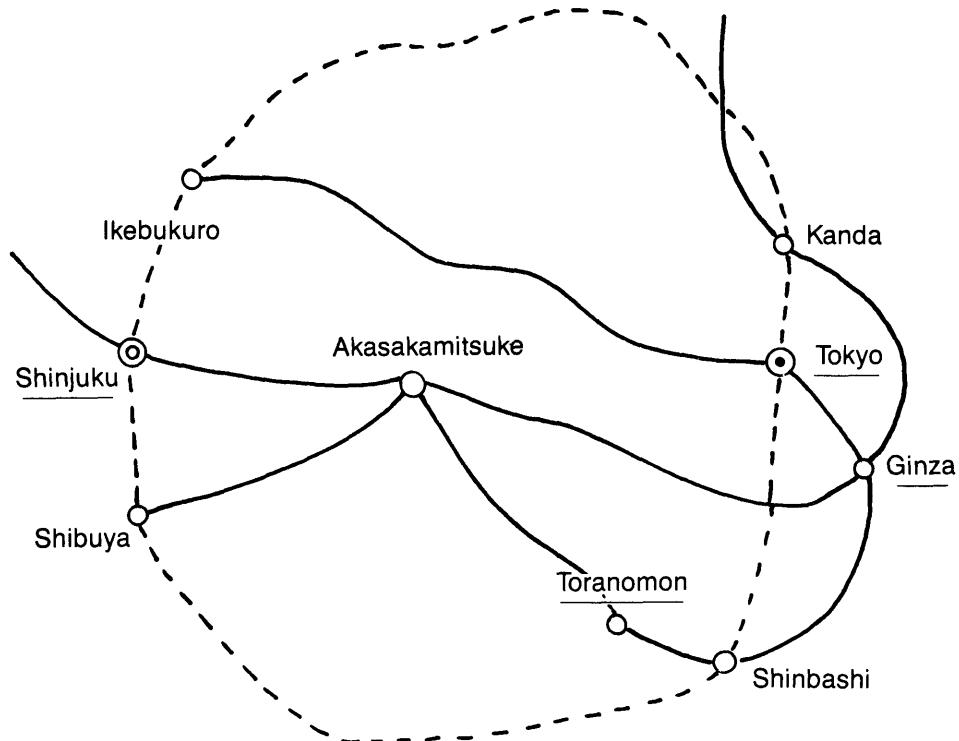
Directions:

Student A selects two subway stations from the map on the next page and asks how much the fare is. (Use the underlined stations only.) Student B answers by referring to the fare chart.

Example:

- Student A: Tokyo kara Ginza made ikura desu ka?
 Student B: Hyaku ni-juu en desu.

Lesson 11 Buying a train ticket



Note: **Toranomon** is the subway station nearest the American Embassy.

Fare Chart for Student B

<u>from</u>	<u>to</u>	<u>fare</u>
Tokyo	Ginza	120
	Toranomon	180
	Shinjuku	360
Ginza	Tokyo	120
	Toranomon	180
	Shinjuku	320
Toranomon	Tokyo	180
	Ginza	180
	Shinjuku	300
Shinjuku	Tokyo	360
	Ginza	320
	Toranomon	300

G. Information Exchange Exercise

Directions:

Student A asks for a ticket/tickets to a destination by choosing a place from the list below and asking how much the fare is. The instructor confirms the destination and gives the fare, referring to the fare chart. Student A confirms the fare. The instructor responds to student A's confirmation. (If student A doesn't get the fare correctly, the instructor gives the fare again.) Student A then says *Hai 'Here you are,'* pretending s/he is giving the money to the instructor.

Example:

Student A: Kamakura, ichi-mai. Ikura desu ka?

Instructor: Kamakura desu ka? 800-en desu.

Student A: 800-en desu ne.

Instructor: Hai, soo desu. OR lie, (correct fare) . . . en desu.

Student A: Hai (pretending that s/he is giving the money).

List for student A

<u>destination</u>	<u>number of tickets</u>
Tokyo	3
Ueno	2
Shinagawa	2
Yokohama	1
Kamakura	1

教師用 運賃表

<u>行き先</u>	<u>運賃</u>
東京	三百円
上野	四百円
品川	三百円
横浜	五百円
鎌倉	九百円

H. Interpreting Exercise

Directions:

Student A asks for information in English, following the directions below. Student B translates the directions into Japanese. The instructor responds (with possible additional information). Student B takes notes, either in English or Japanese, and confirms his/her understanding. Student B expresses his/her thanks. The instructor responds. Student B then translates the information into English for student A.

Example:

Student A: I want to go to Otemachi. Please ask where the ticket window is.

Student B: Otemachi e ikitai n desu ga, kippu uriba wa doko desu ka?

Instructor: Koko o massugu itte, migi ni arimasu yo.
Esukareetaa no mukoo desu.

Student B: (asks to slow down or repeat, confirms, etc.)
Doomo (arigatoo).

Instructor: Doo itashimashite, etc.

Student B: (to student A) Go straight. It's on the right, beyond the escalator.

Directions for student A:

1. You want to go to Asakusa. Ask where the ticket window is.
2. You want to go to Toranomon. Ask how much the fare is.
3. You want to go to Hibiya. You are at a ticket window. Ask whether you can buy a ticket there or not.
4. You want to go to Mitsukoshi Mae station (in front of Mitsukoshi). Ask the instructor to buy a ticket for you and ask how much the fare is. Give him or her the money.
5. You want to go to Nihonbashi. You are in front of a ticket vending machine. Ask how much the fare is.
6. You want to go to Akasakamitsuke. Ask where you can buy a ticket.

教師用スクリプト

1. 切符売場ですか。その自動販売機ですよ。
2. 虎ノ門ですか。二百円です。
3. そこの自動販売機で買ってください。百八十円です。
4. ええ、いいですよ。(学生かいくらか聞いたあとで)二百三十円ですよ。
(切符を買ってから) はい、これが切符です。
5. さあ、私も知りませんか、ああ、上に表かありますね。
ええと、二百八十円です。
6. 赤坂見附ですね。あっちの方です。連れて行ってあげましょう。

READING**KANJI**

1. 大人 otona adult
2. 小人 kodomo child(ren)
3. 運賃表 unchinhyyo fare list
4. 発売中 hatsubaichuu on sale
5. 発売中止 hatsubai-chuushi not on sale
6. 両替機 ryoogaeki money changing machine

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. How to express your desire to do something

When you want to express your desire to do something, you can use the following pattern:

V-tain desu. *I want to V*

(Note V indicates a verb stem)

In order to use this expression, you have to know the correct verb form. In this lesson, you will learn the verb form iki- 'go' as in the following example

Ikitain desu. *I want to go*

To specify the place you want to go to, place the destination and the particle e in front of the above expression, as illustrated below

Ginza e ikitain desu. *I want to go to the Ginza*

This expression will be especially useful when you want to find out where you can buy a ticket, how much the fare is, etc. In such cases, use an expression like the following

I want to go to the Ginza, where is the ticket window?

The Japanese expression for the above is

Ginza e ikitain desu ga, kippu uriba wa doko desu ka?

Note that the particle ga in the above sentence literally means 'but.' However, in this sentence it is only a way of smoothing the transition between the statement of desire 'I want to' and what follows, and should not be taken literally.

a. When you want to find out the fare

When you want to find out a price, you can use the following expression

Ikura desu ka? *How much is it?*

Thus, when you want to say 'I want to go to Toranomon, (but) how much is it?' (i.e., 'how much is the fare'), you can say

Toranomon e ikitain desu ga, ikura desu ka?

b. *When you want to find out where you can buy a ticket*

The following are some useful words to know if you want to find out where you can buy a ticket:

kippu	<i>ticket</i>
kippu uriba	<i>ticket window (lit., ticket selling place)</i>

- (I) When you want to ask 'Can I buy a ticket here?' or 'Are tickets sold here?,' you can use the following expression:

Kippu wa koko desu ka? (*lit., Are tickets here?*)

Thus, the expression **Toranomon e ikitain desu ga, kippu wa koko desu ka?** means '*I want to go to Toranomon; can I buy a ticket here?*'

If you are at the wrong window, the clerk at the window will tell you the right window number. S/he will say something like the following:

...ban no madoguchi desu. (*It's*) window #...
(See Lesson 12 for usage of -ban.)

- (II) When you want to find out where a ticket window is, you can use the following expression:

Kippu uriba wa doko desu ka?

As in (a) above, if you want to say '*I want to go to the Ginza; can you tell me where the ticket window is?*', you can say:

Ginza e ikitain desu ga, kippu uriba wa doko desu ka?

2. Some useful expressions for buying a ticket

The Japanese expressions used in buying a ticket at a ticket window are very simple. When you want to buy a ticket to the Ginza, for example, you simply say:

Ginza.

However, although not very likely, you may be asked by the clerk at the window how many tickets you want. In order to avoid being asked this kind of question, which you may find difficult to understand, it is a good idea to specify the number first. The number of tickets can be expressed in the following pattern:

numeral + mai

The word **mai** refers to thin flat objects. Words of this kind are sometimes called counters, for they are used when counting objects and persons. They indicate what kind of objects you are counting.

When you want to say 'One ticket to the Ginza,' for example, you can say:

Lesson 11 Buying a train ticket

Ginza, ichi-mai.

Likewise, when you want to say 'Two tickets to Toranomon,' you can say:

Toranomon, ni-mai.

Note that in specifying the number of tickets, you simply use the appropriate number in Japanese and add mai, which stays the same, regardless of the number.

3. **Tsurete itte agemashoo** '*I'll take you there*'

When directions you asked would be complicated and the place you are looking for is not far, a Japanese person will often take you there instead of giving you directions. In such a case, s/he would say:

Tsurete itte agemashoo. *I'll take you there.*

When a Japanese person doesn't know the place you are looking for, his/her typical reaction will be to say,

Saa, ... or Soo desu ne ... *Well, ...*

He or she may then add:

Watakushi mo shirimasen. *I don't know, either.*

4. **Kinds of tickets**

a. Regular tickets

For most short distance trips, tickets can be bought from a ticket vending machine. In some cases, you can buy them only from a machine, not at a window. What you need to do to buy a ticket from a vending machine is:

- (I) Find out the fare from the fare chart, which usually takes the form of a map of train routes and is placed above the machines.
- (II) Put sufficient coins into the slot and push the button that has the correct price on it. The ticket (and change) will come out at the bottom of the machine.

b. **kaisuu-ken (回数券)** '*coupon tickets*'

The kaisuu-ken (回数券) is a kind of discount ticket. It is a sheet of eleven tickets which can be bought at the ticket window of a station for the price of ten regular tickets. It is valid only for the designated stations and a ticket should be separated from the rest only after it is punched or stamped at the gate or *kaisatsuguchi* (改札口) when entering the platform area.

c. **teeki-ken** (定期券) 'season pass' or 'commuter ticket'

The teeki-ken (定期券) is a season pass which entitles you to unlimited train rides between the designated stations for the designated period. You can buy a teeki-ken that is valid for one month, three months or six months at the ticket window of a station. With a teeki-ken, you can save nearly 50% of the regular price, depending on how often you use it and how long it is valid. The longer the designated period, the larger the discount rate is.

5. How to buy the correct ticket

Since the station names on the fare chart are usually written only in Kanji, you need to be able to read the Kanji in order to buy the correct ticket unless you know the fare beforehand. You may wonder what you should do if you cannot read the station names and don't know the fare. The following are some suggestions for such occasions.

a. Buy the lowest fare ticket from the machine, take the train and go to the unchin/ryookin-seesanjo (運賃/料金精算所) 'fare adjustment window' before you go through the gate at your destination. The clerk there will tell you how much the difference is. Pay the difference and get a receipt from the clerk. When you go through the gate give the receipt to the attendant. (You can't go through the automated gate with the receipt.)

b Ask a Japanese person near the vending machine to buy the ticket for you. The expressions that can be used for this purpose are

(your destination) e ikitain desu. *I want go to (your destination)*
 Kippu o katte kudasaimasen ka? *Would you please buy a ticket for me?*

c If you only want to know the fare, you can ask somebody near you by saying

(your destination) e ikitain desu ga, ikura desu ka?
I want to go to (your destination), but how much is it?

d Ask a Japanese friend to write the name of the station to which you are going in Kanji beforehand. (If your friend knows the fare, you don't need to do this, of course.) When you buy a ticket, match the Kanji station name you have with the one in the fare chart and find out the fare.

6. **Kaisatsuguchi** (改札口) 'gate'

When entering or exiting the platform area, you must go through a kaisatsuguchi (改札口). In some stations in major cities, there are two types of kaisatsuguchi: the automated gate and the one with an attendant. At such stations, if you have a regular ticket bought from the vending machine, you can go through the automated gate by simply inserting the ticket into the machine and removing it as you go through. Your ticket will not be returned when you go through the gate at your destination. If you have a kaisuu-ken (回数券) you must use the gate with an attendant, for your ticket must be punched or stamped by the attendant. (You give the ticket to the attendant at your destination.) With the teeki-ken (定期券) you should check whether you can use the automated gate or not, because some teeki-ken allow you to go through the automated gate and others don't. If you are not sure whether or not you can

Lesson 11 Buying a train ticket

go through the automated gate with the ticket you have, it is better to use the one with an attendant.

7. Public Transport

a. JR-sen (formerly Kokuden)

Japan Railway (JR) operates many electric train services in and through Tokyo. They are known as JR-sen trains, whose lines can be identified by the distinctive color of the coaches.

The Yamate-sen loop line circles the heart of Tokyo, one service going clockwise and the other counterclockwise. It stops at all sub-centers such as Shinjuku, Shinbashi, Shibuya, Ueno, Ikebukuro, Shinagawa, etc. Tokyo station is also one of the stops. The Yamate-sen coaches are green in color. It takes 62 minutes to make one complete round, which gives visitors an excellent cross-section view of Tokyo.

b. Subway

The Japanese call the subway chikatetsu. The ten subway lines which crisscross under Tokyo are the quickest and cheapest way of going from place to place. The coaches are clean, very well illuminated, and run at frequent intervals.

All lines start operating at 5 a. m. and most stop running just before midnight. The lines connect at various points with JR-sen trains.

Some of the entrances to the subway are on the sidewalk while others are on the sides of buildings. Big stations have several entrances (exits) which could be more than 100 meters apart. Therefore, ask which exit you should take to reach your destination. At every platform, the name of the station is spelled out in English.

Most stations have automatic ticket vendors. It is recommended that, whatever the destination, you buy the minimum... en ticket. You can pay the difference when you get off. Tickets are punched as you go through the gate and must be turned in at the end of the ride, so hang on to them.

c. Bus

The bus is the best way for getting to points between the subway and a JR-sen station. It gets you closest to where you want to go because the distances between stops are short. However, buses are very difficult to use unless you know the language or are familiar with the routes. The tremendous number of routes and the obscure identification of the stops can be most confusing. Ride buses only if you are able to obtain clear, specific, and accurate directions beforehand.

 会話

Situation 1

スペンサー すみません。
 洪谷へ行きたいんですか、切符売場はどこですか。
 日本人 地下鉄ですか、JR線ですか。
 スペンサー 地下鉄です。
 日本人 ああ、しゃ、ここをまっすぐ行って、階段を上かって
 ちょっと行った
 スペンサー すみません。わかりません。
 日本人 そうですか。しゃ、連れて行ってあけましょう。
 スペンサー とうもありかとう。

Situation 2

ノリス すみません。鎌倉へ行きたいんですか、いくらですか。
 日本人 ええと　ここから鎌倉まで九百円です。
 ノリス そうですか。どうも。

Situation 3

マーフィー すみません。
 新宿へ行きたいんですか、切符はここでですか。
 空口の人 ええ、そうですよ。
 マーフィー しゃ、新宿、二枚。
 空口の人 千二百八十円です。

Lesson 11 Buying a train ticket

Lesson 12

TAKING THE RIGHT TRAIN

大阪行きは何番線ですか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- find out the track from which your train leaves
- find out if a train is the one you want to take
- check on the destination of a given train
- count numbers up to 9,999



DIALOGS**KAIWA****Situation 1**

Mrs. Williams wants to go to Yokohama to do some grocery shopping at the PX. At Shinagawa station, she asks a Japanese person to which track she should go.

<i>Uirimusu:</i>	Sumimasen. Yokohama e ikitain desu ga, kono hoomu desu ka?	<i>Excuse me. I want to go to Yokohama, but is this the right platform?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Yokohama desu ka? Yokohama wa Yokosuka-sen desu kara... eeto... (pointing) mukoo no hoo desu yo.	<i>Yokohama? Since the Yokosuka line goes to Yokohama... let's see... It's over there (pointing).</i>
<i>Uirimusu:</i>	Mukoo?	<i>Over there?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Ee, ichi-bansen to ni-bansen desu.	<i>Yes, platforms number 1 and 2.</i>
<i>Uirimusu:</i>	Ichi-bansen to?	<i>Number 1 and?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Ee, ichi-bansen to ni-bansen desu.	<i>Yes, number 1 and number 2.</i>
<i>Uirimusu:</i>	Soo desu ka. Domo arigatoo.	<i>I see. Thank you.</i>

Situation 2

Ms. Watson is going to Yokosuka to see a doctor at the base. She is waiting for a train on a platform at Tokyo station.

<i>Watson:</i>	Sumimasen. Kono densha wa Yokosuka e ikimasu ka?	<i>Excuse me. Does this train go to Yokosuka?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Iie, ikimasen yo. Yokosuka-iki wa atchi desu.	<i>No, it doesn't. The train bound for Yokosuka is that way.</i>
<i>Watson:</i>	Nan-bansen desu ka?	<i>What platform number is it?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	San-bansen desu yo.	<i>It's number 3.</i>
<i>Watson:</i>	Domo arigatoo.	<i>Thank you.</i>

Situation 3

Mr. Russell has an appointment to see a professor at Gakugei Daigaku. He was told that he should take a Toyoko line train bound for Sakuragicho from Shibuya.

<i>Rasseru:</i>	Sumimasen. Kore wa Sakuragicho-iki desu ka?	<i>Excuse me. Is this train bound for Sakuragicho?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Ee, soo desu.	<i>Yes, it is.</i>
<i>Rasseru:</i>	Gakugei Daigaku ni tomarimasu ka?	<i>Does it stop at Gakugei Daigaku?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Iie, kore wa kyuukoo desu kara tomarimasen yo. Tsugi no kakueki ga tomarimasu yo.	<i>No, since it's an express train, it doesn't stop. The next local train stops there.</i>
<i>Rasseru:</i>	Soo desu ka. Domo.	<i>I see. Thank you.</i>

VOCABULARY**KOTOBA****Dialogs**

hoomu	platform	ホーム
...sen	...line, trackせん
kara	because	から
...bansen	line/platform/track number...ばんせん
to	and	と
ikimasen	doesn't/don't go	いきません
...iki	(train) bound for...いき
nan-bansen	which line/platform/track	なんばんせん
tomarimasu	stop/stops	とまります
kyuukoo	express train	きゅうこう
tomarimasen	doesn't/don't stop	とまりません
kakueki	local train	かくえき

Practice

...sen	thousand	せん
...zen	thousand (san-zen)	ぜん
Chuo-sen	Chuo-line	ちゅうおうせん

Notes

JR	Japan Railway	
Shinkansen	bullet train	しんかんせん
tokkyuu	super express train	とっきゅう
futsuu	local train (lit., usual)	ふつう
kaisoku	express train	かいそく
futsuu-sha	coach car	ふつうしゃ
guriin-sha	first-class (lit., green car)	グリーンしゃ
jiyuu-seki	unreserved seat	じゅうせき

shitee-seki	reserved seat	していせき
nobori	up-train	のぼり
kudari	down-train	くだり
doozo	please, go ahead, feel free	どうぞ
shirubaa shiito	priority (lit., silver) seat	シルハーシート
oshiya	(subway, train) pusher	おしゃ

Personalized list

PRACTICE

RENSHUU

A. *Reading Numbers*

In this lesson, we will study numbers up to 9,999. The Japanese word for 'thousand' is **sen** (千). Study the following numbers and practice their pronunciation by repeating after the instructor:

1,000	sen
2,000	ni-sen
3,000	san-sen
4,000	yon-sen
5,000	go-sen
6,000	roku-sen
7,000	nana-sen
8,000	has-sen
9,000	kyuu-sen

Note how the pronunciation changes in 3,000 and 8,000.

Now read the following numbers:

- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| 1. 1,329 | 6. 6,892 |
| 2. 2,751 | 7. 7,064 |
| 3. 3,648 | 8. 8,276 |
| 4. 4,510 | 9. 9,405 |
| 5. 5,137 | 10. 5,893 |

The instructor will read several numbers aloud. Write them down in Arabic numerals below.

注: 教師は 9,999までの数を用意する

- | | |
|----|-----|
| 1. | 6. |
| 2 | 7. |
| 3. | 8. |
| 4. | 9. |
| 5. | 10. |

B. Substitution Drill

Yokohama-iki wa nan-bansen desu ka?

Tokyo-iki
san-bansen
Osaka-iki
Chuo-sen
hachi-bansen
go-bansen
Yokosuka-iki
nan-bansen

C. Substitution Drill

Yokohama-iki wa kono hoomu desu ka?

nobori
Tokyo-iki
yon-bansen
kudari
Osaka-iki
Yokosuka-sen

D. Substitution Drill

Kono densha wa Yokohama ni tomarimasu ka?

Ochanomizu
ikimasu
Shinagawa
Toranomon
tomarimasu
Ikebukuro
Yotsuya

E. Substitution Drill

Kono densha wa Shinjuku ni tomarimasu.

Kono basu
Ginza yon-choome
Kono densha
Ochanomizu
Kyuukoo
Ikebukuro
Yotsuya

F. Combination Exercise

Directions:

The student asks the instructor the platform of a train from the list below and writes it down.

Example:

Student: **Osaka-iki wa nan-bansen desu ka?**
Instructor: **Nana-bansen to hachi-bansen desu.**

List for student	注: 教師は適当に答える
a train for Nagoya	Platform # ()
a train for Tokyo	Platform # ()
a train for Yokohama	Platform # ()
a train for Sapporo	Platform # ()
a train for Osaka	Platform # ()

G. Reading and Question Exercise

The following is part of the train route of the Chuo-line. Practice the pronunciation of the names of the various stops by repeating after the instructor.

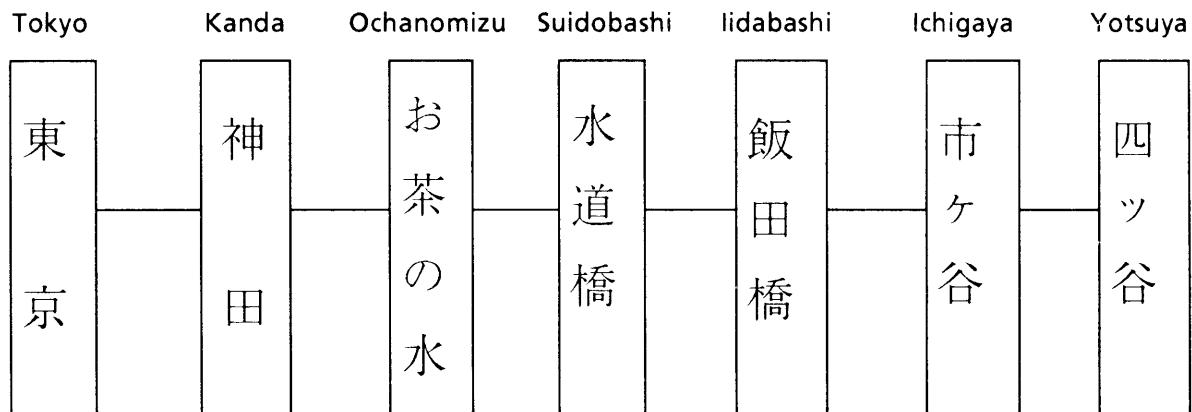
Directions:

The student chooses a station from the chart and asks if the kaisoku 'express' stops at the station.

Example:

Student: Kanda e ikitain desu ga, kaisoku wa tomarimasu ka?
Instructor: Hai, tomarimasu.
or
ie, tomarimasen.

注: 快速停車駅は東京、お茶の水、四ツ谷



READING

KANJI

1. --- 番線 ---bansen track ---
2. --- 方面 ---hoomen the direction of ---
3. 時間表 jikanhyoo a timetable
4. 渋滞 juutai backup, congestion
5. 横浜方面 Yokohama-hoomen Yokohama-direction

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. How to find out the right track/platform

Since there are usually several tracks in a station (at larger stations, there are more than 10 tracks), you need to know from which platform or track your train leaves. Each track has its own number (a platform usually has two tracks), and this is expressed in the following way

numeral + bansen

Thus, track number 1, for example, can be expressed as **ichi-bansen**. One way to find out if your train leaves from track #1 is to ask a question like the following

(your destination) e ikitain desu ga, ichi-bansen desu ka?

I want to go to (your destination), is it track #1?

(I e , Does my train leave from track #1?)

Another way to find out the right track is to ask something like 'I want to go to (your destination), from which track does my train leave?'

The Japanese expression for 'what track' is **nan-bansen**. Thus, you can use the following expression

(destination) e ikitain desu ga, nan-bansen desu ka?

I want to go to (destination) What track is it?

The Japanese word for 'platform' is **hoomu**, which was originally borrowed from the second syllable of the English word. If you want to make sure that you are on the right platform, you can use the following expression

Yokohama e ikitain desu ga, kono hoomu desu ka?

I want to go to Yokohama Is it this platform?

Note Kono in **kono hoomu** means '*this*' but the word must always occur with other word(s) after it, as in **kono chikaku** '*this vicinity*' (Lesson 3). On the other hand, the word **kore**, which also means '*this*', occurs independently, as in **Kore wa nan desu ka?** '*What is this?*' (Lesson 1)

2. (Yokohama)-iki '(train) bound for (Yokohama)'

When you refer to a train bound for a certain station--Yokohama, for example, you can use the following expression

Yokohama-iki

(trains) bound for Yokohama

Lesson 12 Taking the right train

You can use this expression when you want to find out if a train is bound for the place you have in mind or when you want to find out the track from which the train bound for a certain place leaves, as in the following examples.

- a. **Kono densha wa Yokohama-iki desu ka?**
Is this train bound for Yokohama?
- b. **Yokohama-iki wa nan-bansen desu ka?**
What track is the Yokohama train?

3. *Ikimasu* 'goes' and *tomarimasu* 'stops'

When you want to find out if a train goes to a certain place or if it stops at a certain station, you might ask in English (a) 'Does this train go to ...?' and (b) 'Does this train stop at ...?', respectively. The Japanese expressions for these English questions follow:

- a. **Kono densha wa ... e ikimasu ka?**
Does this train go to ...?
- b. **Kono densha wa ... ni tomarimasu ka?**
Does this train stop at ...?

It should be noted that the particle *ni* 'at' is used after the name of the station at which the train stops.

The following are typical answers to the above two questions:

- | | |
|----------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Yes-answers | Hai/Ee, ikimasu/tomarimasu. |
| 2. No-answers | Iie, ikimasen/tomarimasen. |

4. *The particle to* 'and'

The word *to* is comparable to English 'and' but the usage is a little different from the English equivalent, as illustrated below:

A to B	<i>A and B</i>
A to B to C	<i>A, B, and C</i>

Note that in English you need 'and' only before the last item you enumerate while in Japanese, *to* is necessary after each item except the last. The following example will illustrate this difference:

Kono densha wa Nagoya to Kyoto to Osaka ni tomarimasu.
This train stops at Nagoya, Kyoto, and Osaka.

Also, note that English 'and' can connect verbs as well as nouns, but Japanese *to* can connect nouns only.

5. **Densha** (電車) 'trains'

In the nation-wide transportation services, JR (Japanese Railways) plays the central role, and the Shinkansen (新幹線), often referred to as the '*'bullet train'*', is an important part of JR's operation.

The Shinkansen covers the approximately 730 miles between Tokyo (東京) and Hakata (博多) in Kyushu (九州) and connects the major cities of Japan. The Shinkansen trains run at 5 to 10 - minute intervals, the normal travelling speed of the fastest train, the 'Hikari,' being about 200 km per hour.

1. Types of trains

The Shinkansen has the following classification of trains:

Hikari	(ひかり):	stops at major stations
Kodama	(こたま):	stops at all stations

For long distance trips other than on the Shinkansen, you will find the following three major categories of JR trains:

tokkyuu	(特急)	super express or limited express
kyuukoo	(急行)	express train stopping at major stations
futsuu	(普通)	local trains stopping at all stations

Note: Futsuu (普通) is also called kakueki (各駅), an abbreviation of kakueki teesha (各駅停車), that stops at every station. Hikari, Kodama, tokkyuu and kyuukoo require a supplementary fare. However, the fare is the same all year round (i.e., there is no 'in-season' or 'off-season' fare).

JR-sen has the following major train categories:

kaisoku (快速)	kakueki-teesha (各駅停車)	<i>express train</i>
		<i>local train</i>

Note: Kaisoku does not require a supplementary fare.

2. Types of cars and seats

There are two types of cars and seats on JR trains:

a. cars	(i) futsuu-sha (普通車)	economy class (car)
	(ii) guriin-sha (グリーン車)	first class (car)

Note: A supplementary fare is required for first class. Guriin means green. Each first class car has a square green symbol displayed next to its doors.

b. seats	(i) jiyuu-seki (自由席)	unreserved seats
	(ii) seki (席) seat	

Note: jiyuu (自由) *freedom, free*
seki (席) *seat*

Lesson 12 Taking the right train

(ii) shitee-seki (指定席)

reserved seats

Note A supplementary fare is required for reserved seats.

3. nobori (上り) and kudari (下り)

up-train and down-train

Trains bound for the originating station of the line are called nobori (上り) 'up-train,' and those bound for the other end of the line are called kudari (下り) 'down-train.' For example, on the Shinkansen, trains bound for Tokyo are nobori and those for Kyoto, Osaka, etc. are kudari.

6. Doozo 'Please (have a seat)' (when you want to offer your seat)

Although 'ladies first' is not generally practiced in Japan, it is a courtesy to offer your seat to the elderly or to a mother with a small child. When you want to offer your seat, you can say Doozo 'Please.'

Sometimes you may hear a child asking its mother for a seat. Japanese people who happen to be sitting in front of them usually feel obliged to offer a seat. If you feel the same way, go ahead and offer your seat. If you don't, you may choose to ignore it since, as a foreigner, people will generally assume you did not understand what the child said.

If you take a JR train, it will probably have a shirubaa shiito (lit., 'silver seat') for senior citizens and the handicapped. Avoid sitting in this seat unless you consider yourself elderly or handicapped.

As a rule, sit down whenever you find a seat. Especially in a crowded train or bus, you will be much safer and more comfortable if you are seated.

7. More informations on trains

For a Ride on the Bullet Train

The shortest trip that you can take to get the feel of the 'bullet train,' reputedly the most comfortable and fastest in the world, is the 43-minute ride to Odawara. So, if you have a bit more than two hours to spare and are willing to invest 5,140 yen (2,570 yen one way) you can experience a ride on the bullet train without having to go all the way to Kyoto or Osaka. The bullet train is known as the Shinkansen. There are two Shinkansen trains—the Hikari and the Kodama. For the short ride, you take the Kodama. Between Tokyo and Odawara, it stops only at Shin-Yokohama, up to which it runs at a leisurely pace. From there to Odawara, it goes faster, although not quite at maximum speed.

Stations

The Hikari is the faster train because it makes fewer stops. The longest Hikari distance is the 1,176.5 kilometers from Tokyo to Hakata in Kyushu. The fastest Hikari service between these points takes 6 hours and 56 minutes, with six stops in between—Nagoya, Kyoto, Shin-Osaka, Okayama, Hiroshima and Kokura. The slowest service takes 7 hours 48 minutes with additional stops beyond Okayama. The Hikari covers the distance between Tokyo and Kyoto (513.6 kilometers) in 2 hours and 53 minutes, Tokyo-Shin Osaka in 3 hours 10 minutes, and Tokyo-Hiroshima (fastest service) in 5 hours 8 minutes.

The Kodama takes one hour longer to get to Kyoto. There are no Kodama trains which go through from Tokyo to Hakata. The Kodama service is essentially Tokyo to Shin Osaka and Shin Osaka to Hakata.

Frequency

The bullet train service is very frequent. Starting at 6 a.m., about four Hikari trains and three or four Kodama trains leave Tokyo every hour. The day's last Hikari for Hakata leaves Tokyo at 5 p.m., arriving at 11:56 p.m. The last Hikari for Shin Osaka (one stop beyond Kyoto) leaves at 8:24 p.m. The last Kodama for Shin Osaka leaves at 7:28 p.m. Both the Hikari and Kodama have reserved seats which are sold seven days in advance at the Green Window installed at major JR stations. At Tokyo station they are sold at the south end of the Yaesu side.

Other Trains

More leisurely rail trips from Tokyo to Osaka and points beyond can be taken on the Tokaido limited express (*tokkyuu*) trains. Since the destination of most of the Tokaido limited express trains is Kyushu, they are not scheduled for convenient arrival times in Osaka. For going to Hiroshima, the limited express is best.

Limited expresses leave from Tokyo station between 4:30 a.m. and 7:25 p.m. at irregular intervals. The travel time to Osaka is about 7 hours 30 minutes, but some limited expresses going west do not stop at Osaka. The travel time to Hiroshima is about 12 hours; to Hakata in Kyushu, about 16 hours 30 minutes; and to Nagasaki, about 19 hours 30 minutes.

Sleepers

Sleepers are available at extra charge on the limited expresses. There are two types of sleepers, 'A' and 'B.' The A sleepers are either one-bed compartments or just two berths, the upper and the lower.

The B sleepers are either the two-berth type or three berths--the upper, middle, and lower. The berths in the A sleepers are fairly roomy. The upper berth is 30 inches wide and 74 inches long and the lower berth is 37 by 74 inches. The berths of the B sleepers are just as long but only 20.5 inches wide. The cost of the berth is in addition to the regular limited express fares.

Reserved seat, express, limited express, and sleeper tickets must be obtained at the Green Window (*Midori no madoguchi*).

会話

Situation 1

ウイリアムス: すみません。
日本人: 横浜へ行きたいんですか、このホームですか。
日本人: 横浜ですか。横浜は横須賀線ですから……
ええと…… むこうの方ですよ。
ウイリアムス: むこう?
日本人: ええ、一番線と二番線です。
ウイリアムス: 一番線と?
日本人: ええ、一番線と二番線です。
ウイリアムス: そうですか。どうもありがとうございます。

Situation 2

ワトソン: すみません。この電車は横須賀へ行きますか。
日本人: いいえ、行きませんよ。横須賀行はあっちです。
ワトソン: 何番線ですか。
日本人: 三番線ですよ。
ワトソン: どうもありかとう。

Situation 3

ラノセル: すみません。これは桜木町行ですか。
日本人: ええ、そうです。
ラノセル: 学芸大学に止まりますか。
日本人: いいえ、これは急行ですから、止まりませんよ。
次の各駅が止まりますよ。
ラノセル: そうですか。どうも。

Lesson 13

GETTING OFF AT THE RIGHT STOP

あります!

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- find out if the next stop is your destination
- find out how many more stops there are before your destination
- ask a Japanese person to let you know when the train or bus arrives at your destination
- say 'Let me out!' on a crowded train or bus when you are getting off

DIALOGS**KAIWA****Situation 1**

Mrs. Brown is on a crowded subway to Akasakamitsuke to meet her husband at the American Center. Although she knows that the conductor of the subway has announced the next stop, she didn't understand the announcement.

Buraun:	Sumimasen. Koko wa Akasakamitsuke desu ka?	Excuse me. Is this (station) Akasakamitsuke?
Nihonjin:	Iie, Akasakamitsuke wa tsugi no tsugi desu yo.	No, Akasakamitsuke is the one after next.
Buraun:	Soo desu ka. Doomo.	Oh. Thanks.

Buraun:	Orimasu!	<i>Let me out, please!</i>

Situation 2

Ms. Lambert is at a bus stop, on her way to see a friend who lives near the Aoyama 3-chome bus stop (a stop along the bus line to Shibuya).

Ranbaato:	Sumimasen. Shibuya-iki no basu-tee wa koko desu ka?	Excuse me. Is this the bus stop for Shibuya?
Nihonjin:	Iie, kono chotto saki desu.	No, it's a little further ahead.
Ranbaato:	Doomo.	Thanks.

Ranbaato:	Sumimasen. Aoyama san-chome e ikitain desu ga, tsuitara oshiete kudasaimasen ka?	Excuse me. I'd like to go to Aoyama 3-chome, (but) would you tell me when we get there?
Untenshu:	Ee, ii desu yo.	Sure.

Untenshu:	Okyaku-san, Aoyama san-chome desu yo.	<i>Miss¹ (lit., Guest/Passenger)</i> <i>This is Aoyama 3-chome.</i>
Ranbaato:	Doomo arigatoo gozaimasu.	Thank you very much.
Untenshu:	Iie.	You're welcome

Situation 3

Mr. Turner is on a platform in Harajuku Station and wants to go to Hibiya by subway.

Taanaa: Sumimasen.
Hibiya e ikitain desu ga,
ikutsu-me desu ka?

Nihonjin: Eeto . . . Koko kara itsutsu-me ka
muttsu-me desu.

Excuse me. I want to go to Hibiya,
(but) how many stops are there
to Hibiya?

Taanaa: Aa, soo desu ka. Doomo arigatoo.

Nihonjin: Let me see . . . Hibiya is the fifth or
sixth one from here.

Taanaa: I see. Thank you.

* * *

(later on the train)

Taanaa: Sumimasen.
Hibiya wa tsugi desu ka?

Excuse me.
Is Hibiya next?

Nihonjin: Ee, soo desu.

Yes, it is.

Taanaa: Doomo.

Thanks.



VOCABULARY**KOTOBA****Dialogs**

tsugi no tsugi	the one after next	つきのつき
orimasu	get off, get down	おります
basu-tee	bus stop	ハスてい
tsuitara	when (we) arrive (TARA form of tsukimasu)	ついたら
oshiete kudasai-masen ka	please tell me	おしえてください ませんか
oshiete	tell, teach (TE form of oshiemasu)	おしえて
okyaku-san	guest, passenger, customer	おきゃくさん
doomo arigatoo gozaimasu	thank you very much	どうもありがとうございます
ikutsu-me	which one (in a numbered series)	いくつめ
itsutsu-me	fifth	いつつめ
ka	or	か
muttsu-me	sixth	むっつめ

Notes

yottsu-me	fourth	よっつめ
nanatsu-me	seventh	ななつめ
yattsu-me	eighth	やっつめ
sugimashita	passed	すぎました

PRACTICE

RENSHUU

A. Substitution Drill

Akasakamitsuke wa koko desu ka?

tsugi
tsugi no tsugi
mittsu-me
mittsu-me no eki

B. Substitution Drill

Hibiya wa ikutsu-me desu ka?

koko kara mitsu-me
tsugi
Akasakamitsuke
koko
tsugi no tsugi

C. Combination Drill

Example:

futatsu-me, mitsu-me → futatsu-me desu ka, mitsu-me desu ka?

tsugi, tsugi no tsugi
chikatetsu, JR-sen
basu, takushii
mitsu-me, yotsu-me

D. Substitution Drill

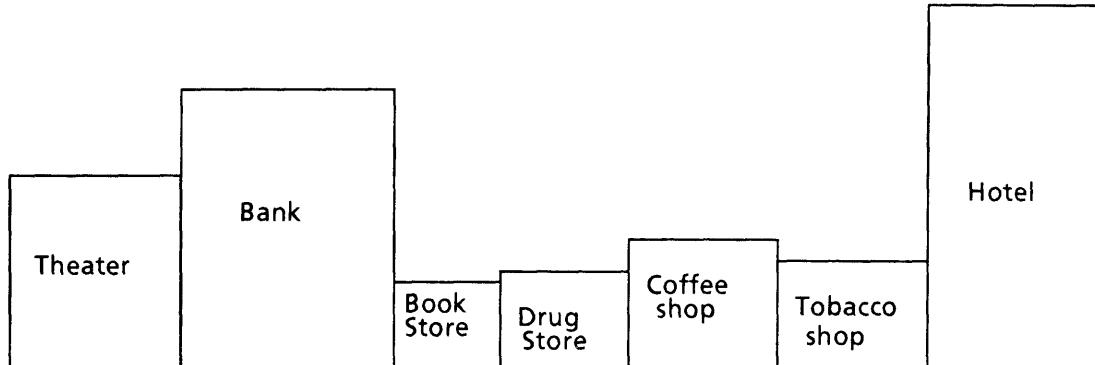
Shibuya ni tsuitara oshiete kudasaimasen ka?

Osaka	Ginza yon-chome
Ueno	Shinbashi
Yotsuya	Asakusa
Toranomon	Akasakamitsuke

E. Comprehension Drill

Directions:

Listen to the instructor's statement and circle true or false, as appropriate. If the statement is false, write the correct answer on the right.



教師用スクリプト

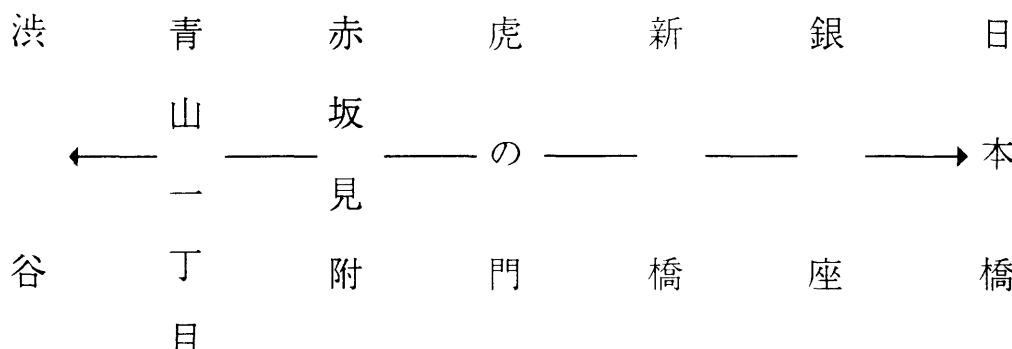
1. 銀行は劇場から三つ目です。 True () False ()
2. 喫茶店はホテルから三つ目です。 True () False ()
3. 薬屋はホテルから五つ目です。 True () False ()
4. 本屋は劇場から四つ目です。 True () False ()
5. 喫茶店はホテルから二つ目です。 True () False ()
6. 銀行は劇場から二つ目です。 True () False ()
7. 本屋はホテルから四つ目です。 True () False ()

F. Comprehension Drill

Directions:

The student chooses a station name from the list below. S/he then points to a station on the chart and asks the instructor **Koko wa** (the station s/he has selected) **desu ka?** If the answer is 'No,' the instructor says how many stations there are to that station counting from **Shibuya**. The student writes down the station name in Romaji next to the matching one in Kanji. (Note: With a larger class it may be clearer if the instructor copies the chart on the blackboard and students go up to the blackboard to point at and write down station names.)

Shibuya



List of Station Names

1. Aoyama 1-chome
2. Shinbashi
3. Akasakamitsuke
4. Nihonbashi
5. Toranomon
6. Ginza

G. Interpreting Drill

Directions:

The student asks the instructor how many stops a train makes to get from **Shibuya** station to a station that s/he chooses, referring to the chart above. The instructor answers and the student interprets the answer into English.

Example:

Student: Akasakamitsuke wa ikutsu-me desu ka?

*Instructor: (counting from Shibuya station)
Shibuya kara futatsu-me desu.*

Student: The second station.

Lesson 13 Getting off at the right stop

H. Question and Answer Exercise

Directions:

Student A chooses a station from the chart in Drill F, above, and asks Student B how many stops a train makes from Shibuya. Student B gives an answer. Student A makes sure that s/he has understood.

Example:

Student A: Akasakamitsuke wa ikutsu-me desu ka?

Student B: Futatsu-me desu.

Student A: Futatsu-me desu ne?

Student B: Ee, soo desu.

I. Response Exercise

Directions:

The student asks what station this is. The instructor replies, referring to the chart in Drill F. The student asks how many stops there are to get to a station the student chooses. The instructor replies and the student expresses his or her thanks.

Example:

Student: Sumimasen, koko wa doko desu ka?

Instructor: Shibuya desu.

Student: Toranomon wa ikutsu-me desu ka?

Instructor: Koko kara mittsu-me desu.

Student: Domo arigatoo gozaimasu.

Instructor: lie.

J. Production and Comprehension Exercise

教師用スクリプト次ページ参照

Directions:

The student asks the instructor a question, following the directions below. The instructor answers the student's question, whereupon the student chooses the correct statement below. The answer may include unfamiliar expressions. The student should try to guess what was said by picking up the key words.

1. You are on a street. Ask where the subway station is.

The instructor said

- () the subway station is next to the JR station.
() there is no subway station near here.

2. You are at a ticket counter. Ask for four tickets to Yokosuka, then ask how much the fare is.

The instructor could not hear

- () how many tickets you need.
 () where you want to go.

3. You are on a platform. You want to go to Takashima. Ask from what platform or track your train leaves.

The instructor said

- () there is no train that goes to Takashima.
 () to take a train at platform #2.

4. You are on a train. Ask if the next station is Yokohama.

The instructor said

- () Yokohama is the fifth stop.
 () it takes about 15 minutes to get to Yokohama.

5. You are on a subway. Ask to be told when you arrive at Toranomon.

The instructor said

- () s/he would let you know.
 () s/he could not tell you.

6. You are on a subway. Ask to be told when you arrive at Otemachi.

The instructor said

- () s/he would let you know.
 () s/he could not tell you.

教師用スクリプト

- この近くには、ありませんよ。JR線の駅なら、ありますか
次の信号を右に曲かったところです。
- え？ 横須賀まで 二枚ですか。
- 「高島行き」というのはありませんか、二番線にくるのに乗れば、高島へ
行きますよ。
- いいえ、横浜はまたまたです。あと十五分くらいかかりますよ。
- 私はもっと手前でおりますから、ちょっと
- いいですよ。私も大手町でおりますから

READING

KANJI

1. 精算所	seesanjo	fare adjustment office
2. 連絡口	renrakuguchi	connection to . . .
3. のりば	noriba	(bus) stop, (taxi) stand
4. 東京行	Tokyo-iki or Tokyo-yuki	Tokyo-bound
5. 新宿行	Shinjuku-iki	Shinjuku-bound
6. 東京方面	Tokyo-hoomen	Tokyo-direction
7. 銀座方面	Ginza-hoomen	Ginza-direction

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. *tsugi* ‘next’

In Lesson 8, you learned the word *tsugi* ‘next’ as in *tsugi no shingoo* ‘the next traffic light.’ The word can also be used when you want to make sure that the next stop or station is the one you have in mind. What do you think you should say when you want to ask something like ‘Is the next station Ginza?’ If you thought of the following sentence, you already know a lot about the word *tsugi*:

Tsugi no eki wa Ginza desu ka?

If you are on a train and want to ask the same question, you can simply say the following:

Tsugi wa Ginza desu ka?

The reason *no eki* is dropped in the above sentence is that it is clear to the listener from the context that *tsugi* refers to *eki*. In fact, the above sentence is the one most Japanese people would use in this situation since it is shorter and easier to use.

It may turn out that the answer to the above question is something like ‘the one after next.’ In such a case, the Japanese say:

Tsugi no tsugi desu.

(It's) the one after next.

2. *Ordinal numbers*

In Lesson 8, you also learned expressions like the following:

**futatsu-me no shingoo
mittsu-me no kado**

*the second traffic light
the third corner*

Ordinal expressions like *futatsu-me* ‘the second’ and *mittsu-me* ‘the third’ can also be used when you talk about the order of the stations on a train line. Look at the following:

Ginza wa futatsu-me (no eki) desu. *Ginza is the second station.*

Ueno wa mittsu-me (no eki) desu. *Ueno is the third station.*

As in *Tsugi wa Ginza desu ka?*, it is not necessary to say *no eki* after the ordinal numbers, i.e., *futatsu-me* and *mittsu-me*, since the context clarifies what you are talking about.

3. Questions using ordinal numbers

In some situations, you may have to find out how many stations there are between the station at which you boarded the train and your destination, or how many stations there are before your destination. In such situations, you can use the following expression:

(station name) wa ikutsu-me desu ka?

English does not have a comparable expression for ikutsu-me, although sometimes you may see something like 'the how-many-eth.' Ikutsu means 'how many' and, as we have seen, -me indicates the preceding word is an ordinal number. Thus, the above sentence can be translated as:

How many more stations before (station name)(from here)?

The answer to the above question will include an ordinal expression like mittsu-me, yottsu-me, etc. The following example will show how this question can be answered:

A: Yokohama wa ikutsu-me desu ka?

B: Yottsu-me desu yo.

When you have already passed your destination, the Japanese will say something like this:

(your destination) wa moo sugimashita yo.

We've already passed (your destination).

When the person doesn't know the answer him/herself, s/he will say something like the following:

Saa, wata(ku)shi mo shirimasesen. *I don't know, either.*

4. Useful expressions for getting off a train or bus

In some cases when you are on a bus or train, you may want to ask a Japanese person to let you know when you arrive at your destination. In such cases, you may find the following expression useful:

(your destination) ni tsuitara oshiete kudasaimasen ka?

Won't you please tell me when we've arrived at (destination)?

If you are a commuter it is a good idea to become familiar with the Kanji for the name of the stop right before your destination, so that you know when to get ready to get off.

Since commuter trains and buses are incredibly crowded at rush hours, it may happen that because of the crowd you can't get off at your stop. To avoid this, you need to say something in order to get people out of your way. In such cases, you can use the following expression:

Orimasu!

Let me out!(lit., I'm getting off.)

5. **basu** (バス) 'bus'

Japanese buses are equipped with a tape of the pre-recorded names of their stops which is set to announce, at the appropriate time, the name of the next stop.

In most cases, you pay as you enter a bus. It is advisable that you have the exact change, although there is a money exchange machine which exchanges a hundred yen coin for ten yen coins (you can't use a bill). The fares are usually in units of 100 yen and 10 yen. If you don't know the fare, you can ask the driver by saying:

(your destination) made ikura desu ka?

Kaisuu-ken (回数券) 'coupon tickets' and teeki-ken (定期券) 'season pass' are also available, but these can't be bought on a bus. You have to go to a ticket window at the main bus terminal. There is no free ticket transfer system.

会話

Situation 1

ブラウン: すみません。ここは赤坂見附ですか。

日本人: いいえ、赤坂見附は次の次ですよ。

フラン: そうですか。どうも ..

..

フラン: おります!

Situation 2

ランハート: すみません。渋谷行のバス停はここですか。

日本人: いいえ、このちょっと先です。

ランハート: どうも.....

..

ランハート: すみません。青山三丁目へ行きたいんですか、着いたら教えてくださいませんか。

運転手: ええ、いいですよ。

..

運転手: お客様、青山三丁目ですよ。

ランハート: とうもありかとうございます。

運転手: いいえ。

Situation 3

ターナー: すみません。

日比谷へ行きたいんですか、いくつ目ですか。

日本人: ええと..... ここから五つ目か六つ目です。

ターナー: ああ、そうですか。どうもありがとうございます。

..

ターナー: すみません。日比谷は次ですか。

日本人: ええ、そうです。

ターナー: どうも。

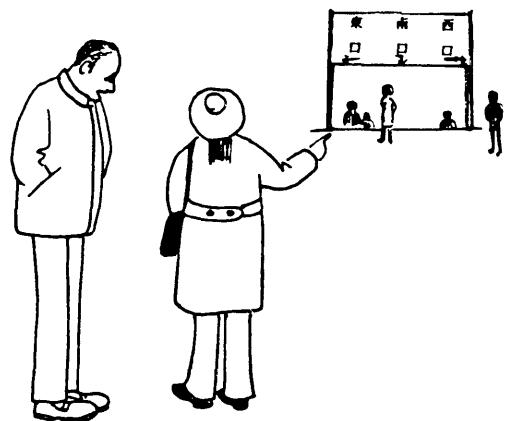
Lesson 14

FINDING OUT THE RIGHT EXIT AND CHANGING TRAINS AND BUSES

新幹線は八重洲口です。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- find the right exit to leave a station
- find the stop or station at which to change trains or buses



DIALOGS

KAIWA

Situation 1

Ms. Harman is going shopping at the Isetan department store . She gets off the train at Shinjuku station and after going down the stairway to the concourse, tries to find the right exit.

<i>Haaman:</i>	Sumimasen. Isetan e ikitain desu ga, dono deguchi desu ka?	<i>Excuse me.</i> <i>I want to go to Isetan. Which exit is it?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Isetan desu ka? Minamiguchi ga chikai desu yo.	<i>Isetan?</i> <i>The south exit is closer.</i>
<i>Haaman:</i>	Minamiguchi wa dotchi desu ka?	<i>Which way is the south exit?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Koko o massugu itte, migi no hoo desu.	<i>Go straight and it's on your right side.</i>
<i>Haaman:</i>	Soo desu ka. Domo arigatoo. ...	<i>I see. Thank you.</i> ...
<i>Haaman:</i>	Sumimasen. Isetan wa koko kara migi no hoo desu ka, hidari no hoo desu ka?	<i>Pardon me.</i> <i>From here, is Isetan on the right or on the left?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Koko o dete, hidari no hoo desu.	<i>Leaving from here, it's on the left.</i>
<i>Haaman:</i>	Domo arigatoo.	<i>Thank you.</i>

Lesson 14 Finding the right exit and changing trains and buses

Situation 2

Mr. Sullivan is going to Mitsukoshi department store in Yokohama. At an exit, he asks a Japanese person if it is the west exit.

- Sariban:** Sumimasen. Koko wa nishiguchi Excuse me. Is this the west exit? desu ka?
- Nihonjin:** Iie, koko wa higashiguchi desu No, it's the east exit. yo.
- Sariban:** Soo desu ka. I see.
- Nihonjin:** Doko e ikitain desu ka? Where do you want to go?
- Sariban:** Mitsukoshi e ikitain desu ga ... I want to go to Mitsukoshi ...
- Nihonjin:** Jaa, ano kaidan o orite, chikadoo Well then, go down that stairway o massugu migi no hoo e ikuto and if you go right, along the Mitsukoshi no iriguchi ga underground passageway, there is arimasu yo. an entrance to Mitsukoshi
- Sariban:** Sumimasen. Wakarimasen. I'm sorry I don't understand
- Nihonjin:** Eeto ... Kaidan o orite, Let me see Go down the stairway, chikadoo o migi desu. go right, along the underground passageway
- Sariban:** Aa, wakarimasu. Oh, I see Thank you very much. Doomo arigatoo gozaimashita.

Situation 3

Mr. Walker is going to Shinjuku Gyoen to see the sights. He is at Toranomon subway station on the Ginza line and wants to confirm that the Ginza line goes to Shinjuku.

- Uookaa:** Sumimasen. Shinjuku wa kono Excuse me. This line goes to sen de ii desu ne? Shinjuku, right?
- Ekiin:** Kono sen wa Shinjuku e This line doesn't go to Shinjuku. ikimasen yo. Koko kara Go from here to Akasakamitsuke, Akasakamitsuke e itte, then transfer to the Marunouchi Marunouchi-sen ni norikaete line. kudasai.
- Uookaa:** Akasakamitsuke e itte ... Go to Akasakamitsuke ...
- Ekiin:** Ee, soko de Marunouchi-sen Yes, there transfer to the ni norikaete kudasai. Marunouchi line
- Uookaa:** Wakarimashita. I understand. Thank you Doomo arigatoo.

VOCABULARYKOTOBA

Dialogs

dono	which?	どの
deguchi	exit	でぐち
minamiguchi	south gate	みなみぐち
minami	south	みなみ
...guchi	gate, door, exit (phonetic change of kuchi 'mouth')ぐち
dotchi	which way?	どっち
dete	leave, go out (TE form of demasu)	でて
nishi	west	にし
higashi	east	ひがし
orite	go down (TE form of orimasu)	おりて
chikadoo	underground passage	ちかどう
iriguchi	entrance	いりぐち
de	at	で
norikaete	change, transfer (trains, buses, etc.) (TE form of norikaemasu)	のりかえて
sen	line	せん
Marunouchi-sen	Marunouchi line	まるのうちせん

Notes

kita	north	きた
noborimasu	climb, go up	のぼります
norikae	a change (of trains, etc.)	のりかえ

PRACTICE

RENSHUU

A. Substitution Drill

Koko wa minamiguchi desu ka?

kitaguchi
higashiguchi
nishiguchi
minamiguchi

B. Substitution Drill

Minamiguchi wa dotchi desu ka?

Kitaguchi
doko
Higashiguchi
dotchi no hoo
Iriguchi
migi no hoo

C. Substitution Drill

Isetan e ikitain desu ga, deguchi wa dotchi desu ka?

Kokuritsu Gekijoo
deguchi wa doko
Kabukiza
dono deguchi
Mitsukoshi
deguchi wa dotchi

Lesson 14 Finding the right exit and changing trains and buses

D. Direction Drill

Directions:

The instructor gives a direction. The student chooses the opposite direction.

Example:

Instructor: **higashi**
Student: (checks **nishi** below.)

1. () **nishi**
() **kita**
2. () **higashi**
() **minami**
3. () **nishi**
() **kita**
4. () **higashi**
() **minami**

E. Comprehension Drill

Choose the appropriate direction in accordance with the following statement.

1. () **higashi** You are facing north.
() **nishi** On your right is . . ?
2. () **higashi** You are facing north.
() **nishi** On your left is . . ?
3. () **minami** You are facing east.
() **kita** On your right is . . ?
4. () **minami** You are facing west.
() **kita** On your right is . . ?

F. Question and Answer Exercise

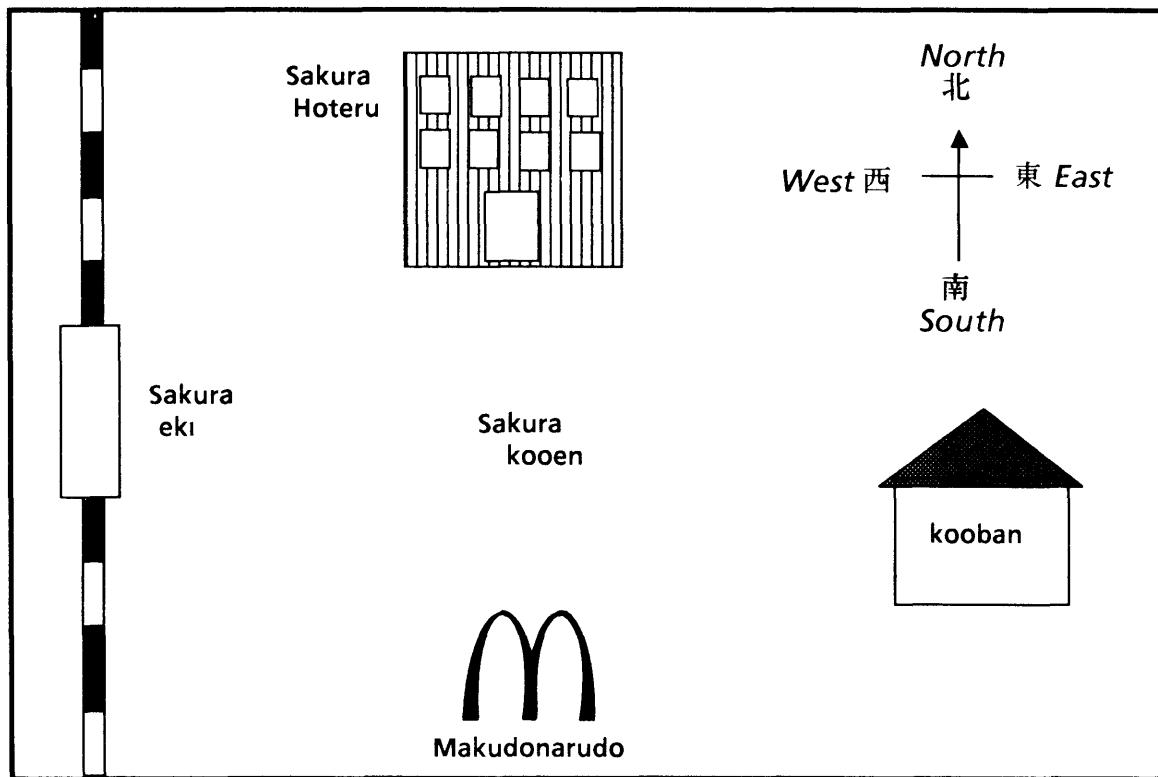
Directions

Referring to the diagram below, complete the sentences using the correct directional words

Example

Sakura-eki wa Sakura kooen no nishi ni arimasu.

1. Sakura Hoteru wa Sakura Kooen no _____ ni arimasu
2. Kooban wa Sakura Kooen no _____ ni arimasu
3. Makudonarudo wa Sakura Kooen no _____ ni arimasu
4. Sakura Kooen wa Sakura Hoteru no _____ ni arimasu
5. Sakura Kooen wa Sakura-eki no _____ ni arimasu



Lesson 14 Finding the right exit and changing trains and buses

G. Comprehension Exercise 教師用スクリプト下記参照

Listen to the instructor's statement and, referring to the sketch below, check True or False.

1. True () False ()

2. True () False ()

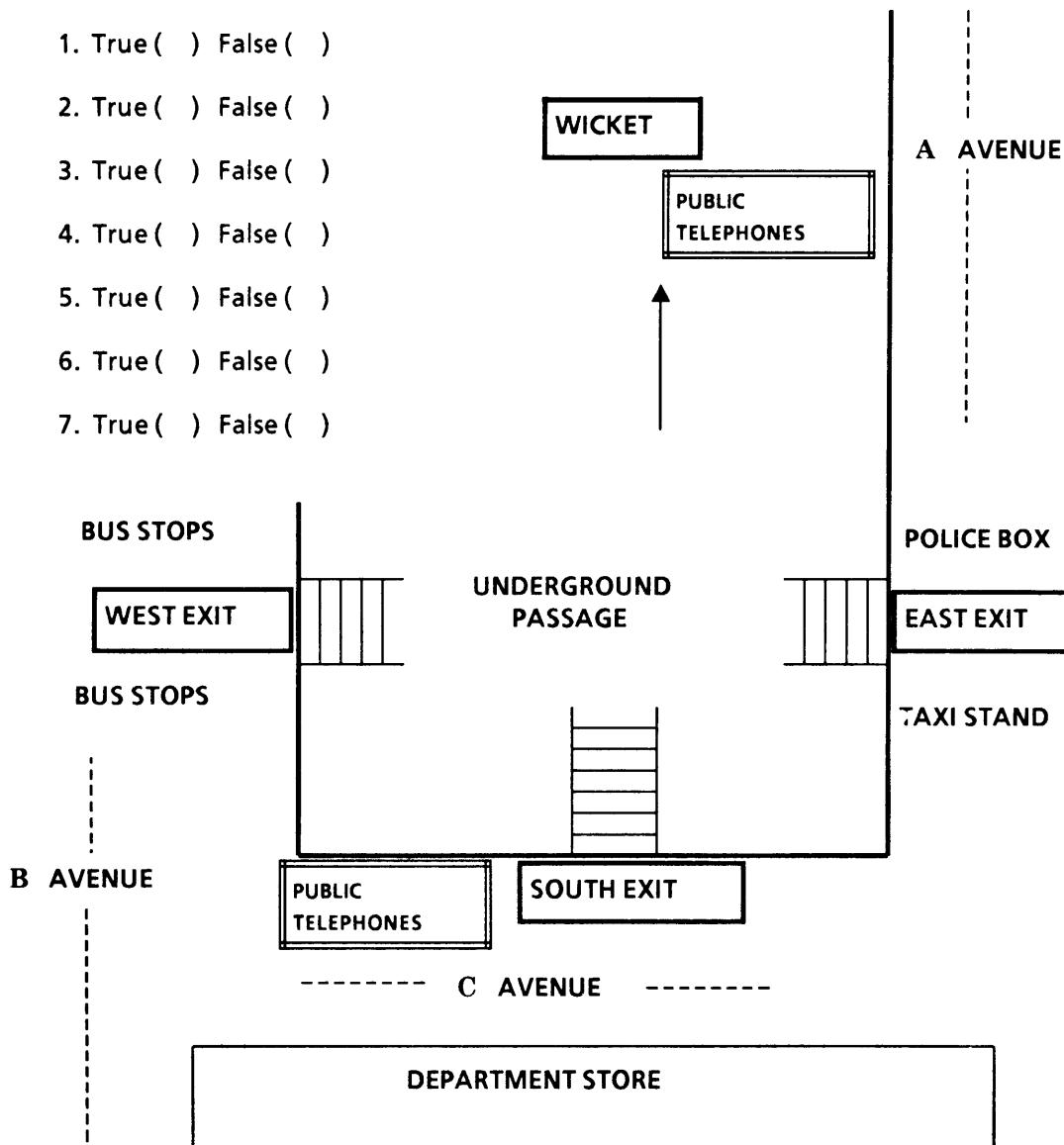
3. True () False ()

4. True () False ()

5. True () False ()

6. True () False ()

7. True () False ()



教師用スクリプト

1. バスの乗り場は東口にあります。
2. 交番は西口です。
3. デパートは南口の前です。
4. 西口はA通りにあります。
5. 公衆電話は南口と改札口のそばにあります。
6. バスの乗り場はB通りにあります。
7. タクシー乗り場は西口です。

H. Comprehension Exercise

Choose the item that matches the directions the instructor gives.

1. () You go up the stairs.
() You go down the stairs.
2. () You go up the stairs.
() You go down the stairs.
3. () You go through the underground passageway.
() You go up the stairs.
() The place is on your right.
4. () You transfer to Kokuden at Shinjuku.
() You transfer to the subway at Shinbashi.
() You transfer to Kokuden at Shinbashi.
5. () You transfer to the Ginza Line at the Ginza.
() You transfer to the Ginza Line at Akasakamitsuke.
6. () You transfer to the Aoyama bus at Shinbashi.
() You transfer to the Aoyama bus at Shibuya.
() You transfer to the Shinbashi bus at Aoyama.

教師用スクリプト

1. この階段をおりて、まっすぐ行ったところにあります。
2. その階段をおりて、すぐ右の方にあります。
3. 地下道をまっすぐ行って階段をおりて、ちょっと行くと左にあります。
4. 新橋駅で国電に乗り換えて下さい。
5. 赤坂見附まで行って、銀座線に乗り換えて下さい。
6. 渋谷で青山行きのバスに乗り換えて下さい。

Lesson 14 Finding the right exit and changing trains and buses

I. Comprehension Exercise

教師用スクリプト下記参照

Direction:

You are at Toranomon subway station on the Ginza line. Referring to the list of places you want to go, find out from the instructor (a station employee) how to get to your destination and fill in the appropriate columns below.

Example.

Student Meiji Jinguu e ikitain desu ga, kono sen de ii desu ka?
Instructor: Kasumigaseki de Chiyoda-sen ni norikaete kudasai.
 Kasumigaseki kara yottsu-me desu.

Places you want to go

- | | | |
|----------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. Ginza | 2. Asakusa | 3. Tokyo-eki |
| 4. Ueno | 5. Shinjuku | 6. Ikebukuro |

	No transfer	Need transfer	If transfer is necessary	
			At what station?	To which line?
1				
2				
3				
4				
5				
6				

教師用スクリプト

- ええ、いいですよ。ここから四つ目です。
- この線で銀座まで行って、そこで銀座線の浅草行に乗り換えて下さい。
- この線で銀座まで行って、丸ノ内線に乗り換えて下さい。
- 上野ですか。この線でいいですよ。
- これで霞が関まで行って、そこで丸ノ内線に乗り換えて下さい。
- この線で日比谷まで行って、そこで有楽町線に乗り換えて下さい。

READINGKANJI

1. 東口 higashiguchi east exit/entrance
2. 西口 nishiguchi west exit/entrance
3. 南口 minamiguchi south exit/entrance
4. 北口 kitaguchi north exit/entrance
5. 出口 deguchi exit
6. 入口 iriguchi entrance
7. 地下道 chikadoo underground passage

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. **deguchi** (出口) 'exit'

Larger stations usually have more than one deguchi (出□) 'exit'. Therefore, you will have to know which exit to take to go to your destination. Deguchi (出□) 'exit' and iriguchi (入□) 'entrance' come in pairs and are located side by side. 入 in iriguchi (入□) and 出 in deguchi (出□) mean 'enter' and 'go out,' respectively; -guchi (□) means 'an opening.'

The following names are among the most common for station entrances/exits:

higashiguchi	(東□)	east exit/entrance
nishiguchi	(西□)	west exit/entrance
kitaguchi	(北□)	north exit/entrance
minamiguchi	(南□)	south exit/entrance

When you want to find the right exit, you can use the following expression:

(Your destination) e ikitain desu ga, deguchi wa doko desu ka?
I want to go to (your destination) Which exit should I use?

2. **Kaidan** (階段) 'stairway'

In giving directions to your exit, Japanese may say something like 'Go down/up the stairs...' The Japanese word for 'stairway' is kaidan (階段).

The Japanese language has specific verbs for 'go up (the stairs)' and 'go down (the stairs)'. Look at the following:

- a. Kaidan o noborimasu/agarimasu. Go up the stairs
- b. Kaidan o orimasu. Go down the stairs

As mentioned in Lesson 9, Japanese verbs have different forms depending on how they are used in a sentence. Therefore you may hear different forms than noborimasu and orimasu. However, if you can pick up the key word kaidan and locate the staircase, then you can pretty well guess whether to go up or down. If there are two kaidan at a place where you have a choice of going up or going down, then ask directions there again.

3. **norikae** (乗り換え) ‘transfer’

In some cases, you may have to change trains or buses or change from a train to a bus or vice versa. The Japanese word for ‘a transfer (point)’ is **norikae** (乗り換え) and ‘to transfer’ is **norikaemasu**. Look at the following:

Tokyo-iki ni norikaemasu	<i>transfer to a Tokyo-bound train/bus</i>
Yokohama de norikaemasu	<i>transfer in Yokohama</i>
Yokohama de Tokyo-iki ni norikaemasu	<i>transfer to a Tokyo-bound train/bus in Yokohama</i>

Note: When you change the means of transportation, Japanese will specify that change as in the following:

Yokohama de Tokyo-iki no basu ni norikaemasu	<i>transfer to a Tokyo-bound bus in Yokohama</i>
---	--

Again, Japanese speakers may use different forms than **norikaemasu**, depending on what words surround it. However, if you can pick up **norikae**, which is common to all the forms, it will not be too difficult to get the meaning correctly.

4. de after expressions of location

Note the use of the particle **de** in the following sentence from Situation 3:

Soko de Marunouchi-sen ni norikaete kudasai.

There transfer to the Marunouchi line.

An expression of location like **soko** ‘there’ followed by the particle **de** indicates the place where something has happened or will happen. This **de** is often equivalent to English ‘at’ or ‘in’, though the exact translation will depend, as here, on the context. You will see this particle again in later lessons.

Lesson 14 Finding the right exit and changing trains and buses

会話

Situation 1

ハーマン すみません。伊勢丹へ行きたいんですか、との出口ですか。
日本人 伊勢丹ですか。南口が近いですよ。
ハーマン 南口はとっちですか。
日本人 ここをまっすぐ行って、右の方です。
ハーマン そうですか。とうもありかとう。

...

ハーマン すみません。
日本人 伊勢丹はここから右の方ですか、左の方ですか。
ハーマン ここを出て、左の方です。
ハーマン とうもありかとう。

Situation 2

サリハン すみません。ここは西口ですか。
日本人 いいえ、ここは東口ですよ。
サリハン そうですか。
日本人 どこへ行きたいんですか。
サリハン 三越へ行きたいんですか
日本人 しゃ、あの階段を下りて、地下道をまっすぐ右の方へ
行くと、三越の入口がありますよ。
サリハン すみません。わかりません。
日本人 ええと 階段を下りて、地下道を右です。
サリハン ああ、わかります。とうもありかとうございました。

Situation 3

ウォーカー すみません。
駅員 新宿はこの線でいいですね?
駅員 この線は新宿へ行きませんよ。
ウォーカー ここから赤坂見附へ行って、丸ノ内線に乗り換えて下さい。
駅員 赤坂見附へ行って
ええ、そこで丸ノ内線に乗り換えてください。
ウォーカー わかりました。とうも ありかとう。

Lesson 15

TAKING A TAXI

タクシー

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- ask a Japanese person to call a taxi for you
- tell the driver the destination
- stop the taxi at your destination
- pay the fare



DIALOGSKAIWA

Situation 1

Mrs. Black is going shopping at the Mitsukoshi department store in the Ginza. She stops a cruising cab on a street near her apartment.

Burakku: **Ginza made onegai shimasu.** *Ginza, please.*

Untenshu: **Hai.** *Yes.*

(after a short while)

Untenshu: **Okyaku-san, Ginza desu yo.** *Miss, we are at the Ginza.*

Burakku: **Mitsukoshi no mae de tomete kudasai.** *Please stop in front of Mitsukoshi.*

Untenshu: **Hai.** *Yes.*

(The taxi stops in front of Mitsukoshi)

Burakku: **Ikura desu ka?** *How much is it?*

Untenshu: **550-en desu.** *It's 550 yen.*

Situation 2

Ms. Parker is going to go to Kyoto by Shinkansen. She flags down a taxi and tells the driver to go to Tokyo station.

Paakaa: **Tokyo Eki made onegai shimasu.** *To Tokyo station, please.*

Untenshu: **Yaesuguchi desu ka,
Chuoguchi desu ka?** *Do you want to go to the Yaesu entrance or the Chuo entrance?*

Paakaa: **Yoku wakarimasen ga,
Shinkansen no noriba desu.** *I'm not sure. The Shinkansen boarding area.*

Untenshu: **Aa, wakarimashita.** *Oh, I see.*

Situation 3

Mrs. Clark is going to see a friend who lives in Aoyama. Her friend has told her that she will be waiting for her in front of a large supermarket named Meijiya at Aoyama 4-chome.

- | | | |
|-----------|---|---|
| Kuraaku: | Aoyama yon-chome made
onegai shimasu. | <i>Aoyama 4-chome, please.</i> |
| Untenshu: | Aoyama yon-chome no
doko desu ka? | <i>Where in Aoyama 4-chome
is it?</i> |
| Kuraaku: | Yoku wakarimasen ga, ookii
suupaamaaketto no mae desu. | <i>I don't know the exact
location, but it's in front
of a large supermarket.</i> |
| Untenshu: | Soo desu ka. Suupaa no
namae wa? | <i>I see. What's the name
of the supermarket?</i> |
| Kuraaku: | Meijiya desu. | <i>Meijiya.</i> |
| Untenshu: | Aa, wakarimashita. | <i>Oh, I see.</i> |

VOCABULARY

KOTOBA

Dialogs

de	at	で
tomete	stop (TE form of tomemasu)	とめて
ookii	big, large	おおきい
suupaamaaketto	supermarket	スーパー マーケット
suupaa	supermarket	スーパー
namae	name	なまえ
...wa?	what about...?は？

Notes

yonde	call (TE form of yobimasu)	よんで
tomemasu	stop	とめます
tomemashoo ka?	(where) shall I stop?	とめましょうか

Personalized list

PRACTICE

RENSHUU

A. Substitution Drill

Ginza made onegai shimasu.

Aoyama 4-chome
Akasaka
Roppongi
Toranomon
Kabukiza
Roppongi 3-chome

B. Substitution Drill

Mitsukoshi no mae de tomete kudasai.

Koko
Tugi no kado
Tsugi no shingoo no mukoo
Tsugi no koosaten no mukoo
Eki no mae
Ano ookii biru no mae

C. Substitution Drill

Aoyama 4-chome no doko desu ka?

Ginza
Roppongi
Toranomon
Akasaka
Shibuya
Shinjuku

Lesson 15 Taking a taxi

D. Role Play

注 教師は質問の中に「.....のとこですか」を用いること

Directions

The student selects a destination from the list below and tells the instructor (=driver) where to go. The driver asks for more detailed instructions. Referring to the list below, the student supplies the necessary information by first saying

Yoku wakarimasen ga, . . .

Example:

Student: Tokyo Eki made onegai shimasu.
Instructor: Tokyo Eki no doko desu ka?
Student: Yoku wakarimasen ga, Shinkansen no noriba desu.

Student's list

<u>destination</u>	<u>stop</u>
--------------------	-------------

1. Aoyama san-chome in front of the Kinokuniya supermarket
2. Kasumigaseki in front of the Kasumigaseki building
3. Hibiya next to the Teikoku Hotel
4. Ginza at the intersection of Ginza 4-chome
5. Tokyo Eki at the boarding area for the Shinkansen

E. Role Play

注 教師用スクリプト次ページ参照

Directions

The student makes the requests below. The instructor answers and the student responds appropriately.

Example:

(call a taxi)

Student: Sumimasen, takushii o yonde kudasai.
Instructor: Ee, ii desu yo.
Student: Arigatoo.

1. call a taxi
2. go to a place written on a piece of paper
(Give the instructor a piece of paper with your destination written on it.)
3. go to Shinjuku station (if asked, you want the west exit)

4. go to the Ginza (if asked, you want to get out in front of the Mitsukoshi department store)
5. go to Toranomon (if asked, you want to go to Hotel Okura)

教師用スクリプト

1. はい、わかりました。少々お待ちください。
 2.ですね。いいですよ。
 3. 新宿駅のどこですか？
 4. 銀座のどこですか？
 5. はい。(少し後で。)
- お客様、虎ノ門ですよ。どこで止めますか？

F. Role Play

Directions:

The student selects an area name from the list and tells the instructor (=driver) to go to that place. When the taxi arrives in the area, the driver will say:

Okyaku-san, (area name) desu yo. Doko de tomemasu ka?
'Mr./Miss, we are at (area name). Where shall I stop?'

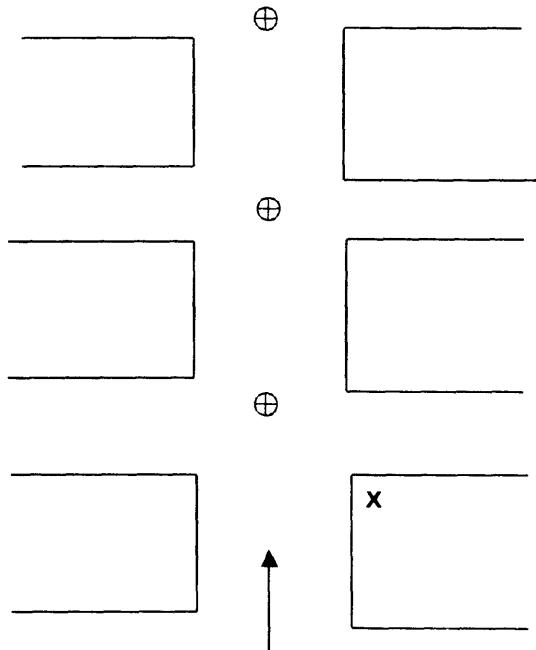
The student gives the driver directions to the destination, referring to the map that corresponds to the selected area. (Your destination is marked with an X.) The instructor follows the direction(s) by tracing the route on the map. When the taxi gets to the destination, the student says:

Koko de tomete kudasai.

Lesson 15 Taking a taxi

Example:

Aoyama 3 - chome



Student: Aoyama 3-chome made onegai shimasu.

Instructor: Hai.

...

Instructor: Okyaku-san, Aoyama 3-chome desu yo.
Doko de tomemasu ka?

Student: (referring to the map of Aoyama 3-chome)
Tsugi no kado desu.

Instructor: Hai, wakarimashita. (traces the route on the map)

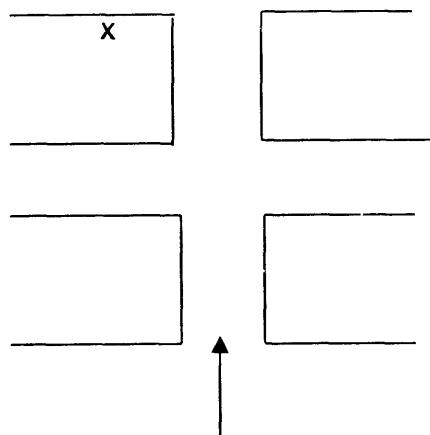
Student: (in front of the destination)
Koko de tomete kudasai.

Student's list

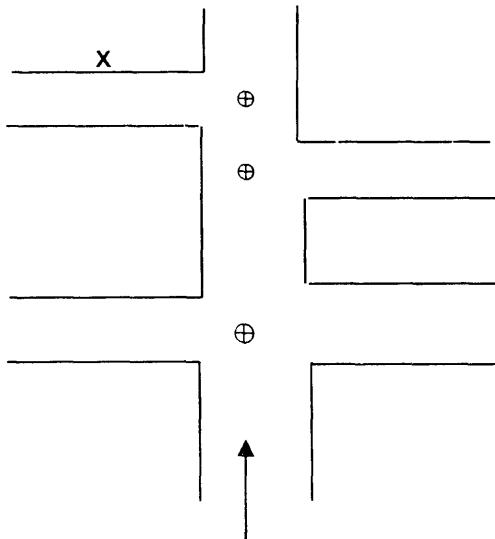
1. Ginza 7- chome
2. Toranomon
3. Shinjuku 1 - chome
4. Roppongi 3 - chome

Area Maps

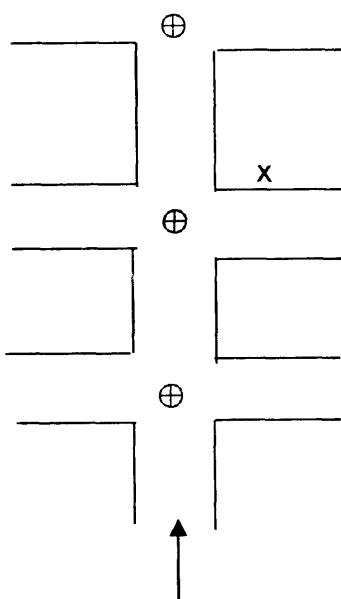
1. Ginza 7 - chome



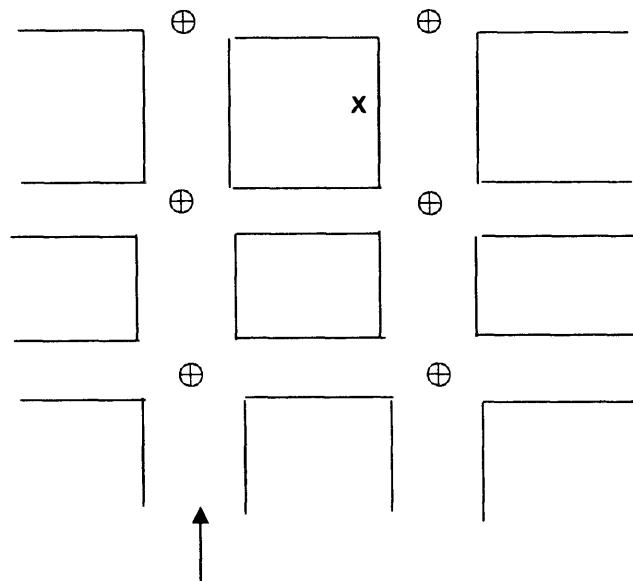
2. Toranomon



3. Shinjuku 1 - chome



4. Roppongi 3 - chome



⊕ = indicates a traffic light

G. Pattern check

Fill in the blanks with **de**, **no**, **ni**, or **e**.

1. Tsugi () tsugi wa Yokohama desu ka?
2. Aoyama () tsuitara oshiete kudasai.
3. Kono densha wa Shinjuku () ikimasu ka?
4. Kono chikaku () chikatetsu () eki ga arimasu ka?
5. Koko () tomete kudasai.
6. Takushii noriba wa doko () arimasu ka?
7. Kono chikaku () basu () noriba wa arimasu ka?
8. JR-sen no eki wa koko kara migi () hoo desu ka, hidari () hoo desu ka?
9. Yokohama () ikitain desu ga, kono hoomu desu ka?
10. Kono densha wa Shinbashi () tomarimasu ka?

READING

KANJI

1. 空車 kuusha for hire
2. 回送 kaisoo not in service
3. 予約 yoyaku on call
4. 停留所 teeryuujo a (bus) stop
5. 案内所 annaijo an information desk or booth

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. How to tell the cab driver your destination

When you are staying at a hotel or visiting a friend and want to ask someone to call a taxi for you, you can use the following expression

Takushii o yonde kudasai. *Please call a taxi (for me)*

When giving the taxi driver the destination, for a relatively well-known place, e.g., the American Embassy, you can simply say:

Amerika Taishikan made onegai shimasu.
To the American Embassy, please

If, however, your destination is relatively unknown, e.g., your apartment, you should first give the area name in which your apartment is located. Let us assume that your apartment is located in Aoyama 4-chome. You first say **Aoyama 4-chome made onegai shimasu.** The driver will ask you the exact location when you get to the area, saying something like the following:

Okyaku-san, Aoyama 4-chome desu yo.
Customer, we are at Aoyama 4-chome

Doko de tomemasu (tomemashoo) ka? OR Doko desu ka?, etc.
Where shall I stop? Where do you want me to stop?, etc

Of course, your driver may not say exactly what is given above. What is important is that when you go to a place whose location is not likely to be familiar to the driver, you give the area name first and then give the directions as you approach the place you want to go. To do this, you must, of course, be familiar with the neighborhood of your destination.

However, when the name you have given covers a large area, the driver may ask where in that area you want to go. Again, the driver may use different expressions, which may include a phrase like '(area name) no doko' 'where in (area name),' as in the following.

Example:

You: Ginza made onegai shimasu.
Driver: Ginza no doko desu ka?
OR
Ginza no doko ni ikitain desu ka?
Where in the Ginza do you want to go?

When you give directions to the driver, it is often helpful to mention a landmark near your destination, as the following example illustrates

- You: **Ginza made onegai shimasu.**
 Driver: **Ginza no doko desu ka?**
 You: **Mitsukoshi no tonari desu.**
Next to the Mitsukoshi department store

If you are not confident of pronouncing the name of the destination correctly, it is a good idea to have a Japanese friend write the name in Kanji on a piece of paper so that you can take it along to show the driver. When you want to do this, you can simply say the following

Koko made onegai shimasu. *To this place, please*

However, this strategy may not always be successful if your destination isn't well known or if you don't know a landmark near your destination to tell the driver. Even though he/she will certainly be able to get to the area of your destination, the driver may still not be able to locate the place. This is because it is very difficult to find out a location by simply reading the address, for not every street has a name nor every house a number.

2. How to stop the cab at your destination

When you want to stop the cab at your destination, you can use the following expression

Koko de tomete kudasai. *Please stop here*

Note the particle de (で) after the word koko 'here' in the sentence above. As we mentioned in Lesson 14, an expression of location like koko followed by de indicates the place where something has happened or will happen. Instead of koko in the sentence above you could also use various other place expressions you have learned to tell the cab driver where to stop. For example

Tsugi no shingoo de tomete kudasai.
Please stop at the next traffic light

Mittsu-me no koosaten de tomete kudasai.
Please stop at the third intersection

3. How to pay the fare

Since every taxi has a fare meter in the front and you don't need to tip, you can simply look at the meter and pay the fare before you get out. If you want to make sure of the fare, you can, of course, ask the following question

Ikura desu ka? *How much is it?*
 When you get out, after having paid the fare, you can say

Doorno (arigatoo). *Thank you*

Lesson 15 Taking a taxi

However, don't be surprised if the driver doesn't respond. S/he may not be very sociable. Some drivers may not say anything until you give them the destination when you get in the cab, or even after you give it to them.

It would be a good idea for you to have 500-yen or 1,000-yen bills available when the destination is not very far, as it may happen that the driver is not able to change a large bill.

4. **ookii X** '*large/big X'*

In this lesson, we learn the word **ookii** '*large, big*'. Look at the following two patterns and compare the structure of the Japanese and English:

ookii suupaa	<i>large supermarket /big supermarket</i>
Ano suupaa wa ookii desu.	<i>That supermarket is large.</i>

We will learn more words that behave like **ookii** in later lessons.

 会話

Situation 1

フラノク 銀座までお願いします。
運転手 はい。

運転手 お客様、銀座ですよ。
フラノク 三越の前で止めてください。
運転手 はい。

フラノク いくらですか。
運転手 550円です。

Situation 2

パーカー 東京駅までお願いします。
運転手 八重川口ですか、中央口ですか。
パーカー よくわかりませんか、新幹線の乗り場です。
運転手 ああ、わかりました。

Situation 3

クラーク 青山四丁目までお願いします。
運転手 青山四丁目のどこですか。
クラーク よくわかりませんか、大きいスーパーマーケットの前です。
運転手 そうですか。スーパーの名前は?
クラーク 明治屋です。
運転手 ああ、わかりました。

Lesson 15 Taking a taxi

Lesson 16

LOCATING MERCHANDISE

デパート

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- find the floor of the sales counter for merchandise you want to see in a department store
- find out the location of the merchandise
- say in Japanese the names for some objects you are likely to want to buy



DIALOGS**KAIWA****Situation 1**

Ms. Miller wants to buy some china at a department store. She is now at the entrance of the Takashimaya department store.

- | | | |
|---------|---|--|
| Miraa: | Sumimasen, kateeyoohin wa nan-gai desu ka? | Excuse me, what floor are household goods on? |
| Ten in: | Go-kai de gozaimasu. | It's the 5th floor. |
| Miraa: | Go-kai desu ka? Domo. A, erebeetaa wa doko ni arimasu ka? | The 5th floor? Thank you. Oh, where is the elevator? |
| Ten in: | Nekutai-uriha no ushiro de gozaimasu. | It's behind the necktie section. |

Situation 2

Mrs. White gets off a train at Shibuya station. She is going to do some grocery shopping at a department store which is connected to the station building.

- | | | |
|-----------|--|---|
| Howaito: | Sumimasen. Shokuryoohin-uriha wa doko desu ka? | Excuse me. Where is the grocery department? |
| Nihonjin: | Chika ni-kai desu yo. | On the second level of the basement. |
| Howaito: | Anoo, kaidan wa doko desu ka? | Uh, where is the stairway? |
| Nihonjin: | Kaidan wa annaijo no mae desu ga, esukareetaa ga soko ni arimasu yo. | It's in front of the information desk, but there is an escalator over there |
| Howaito: | Domo arigatoo. | Thank you. |

Situation 3

Mr. Kellog wants to see some watches at a department store. At the information desk near the entrance, he asks what floor watches are on.

Keroggu: Sumimasen. Tokee-uriba wa nan-gai desu ka?

Excuse me. What floor is the watch department?

Ten in: Rok-kai de gozaimasu.

It's on the 6th floor.

Keroggu: Doomo.

Thanks.

• • •

(rok-kai de)

(on the 6th floor)

Keroggu: Tokee-uriba wa doko desu ka?

Where is the watch section?

Ten in: Kochira no migi no hoo de gozaimasu. Erebeetaa no mae ni gozaimasu.

It's on the right. It's in front of the elevator.

Keroggu: Soo desu ka. Doomo.

I see. Thank you.

VOCABULARY**KOTOBA****Dialogs**

kateeyoohin	household goods	かていようひん
nan-gai	which floor	なんがい
kai	(counter for) floor, story	かい
de gozaimasu	is/are/am (very deferential)	でござります
nekutai	necktie	ネクタイ
shokuryoohin	groceries, foodstuffs	しょくりようひん
chika	basement	ちか
anoo	uh, well (indicates hesitation)	あのう
annaijo	information desk	あんないじょ
esukareetaa	escalator	エスカレーター
tokee	watch, clock	とけい

Practice

okujoo	roof	おくじょう
yuuENCHI	amusement park	ゆうえんち
petto	pet	ペット
tokubaijoo	bargain/budget floor	とくばいじょう
kagu	furniture	かぐ
bunboogu	stationery	ぶんぽうぐ
omocha	toy	おもちゃ
hon	book	ほん
denki yoohin	electric appliance	でんきようひん
hooseki	jewel/jewelry	ほうせき
megane	eyeglasses	めがね
fujin	woman (formal)	ふじん
kodomo	child	こども

fuku	clothing	ふく
shinshi	man, gentleman (formal)	しんし
keshoohin	cosmetics	けしょうひん
kutsu	shoes	くつ
kaban	luggage	かばん
kaze-gusuri	cold medicine	かぜぐすり
kaze	a cold	かぜ
kusuri	medicine, drug	くすり
i	stomach	い
kirikizu	cut, wound	きりきず
yakedo	burn	やけど
asupirin	aspirin	アスピリン

PRACTICE**RENSHUU****A. Number Reading**

The following table shows floor names in Japanese. Study each item by repeating after the instructor. Note that the pronunciation of some numbers changes if the counter *kai* (階) 'floor' is attached.

1st	floor	ik-kai	(一階)
2nd	floor	ni-kai	(二階)
3rd	floor	san-gai	(三階)
4th	floor	yon-kai	(四階)
5th	floor	go-kai	(五階)
6th	floor	rok-kai	(六階)
7th	floor	nana-kai	(七階)
8th	floor	hak-kai	
		OR	
9th	floor	hachi-kai	(八階)
10th	floor	kyuu-kaī	(九階)
		juk-kai	(十階)

... .

1st level basement
2nd level basement

chika ik-kai (地下一階)
chika ni-kai (地下二階)

The kanji for *kai* 'floor' is 階.

Read the following:

二階
三階
五階
四階
七階
一階
六階
九階

B. Pronunciation Practice

The following is a typical floor plan of a department store in Japan. Practice the pronunciation of the floors and the names of merchandise by repeating after the instructor.

<u>okujoo</u>	<u>屋上</u>	<u>roof</u>
yuuenchi petto	遊園地 ペット	amusement park pets
<u>nana-kai</u>	<u>七階</u>	<u>7th floor</u>
tokubai-joo shokudoo	特売場 食堂	budget floor restaurant
<u>rok-kai</u>	<u>六階</u>	<u>6th floor</u>
kagu bunboogu omocha hon	家具 文房具 おもちゃ 本	furniture stationery toys books
<u>go-kai</u>	<u>五階</u>	<u>5th floor</u>
kateeyoohin denki kigu	家庭用品 電気器具	household goods electric appliances
<u>yon-kai</u>	<u>四階</u>	<u>4th floor</u>
hooseki tokee kamera megane	宝石 時計 カメラ 眼鏡	jewelry watches/clocks cameras eyeglasses
<u>san-gai</u>	<u>三階</u>	<u>3rd floor</u>
fujin, kodomo fuku	婦人.子供服	women's and children's clothing
<u>ni-kai</u>	<u>二階</u>	<u>2nd floor</u>
shinshi fuku	紳士服	men's clothing
<u>ik-kai</u>	<u>一階</u>	<u>1st floor</u>
keshooohin akusesarri kutsu kaban	化粧品 アクセサリー ^リ 靴 鞄	cosmetics accessories shoes luggage
<u>chika</u>	<u>地下</u>	<u>basement</u>
shokuryoohin	食料品	groceries

Lesson 16 Locating merchandise

C. Substitution Drill

Esukareetaa wa doko desu ka?

shokuryoohin

kaidan

kateeyoohin

kodomo-fuku

nan-gai

doko

tokee

otearai

D. Translation-Substitution Drill

Kateeyoohin wa go-kai desu ka?

Example:

7th floor → Kateeyoohin wa nana-kai desu ka?

Cameras → Kamera wa nana-kai desu ka?

rest room	8th floor
household goods	3rd floor
6th floor	watches
toys	what floor
groceries	restaurant

E. Question and Answer Exercise

注: 教師は適宜に返事する

Directions:

The student asks the instructor on which floor the merchandise listed below is found and writes down the answer.

Example:

Student: Fujinfuku wa nan-gai desu ka?

OR

Fujinfuku-uriba wa doko desu ka?

OR

Fujinfuku wa doko desu ka?

Instructor: San-gai desu.

Student: (writes down 3)

Student's list

<u>merchandise</u>	<u>floor</u>
books	hon ()
amusement park	yuuuchi ()
men's wear	shinshifuku ()
stationery	bunboogu ()
household goods	kateeyoohin ()
cosmetics	keshooohin ()
food	shokuryoohin ()
pets	petto ()
electric appliance	denkikigu ()
women's clothing	fujinfuku ()

F. Production & Comprehension Exercise

Directions:

The student asks the instructor (=clerk) where (or on what floor) the merchandise on the list below is located, by using one of the following expressions:

... uriba wa doko desu ka?/nan-gai desu ka?

The instructor answers and the student writes down the floor number.

Example:

*Student: Kamera uriba wa nan-gai desu ka?
Instructor: 3-gai de gozaimasu
Student: (writes down 3)*

Student's list

men's wear	()
toys	()
cosmetics	()
stationery	()
household goods	()
women's clothing	()
food	()
electric appliances	()
amusement park	()
jewelry	()

注: 教師は適宜に「.....で(に)ございます。」を使って返事する

G. Vocabulary Building & Production Drill

注: 教師は適宜に返事する

When you buy medicine in a drugstore in Japan, you will notice that the contents and directions are written in both Japanese and English. So the first thing you should do in a drugstore is to locate the section for the medicine you want. Then read the contents and choose a brand.

Here is a list of some common medicines. Expand the list by listing other medicines you think you may need.

cold medicine	kaze-gusuri
stomach medicine	i-gusuri
medicine for cuts	kirikizu no kusuri
medicine for burns	yakedo no kusuri

Ask the location of the following medicines:

Example:

(Cue): cold medicine
Student: Kaze-gusuri wa doko desu ka?
Instructor: Achira de gozaimasu.

stomach medicine
medicine for burns
medicine for cuts
aspirin
cold medicine

H. Production & Comprehension Exercise

Directions:

The student asks where the places on the list below are located. The instructor (=clerk) answers. The student makes a brief note of each location in either Japanese or English. If s/he doesn't understand, s/he should ask the clerk to repeat, slow down, etc. The instructor checks whether or not the student got the location correctly.

Example:

Student: Esukareetaa wa doko desu ka?
Instructor: Nekutai-uriba no ushiro ni gozaimasu.
Student: (writes down key words)
Instructor: (checks the student's notes)

Student's list	教師用スクリプト
erebeetaa	ここをいらっしゃると、右の方でございます。
kateeyoohin	あちらのエスカレーターのすぐそばにございます。
kodomofuku	この先の右にございます。婦人服売り場のそばにございます。
kamera	ここを真っ直ぐいらっしゃると、眼鏡売り場の先にございます。
bunboogu	ここから右の方へいらっしゃいますと、宝石売り場の後ろの方にございます。
hooseki	ここをずっと真っ直ぐいらっしゃいますと、カメラ売り場がございます。そのそばでございます。

I. *Reading Advertisements*

Look at the ads of major department stores on the next page. With the help of the instructor, try to see if you can recognize some of the characters. Also, try to identify the area in which each department store is located.



03-352-1111/水曜定休/平日10時-6時/土・日10時-6時半



京王

金・土10時-6時半
日・月・水10時-6時
食品売場連日7時迄
Tel. 342-2111 木曜定休



日本橋
高島屋

日・月・火・木及び祝日は6時
金・土は6時半まで営業
Tel. 211-4111/水曜定休

READINGKANJI

- | | | | |
|----|------|--------------|---------------------|
| 1. | 上 | ue | up |
| 2. | 下 | shita | down |
| 3. | 階段 | kaidan | stairway |
| 4. | 押す | osu | push |
| 5. | 引く | hiku | pull |
| 6. | 電話 | denwa | telephone(s) |
| 7. | 公衆電話 | kooshuudenwa | public telephone(s) |

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

How to locate the merchandise you want to see or buy in a department store

In all major department stores, there are directories written both in English and Japanese. They are usually placed near the entrance, stairways, and elevators. Therefore, you will probably have little problem finding the floor you want. You can ask a person at the information desk (near ground floor entrances), the elevator operator, or the 'escalator girl.' (Ask your instructor about the 'elevator girl' and the 'escalator girl.') You can use the following expressions, which you learned in Lesson 6, to ask the location of merchandise.

If you want to locate the watch counter, for example, you can say the following:

Tokee wa doko desu ka?

Where are the watches?

OR

Tokee-uriba wa doko desu ka?

*Where is the watch section/
counter/department?*

Note: *uriba* (売場) literally means 'selling place.'

Practice B of this lesson contains a typical floor plan of a Japanese department store. Study the names of the merchandise and/or sales counters and, with the help of your instructor, add any words that you think you may need.

eigyou jikan (営業時間) 'business hours'

The following are typical business hours of stores, shops, department stores, etc. in Japan.

	Weekdays	Saturday	Sunday
banks	9:00-3:00	9:00-12:00	closed
post offices	9:00-5:00	9:00-3:00	closed
stores	10:00-8:00	10:00-8:00	10:00-8:00
department stores	10:00-6:00	10:00-6:30	10:00-6:30
barber shops	9:00-8:00 (closed on Mondays)	9:00-8:00	9:00-8:00
beauty parlors	9:00-8:00 (closed on Tuesdays)	9:00-8:00	9:00-8:00

会話

Situation 1

ミラー: すみません。家庭用品は何階ですか。
店員: 五階でございます。
ミラー: 五階ですか。どうも。
あ、エレベーターはどこにありますか。
店員: ネクタイ売場の後ろでございます。

Situation 2

ホワイト: すみません。食料品売場はどこですか。
日本人: 地下二階ですよ。
ホワイト: あのう、階段はどこですか。
日本人: 階段は案内所の前ですが、エスカレーターが
そこにありますよ。
ホワイト: どうもありがとうございます。

Situation 3

ケロッグ: すみません。時計売場は何階ですか。
店員: 六階でございます。
ケロッグ: どうも。
...
ケロッグ: 時計売場はどこですか。
店員: こちらの右の方でございます。
エレベーターの前にございます。
ケロッグ: そうですか。どうも。

Lesson 16 Locating merchandise

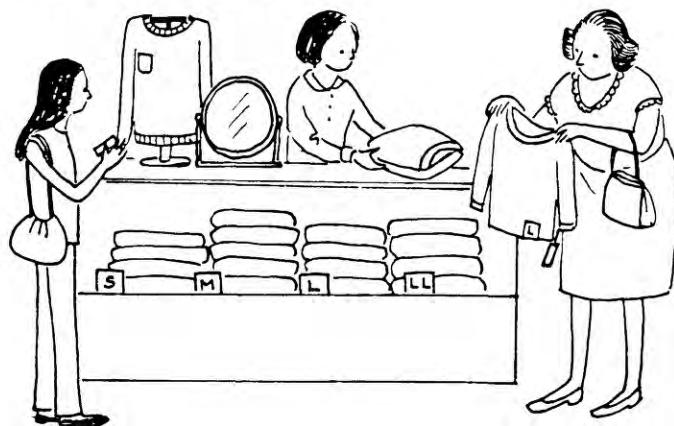
Lesson 17

ASKING FOR SERVICE AND INDICATING PREFERENCE

それを見せてください。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- ask for service at a store
- ask a clerk if the store carries the merchandise you want
- ask a clerk to bring merchandise you have in mind which is different from the item you are examining
- say 'Just looking, thank you'



DIALOGS

KAIWA

Situation 1

Mrs. Schwartz has gone to a department store to buy a sweater. She finds a nice one but it's in a showcase

<i>Shuwaatsu:</i>	Sono seetaa o misete kudasai. (pointing to a sweater)	<i>Please show me that sweater</i>
<i>Ten in:</i>	Kore desu ka? Doozo.	<i>This one? Here you are</i>
	• • •	• • •
<i>Shuwaatsu:</i>	Moo sukoshi ookii no wa arimasen ka?	<i>Do you have any that are a little larger?</i>
<i>Ten in:</i>	Jaa, kore wa ikaga de gozaimasu ka? (showing another sweater)	<i>Well, how about this one?</i>
	Kochira wa LL-saizu de gozaimasu.	<i>It's extra large.</i>

Situation 2

Ms. Robinson is window shopping in the Ginza. She sees a nice blouse in a store. She enters the store and finds the same type of blouse on a shelf in a showcase

<i>Ten in:</i>	Irasshaimase.	<i>May I help you?</i>
<i>Robinson:</i>	Sumimasen. Are o misete kudasai. (pointing to merchandise)	<i>Could you please show me that one?</i>
<i>Ten in:</i>	Kochira desu ka?	<i>This one?</i>
<i>Robinson:</i>	Iie, sono ue desu.	<i>No, the one above it.</i>
<i>Ten in:</i>	Hai, doozo.	<i>Here you are.</i>
	• • •	• • •
<i>Robinson:</i>	Moo sukoshi chigau iro no wa arimasu ka?	<i>Do you have one in a slightly different color?</i>
<i>Ten in:</i>	Ainiku desu ga, kono katachi wa kono iro dake desu.	<i>I'm sorry, but this style comes only in this color.</i>

Situation 3

Mr. King is browsing when a salesclerk approaches him to ask if she can help.

<i>Ten in:</i>	Irasshaimase. Okyakusama no de gozaimasu ka?	<i>Welcome!</i> <i>Are you looking for something for yourself?</i>
<i>Kingu:</i>	Chotto mite iru dake desu.	<i>Just looking, thank you.</i>

VOCABULARY**KOTOBA****Dialogs**

seetaa	sweater	セーター
misete	show (TE form of misemasu)	みせて
sukoshi	a little	すこし
...no	...oneの
ikaga	how?	いかが
saizu	size	サイズ
ue	above, top	うえ
chigau	different	ちがう
iro	color	いろ
ainiku desu ga	it's unfortunate, but...	あいにくですが
katachi	form, style, model	かたち
dake	only	だけ
okyakusama	customer (polite)	おきゃくさま
mite iru	is/am looking	みている
mite	look, see (TE form of mimasu)	みて

Practice

sukaafu	scarf	スカーフ
shatsu	shirt	シャツ
akusesarii	accessory	アクセサリー
burausu	blouse	ブラウス

Notes

itte	say (TE form of iimasu)	いって
chiisai	small	ちいさい

Lesson 17 Asking for service and indicating preference

yasui	cheap, inexpensive	やすい
shita	under, below	した
osagashi desu	look for (very polite)	おさがしです
de irasshaimasu	is/are (very polite)	でいらっしゃいます

Personalized list

PRACTICE

RENSHUU

A. Substitution Drill

Sono seetaa o misete kudasai.

kamera
Kono
Ano
sukaafu
nekutai
Sono

B. Substitution Drill

Moo sukoshi ookii no wa arimasu ka?

Moo sukoshi chiisai
Chigau saizu
Moo sukoshi yasui
Chigau iro
Chigau katachi
Moo sukoshi ookii

C. Substitution Drill

Sono ue no desu.

shita
migi
tonari
ue
hidari
mae

D. Transformation Drill

Instructor: Sono ookii seetaa o misete kudasai.

Student: Sono ookii no o misete kudasai.

教師用リスト

もう少し安いシャツ
小さいカメラ
大きいセーター
違うネクタイ
もう少し小さいカメラ
安いスカーフ

E. Production Exercise

What do you say in the following situations?

Example:

You have found a nice scarf in a showcase close to you and want to look at it more closely.

ANSWER: **Kono sukaafu o misete kudasai.**

(point to the object when you say **kono...**, **solo...** and **ano...**)

1. There is a nice necktie in a showcase near you that you want to look at more closely.
2. A camera in the showcase behind the clerk looks like the one you have been looking for so you want to look at it more closely.
3. There is a small clock in a showcase (not near you) that you want to look at more closely.
4. There is a nice-looking sweater on the top shelf behind the clerk that you want to look at more closely.
5. A brooch in a showcase which is not near you or the clerk looks very nice and you want to look at it more closely.
6. There is a camera on the bottom shelf behind the clerk which you want to look at more closely.
7. There is an attractive scarf in a showcase near you that you want to look at more closely.

F. Production and Comprehension Exercise (注: 教師は下記スクリプト参照)

Directions:

The student asks the questions below. The instructor answers, reading the script. The student checks the right response, based on the instructor's answer.

Example:

Student: Moo sukoshi ookii no wa arimasu ka?
Instructor: (reading the script)
 Hai, kochira desu. Kore wa L saizu desu.
Student: (checks the right response)

1. Ask if there's a cheaper one.

<i>Response</i>	ええと、こちらです。
() Yes, there is, but the style is different.	これはちょっと
() No, there aren't any in the same color.	形が違いますか.....

2. Ask if there's something in a different color.

<i>Response</i>	この色だけなんですか.....
() Yes, there is and it's cheaper.	こちらはちょっとお安いん
() No, there isn't.	ですか、色が違います。

3. Ask if there's something in a different style.

<i>Response</i>	これはいかかですか。
() Yes, there is.	色は違いますか、サイズは
() No, there isn't.	同じですか。

4. Ask if there is a smaller one.

<i>Response</i>	お客様、あいにくですが、
() Yes, there is, but the color is different.	丁度同じのは
() No, there isn't.	ございませんが.....

5. Ask if there is a larger one.

<i>Response</i>	ええと..... こちらは
() Yes, there is.	Lサイズですね。こちらに
() No, there isn't.	LLサイズがございます。

G. Put the following words in correct order to form a sentence:

misete, yasui, moo sukoshi, kudasai, no, o

moo sukoshi, arimasu, wa, ka, ookii, no

kono, kudasai, misete, seetaa, o

kudasai, sono, misete, kamera, o

katachi, chigau, arimasu, wa, ka, no

iro, chigau, no, kudasai, o, misete

H. Production Exercise

注: 教師は黒板に絵を画くか、又は雑誌等からの写真を黒板に貼って練習させる

Directions:

The student asks the instructor to show him/her an item by pointing to one of the examples on the blackboard. The instructor asks whether the one s/he is pointing to is the right one. The student tells the instructor that the one s/he wants to see is next to it, above it, etc., using the following expressions:

sono ue/shita/tonari/migi/hidari desu.

Example:

Student: Sono seetaa o misete kudasai.

Instructor: Kochira desu ka?

Student: Iie, sono ue desu.

Instructor: Hai, doozo.

I. Scrambled Dialogs

Put the following sentences in the right order for conversation:

1. A: Kochira desu ka?
B: Hai, irasshaimase.
C: Chotto sumimasen.
D: Kono kamera o misete kudasai.
E: Ee.

2. A: **Moo sukoshi yasui no wa arimasu ka?**
B: **Akusesarii desu.**
C: **Kore wa nan desu ka?**
D: **Kochira ni gozaimasu.**

3. A: **Soo desu ka.**
B: **Chotto sumimasen.**
C: **Moo sukoshi ookii no wa arimasu ka?**
D: **Kono seetaa o misete kudasai.**
E: **Okyakusama, ainiku desu ga...**
F: **Hai, doozo.**

4. A: **Kore desu ka? Doozo.**
B: **Moo sukoshi chigau katachi no wa arimasu ka?**
C: **Sono burausu o misete kudasai.**
D: **Irasshaimase.**
E: **Sumimasen, ainiku desu ga...**

5. A: **Hai, soo desu.**
B: **Are wa tokee desu ka?**
C: **Hai, doozo.**
D: **Chotto misete kudasai.**

READING

KANJI

1. 改札口 kaisatsuguchi ticket gate

2. 山手線 Yamanote-sen Yamanote line

3. 急行 kyuukoo express

4. 左側通行 sasoku tsuukoo keep to the left

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. When you want to say 'Please show me...'

As we learned in earlier lessons, when you want to ask somebody to do something for you, you can use the following pattern

V (TE-form)kudasai.	'Please V (for me),' where V indicates a verb form
---------------------	---

So far we have learned the following expressions, which include the above pattern

Yukkuri itte kudasai. (Lesson 2)	Please say (it) slowly
Moo ichi-do itte kudasai. (Lesson 2)	Please say (it) again
Koko ni kaite kudasai. (Lesson 4)	Please write (it) here
Ueno ni tsuitara oshiete kudasai. (Lesson 13)	Please tell me when we get to Ueno
Takushii o yonde kudasai. (Lesson 15)	Please call a taxi (for me)

Since in this pattern the verb ends with -te (or -de), this form is often referred to as the Te-form of the verb. In this lesson, we learn the verb **misete** 'show'. You can use this word when you want to ask a salesclerk to show you some merchandise, as in the following example

(merchandise) o misete kudasai. Please show me (merchandise)

Note Although, grammatically speaking, the particle **o** is necessary after the name of the merchandise, it is often dropped in actual conversation. Hence

Sore (o) misete kudasai. Please show me that

2. One way to indicate your preference: how to say 'one that is larger'

In Lesson 15 we learned the word **ookii** 'large,' 'big,' which can be used just like its English equivalent, as in the following example

ookii suupaa large supermarket

In this lesson we learn similar words like **chiisai** 'small' and **yasui** 'cheap, inexpensive'

chiisai seetaa	small sweater
yasui kamera	inexpensive camera

Lesson 17 Asking for service and indicating preference

When you mention the size, price, etc. of merchandise you have been talking about, it is not always necessary to specify the merchandise. In English, for example, you would normally say 'small ones' rather than 'small sweaters' when you have been talking about sweaters. Japanese people do the same thing, and the particle **no** can be used for this purpose. Look at the following examples.

chiisai seetaa	<i>small sweater(s)</i>
chiisai no	<i>small one(s)</i>
yasui kamera	<i>inexpensive camera(s)</i>
yasui no	<i>inexpensive one(s)</i>

When shopping, you may often find yourself asking a salesclerk to show you larger/smaller items than the ones you are examining. For example, you may want to say something like 'Please show me smaller ones' or 'Do you carry smaller ones?' In English, you add -er to the word **small**, with a little in front of it. In Japanese, you do not add anything to **chiisai** but instead you place **moo sukoshi** 'a little more' in front of the word, as the following examples illustrate:

moo sukoshi chiisai seetaa (lit., <i>sweaters which are a little smaller</i>)	<i>a little smaller sweater(s)</i>
moo sukoshi chiisai no (lit., <i>ones which are a little smaller</i>)	<i>a little smaller one(s)</i>

Thus, if you want to ask a salesclerk if the store carries smaller ones than the one you are examining, you can say:

Moo sukoshi chiisai no wa arimasu ka?
Do you carry/have smaller ones? (cf. Lesson 4)

Likewise, when you want to ask the clerk to show you less expensive ones, you can say:

Moo sukoshi yasui no o misete kudasai.
Please show me ones that are a little cheaper

3. Another way to indicate your preference: how to say 'one in a different size/color/style'

The word **chigau** 'different' can be used just like its English equivalent, as the following example shows:

chigau iro	<i>different color(s)</i>
-------------------	---------------------------

When you want to say 'a sweater in a different size/color/style,' you can use the following pattern.

chigau saizu	no seetaa	<i>sweater in different size(s)</i>
	iro	<i>color(s)</i>
	katachi	<i>style(s)</i>

Thus, when you want to say something like 'Do you carry them in different sizes/colors/styles?' or 'Please show me some in different sizes/colors/styles,' you can use the following expressions

- a. **Chigau saizu/iro/katachi no wa arimasu ka?**
Do you carry them in different sizes/colors/styles?
- b. **Chigau saizu/iro/katachi no o misete kudasai.**
Please show me this/these in different sizes/colors/styles

4. **kono..., sono..., ano...** 'this..., that..., that...over there'

In some cases, you may have to specify which of the items (in a showcase, for example) you want to have a look at. In English, you could say something like 'please show me that sweater.'

The English words this and that do not change form regardless of the position of the word in the sentence. In Japanese, however, the equivalent words do change forms, depending on whether or not they occur before nouns. The following examples will show this difference:

Kore wa kamera desu.	<i>This is a camera</i>
kono kamera	<i>this camera</i>

As indicated above, the word **kono** '*this*' occurs only before a noun. Putting it differently, when you want to say 'this camera, sweater, etc.' in Japanese, you must use **kono** and cannot use **kore**. You have already seen this word in **kono chikaku** '*this vicinity*' (Lesson 5) and **kono michi** '*this street*' (Lesson 10). In this lesson, we will learn **sono...** '*that...*' and **ano...** '*that over there*'. The meanings of these words are exactly the same as those of the corresponding words **sore** and **are**

The following is a summary of the words of this type we have learned so far:

Meaning	object/person	location	direction
a. near S(peaker)	kore, kono...	koko	kotchi/kochira
b. near L(listener)	sore, sono...	soko	sotchi/sochira
c. away from S and L	are, ano...	asoko	atchi/achira

Note: See Lesson 3 for **kore**, **sore** and **are** and Lesson 7 for the location and direction words.

5. Some expressions that indicate the location of merchandise

When you ask a salesclerk to show you merchandise, you may have to indicate the position of the merchandise, for example, 'the one above it,' 'the one to the right of it' or the like. This can be expressed in Japanese quite easily if we use words like *kono* 'this,' *sono* 'that', *ano* 'that, over there,' particle *no* 'the one,' *migi* 'right,' *hidari* 'left,' *ue* 'on top,' and *shita* 'below' Look at the following

migi no kamera	<i>the camera on the right</i>
migi no	<i>the one on the right</i>
sono migi no kamera	<i>the camera to the right of it</i> OR <i>that camera on the right</i>
sono migi no	<i>that one to the right of it</i> OR <i>that one on the right</i>

Let us assume a situation like the following

A salesclerk points to some merchandise and you want to see the one to the right/left of it or above/below it

Each position can be shown as follows

[1]

[2] X [3]

[4]

X indicates the item the clerk has pointed to

- a. When you want to see the item represented by [1] in the illustration

Sono ue (no) desu. *(It's) the one above it*

OR

Sono ue no o misete kudasai. *Please show me the one above it*

- b. When you want to see the item represented by [4]

Sono shita (no) desu. *(It's) the one below*

OR

Sono shita no o misete kudasai. *Please show me the one below it*

- c. When you want to see the item represented by [3]

Sono migi (no) desu. *(It's) the one to the right of it*

OR

Sono migi no o misete kudasai. *Please show me the one on the right*

- d. When you want to see the item represented by [2]:

Sono hidari (no) desu. (It's) the one on the left of it.

OR

Sono hidari no o misete kudasai. Please show me the one on the left.

6. A polite expression used by salesclerks

In Lesson 5 the in-group/out-group distinction was introduced. Consistent with this concept, you can expect salesclerks to use polite expressions to customers (out-group members). The following are some of the expressions frequently used by salesclerks:

- a. **Irasshaimase.**

May I help you? (lit., Welcome!)

You may hear the less formal form **Irasshai** at your neighborhood store.

- b. **Okyakusama no o osagashi de irasshaimasu ka?**

Are you looking for something for yourself?

- c. **...de gozaimasu = desu**

This is the formal and more polite form of desu 'is/am/are.'

- d. **Ainiku de gozaimasu ga...**

Unfortunately...

This expression is often used when the store doesn't carry the item you are looking for.

There are many more formal expressions used by clerks. Some of them are routine ones and you can predict when they will occur (like **irasshaimase**). Others are not so predictable. What is important is not that you use them correctly but that you attempt to figure out what the clerk is talking about from the context. You have already learned some helpful expressions that can be used when you have problems comprehending what a Japanese person is saying (e.g., those used to ask someone to repeat, slow down, etc.), so don't be embarrassed even if you don't understand. Furthermore, since you are the customer, the clerk will make an effort to make you understand what s/he is saying or to understand what you are saying.

Lesson 17 Asking for service and indicating preference

7. Conversion Tables

The following are conversion tables showing the sizes of dresses, suits, shirts, and shoes. The sizes used in Japan are often different from those used in America, England, and the Continent. This chart may help you avoid confusion.

Women

dresses and suits

Japanese:	9	11	13	15	17	19	21
American:	8	10	12	14	16	18	20
English:	32	34	36	38	40	42	44
Continental:	38	40	42	44	46	48	50

shoes

Japanese:	23	23.5	24	24.5	25	25.5	26
American:	6	6.5	7	7.5	8	8.5	9
English:	4.5	5	5.5	6	6.5	7	7.5
Continental:	36	37	38	38	38	39	40

Men

suits, overcoats and sweaters

Japanese:	S	M	L	LL		
American:	34	36	38	40	42	44
English:	34	36	38	40	42	44
Continental:	44	46	48	50	52	54

shirts and collars

Japanese:	36	37	38	39	40	41	42
American:	14	14.5	15	15.5	16	16.5	17
English:	14	14.5	15	15.5	16	16.5	17
Continental:	36	37	38	39	40	41	42

shoes

Japanese:	24.5	26	27.5	28	29		
American:	5.5	6.5	7.5	8.5	9.5	10.5	11.5
English:	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
Continental:	39	40	41	42	43	44	45

会話

Situation 1

シェワーツ： そのセーターを見せてください。

店員： これですか。 どうぞ。

...

シェワーツ： もう少し大きいのはありませんか。

店員： じゃあ、これはいかかでございますか。
こちらは LL サイズでございます。

Situation 2

店員： いらっしゃいませ。

ロビンソン： すみません。 あれを見せてください。

店員： こちらですか。

ロビンソン： いいえ、その上です。

店員： はい、どうぞ。

...

ロビンソン： もう少し違う色のはありますか。

店員： あいにくですか、この形はこの色だけです。

Situation 3

店員： いらっしゃいませ。 お客様のごさいますか。

キング： ちょっと見ておるだけです。

Lesson 17 Asking for service and indicating preference

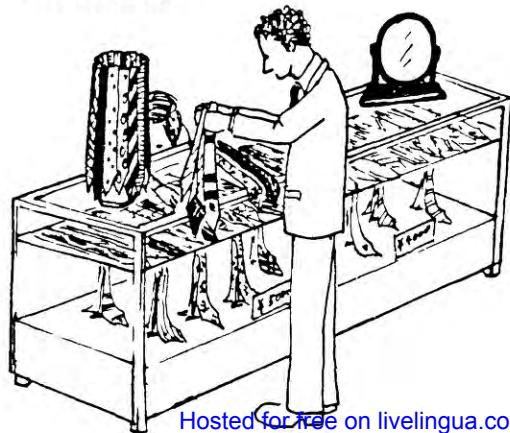
Lesson 18

MAKING A DECISION

これをください。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- make a price inquiry
- order various quantities of the same merchandise
- tell the clerk that you don't need the merchandise you have examined
- indicate that you are going to leave the store without buying anything
- read price tags written in Japanese numerals
- use numbers from 10,000 up



DIALOGS**KAIWA****Situation 1**

Mr. Moore goes to a neighborhood wine merchant to get some American beer.

- | | | |
|----------------|--|---|
| <i>Muaa:</i> | Amerika no biiru wa arimasu ka? | <i>Do you have American beer?</i> |
| <i>Sakaya:</i> | Ee, Badowaizaa to Shurittsu dake desu ga... | <i>Yes, but we have only Budweiser and Schlitz.</i> |
| <i>Muaa:</i> | Jaa, Badowaizaa o wan pakku kudasai. | <i>Then I'll take one pack of Budweiser.</i> |
| <i>Sakaya:</i> | Sen-nihyaku-en desu. Arigatoo gozaimashita. | <i>It's 1,200 yen.
Thank you very much.</i> |

Situation 2

Mr. Anderson goes to a department store to buy a necktie

- | | | |
|------------------|--|---|
| <i>Andaason:</i> | Sumimasen. Kono nekutai to sono nekutai o misete kudasai.
(pointing to two ties) | <i>Excuse me. Please show me this tie and that tie.</i> |
| <i>Ten-in:</i> | Hai, doozo. | <i>Yes, here you are.</i> |
| <i>Andaason:</i> | Kore wa ikura desu ka?
(pointing to one of them) | <i>How much is this? (pointing to one of them)</i> |
| <i>Ten-in:</i> | Sanzen-gohyaku-en desu. | <i>It's 3,500 yen.</i> |
| <i>Andaason:</i> | Soo desu ka. Jaa, kore o kudasai. | <i>I see. Then I'll take it.</i> |

Situation 3

Ms. Kelly goes to a women's clothing store.

- | | | |
|----------------|--|--|
| <i>Kerii:</i> | Sono seetaa o misete kudasai. | <i>Please show me that sweater.</i> |
| <i>Ten-in:</i> | Hai. | <i>Yes.</i> |
| • • • | | |
| <i>Kerii:</i> | Akai no wa arimasu ka? | <i>Do you have a red one?</i> |
| <i>Ten-in:</i> | Ainiku desu ga, kochira dake desu. | <i>I'm sorry, but this style comes only in this color.</i> |
| <i>Kerii:</i> | Soo desu ka. Jaa, kekkoo desu. Mata kimasu. | <i>Oh. Then, that's OK. I'll come again.</i> |

Situation 4

Mrs. Keith goes to a meat market in her neighborhood.

Kiisu: **Sukiyaki no niku wa arimasu ka?**

Do you carry meat for sukiyaki?

Nikuya: **Ee, achira no kauntaa desu.**

Yes, it's over in that showcase.

• • •

Kiisu: **Kore wa ikura desu ka?**
(pointing to some meat)

How much is this kind?

Nikuya: **Hyaku-guramu sen-yonhyaku-en
desu. Kochira wa sen-nanahyaku-en
desu.** (pointing to different meat)

*It's 1,400 yen per 100 grams.
This is 1,700 yen per 100 grams.*

Kiisu: **Jaa, sen-yonhyaku-en no o
roppyaku-guramu kudasai.**

*Well, then, give me 600 grams of
the one that is 1,400 yen.*

VOCABULARY**KOTOBA****Dialogs**

sakaya	wine merchant	さかや
biiru	beer	ビール
wan pakku	one pack	ワンパック
akai	red	あかい
kekko(desu)	that's o.k., that's fine	けっこう(です)
mata	again	また
kimasu	come	きます
niku	meat	にく
kauntaa	counter	カウンター
guramu	gram	グラム

Practice

sakana	fish	さかな
aoi	blue	あおい
mikan	tangerine, mandarin orange	みかん
kiro	kilogram/kilometer	キロ
hankachi	handkerchief	ハンカチ
shiroi	white	しろい
ebi	shrimp	えび
okome	(uncooked) rice	(お)こめ

Notes

man	ten thousand	まん
gyuuniku	beef	ぎゅうにく
ringo	apple	りんご
ten	point (in decimals)	てん

yasuku	cheap (ku form of yasui)	やすく
narimasen	doesn't become (negative of narimasu)	なりません

Personalized list

PRACTICE**RENSHUU****A. *Reading Numbers***

We have so far learned the numbers up to 9,999. Japanese has a special word for ten thousand, which is **man** (万). Study the following and practice the pronunciation by repeating after the instructor:

10,000	ichi-man
20,000	ni-man
30,000	san-man
40,000	yon-man
50,000	go-man
60,000	roku-man
70,000	nana-man
80,000	hachi-man
90,000	kyuu-man
100,000	juu-man
110,000	juu-ichi-man
.	.
.	.
.	.
.	.
.	.
1,000,000	hyaku-man

Now read aloud the following:

- | | | |
|------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. 18,047 | 5. 85,816 | 9. 46,925 |
| 2. 74,553 | 6. 36,230 | 10. 51,395 |
| 3. 44,602 | 7. 99,267 | 11. 107,489 |
| 4. 135,000 | 8. 3,000,000 | 12. 7,560,000 |

B. Reading Numbers

As mentioned earlier, Kanji numerals are also used in written Japanese. You will find them on some price tags at neighborhood grocery stores, fish stores, etc. Practice reading the following Kanji numerals by comparing them with the Arabic numerals they follow:

1	一	11	十一
2	二	13	十三
3	三	15	十五
4	四	17	十七
5	五	19	十九
6	六	20	二十
7	七	456	四百五十六
8	八	123	百二十三
9	九	1,368	千三百六十八
10	十	2,789	二千七百八十九

Match the following Arabic numbers with the corresponding Kanji numbers

8	三
10	九
5	百
7	一
3	四
100	千
1	二
6	十
2	五
1,000	八
9	六
4	七
10,000	一万

Lesson 18 Making a decision

Yen is written in Kanji as 円. Rewrite the following prices using Arabic numbers:

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8.
七 五 八 四 六 九 三 十
万 万 十 十 万 万 千 二
四 九 六 七 九 四 七 万
千 千 万 万 千 千 百 八
八 円 六 円 五 円 円 千
百 千 百 円
円 円 円

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

C. Substitution Drill

Sore o hitotsu kudasai.

Akai no
mittsu
Sono sakana
Chiisai no
futatsu
Ookii no
Aoi no

D. Substitution Drill

Kono niku o 300 guramu kudasai.

500 guramu
Ookii no
800-en no
Chiisai no
1 kiro
Kore

E. Combination Drill

(cue) aoi seetaa, akai seetaa
 (response) Aoi no to akai no o kudasai.

ookii ringo, chiisai ringo
 100-en no mikan, 150-en no mikan
 L saizu no shatsu, S saizu no shatsu
 kore, sore
 kono sukaafu, sono sukaafu

F. Put the following words in the correct order to form a sentence:

1. kudasai, 600 guramu, 1,200-en, o, niku, no
2. seetaa, ikura, wa, ano, desu, ka?
3. to, no, futatsu, yottsu, kudasai, ookii, chiisai, no, o
4. hankachi, kono, kudasai, futatsu, o
5. 2 kiro, o, 1 kiro, kono, 550-en, no mikan, kudasai
6. mittsu, o, sukaafu, kudasai, shiroi, sono
7. 2,000-en, 3,500-en, gozaimasu, to, no, ga, no

G. Production Exercise

Directions:

The student chooses an item from the list below and asks the price. The instructor tells the student the kinds available. The student chooses one kind and requests the amount given in the list below. The instructor then gives the total price. The student listens carefully to be sure that the amount is correct.

Example:

Student: Gyuuniku wa ikura desu ka?
Instructor: 100 guramu 1,200-en (no) to 1,500-en no ga arimasu.
Student: 1,200-en no o 600 guramu kudasai.
Instructor: 7,200-en desu.

Lesson 18 Making a decision

Student's list	任 教師は適当に値段を用意する
<u>Item to buy</u>	<u>Amount</u>
gyuuniku	600 g
mikan	2 kg
ringo	5
ebi	500 g
okome	1 kg

H. Comprehension and Production Exercise

Listen to what the instructor says. Respond by selecting the appropriate English equivalent below and translating it into Japanese.

1. *Instructor:*
Student: (Then, never mind.)
(Do you have a different one?)
2. *Instructor:*
Student: (Please give me 2kg of the one that is 1,500 yen.)
(I'll take one of the red ones.)
3. *Instructor:*
Student: (I'll take one of the red ones.)
(Please give me 2kg of the one that is 1,500 yen.)
4. *Instructor:*
Student: (Please give me 500g of the one that is 300 yen.)
(I'll take one of the blue ones.)
5. *Instructor:*
Student: (Then I'll come again.)
(I'll take 200g of the one that is 1,300 yen.)
6. *Instructor:*
Student: (I'll take two of those that are 1,300 yen each.)
(I'll take 200g of the one that is 1,300 yen.)
7. *Instructor:*
Student: (Give me two of those that are 800 yen each.)
(Give me 200g of the one that is 500 yen.)

教師用スクリプト

- 1 あいにくですか、これだけです。 6 こちらは一つ千三百円で、そちら
2 一キロ、千円と千五百円ですか は、一つ千五百円でございます。
3 白いのと、赤いのかこちらにこさいます。 7 こちらは百グラム五百円で、
4 百グラム三百円と四百円です。 そちらは百グラム八百円ですか。
5 百グラム千円と千三百円です。

I. Comprehension and Production Exercise**Directions**

Listen to the instructor's statement and respond appropriately.

Example.

Instructor: L saizu to M saizu dake desu ga ...

Student: Soo desu ka. Jaa, L saizu no o kudasai. OR
Jaa, kekkoo desu. Mata kimasu.

教師用スクリプト

- 1 千円のと千二百円のかこさいます。
- 2 大きいのはありますか、小さいのはありません。
- 3 あいにくですか、これだけです。
- 4 LLサイズはありますか、LとMはありません。
- 5 あいにくですか、ちかう形のはこさいません。
- 6 一つ三百円ですか、四つ千円です。
- 7 ちかう色は、赤と青だけです。
- 8 百クラム二百円と三百円です。
- 9 お客様、あいにくですか、ちょっと
- 10 こちらは百クラム二百円、こちらは三百円です。

J. Put the following words in the correct order to form a sentence:

1. misete, moo sukoshi, kudasai, yasui, no, o
2. kudasai, mitssu, kore, o
3. ringo, kono, o, kudasai, futatsu
4. misete, kono, kudasai, seetaa, o
5. moo sukoshi, misete, kudasai, o, ookii no
6. iro, misete, chigau, no, o, kudasai
7. yasui, wa, moo sukoshi, ka, no, arimasu
8. moo sukoshi, ka, arimasu, wa, ookii no
9. katachi, wa, ka, chigau, arimasu
10. saizu, ga, no, arimasu, chigau, ka

READING

KANJI

1. 非常口 hijooguchi emergency exit
2. 指定席 shiteeseki reserved seat
3. 自由席 jiyyuseki general admission seat
4. 地下 chika basement
5. 商店街 shootengai shopping street
6. 横断歩道 oodanhodoo pedestrian crossing
7. 注意 chuui caution
8. 止まれ tomare stop

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. **Kore o kudasai** 'I'll take this' or 'Please give me this'

As we learned in Lesson 15, the word *kudasai* can be used, with a verb *te*-form before it, when you make a request. For example, when you want to see some merchandise, you can say to the clerk *Kore o misete kudasai* 'Please show me this one.' The word *kudasai* can also be used independently, as the following example illustrates:

Kore o kudasai.

(Please) give me this.

As the English equivalent indicates, the word *kudasai* by itself means '(Please) give me.' Thus, we can use it when we want to say something like 'I'll take this' in a store. Please note that the word that refers to the thing you want, followed by the particle *o*, is placed before *kudasai*. However, here again, as in *onegai shimasu*, the particle *o* can be omitted in conversation.

When you want to say 'I'll take three of these' or 'Please give me three of these,' you simply add the number (and a counter) in front of *kudasai*, as in the following example:

Kore o mittsu kudasai.

Please give me three of these.

Please note that a native Japanese numeral is used in the above example. As explained in Lesson 10, Japanese uses different counters for different objects. *-tsu* is the general-purpose counter always used with the native Japanese numerals from one to nine. When you are not sure of the appropriate counter for the thing you want, use the native Japanese numeral and *-tsu*. Although in some cases this may sound odd to a Japanese person, it is comprehensible.

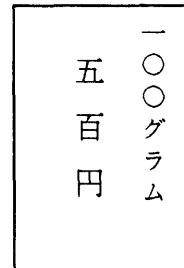
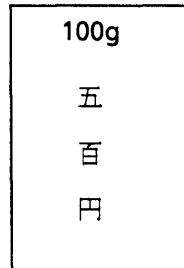
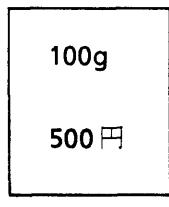
Likewise, when you want to say 'I'll take 100 grams of that,' you can say:

Sore o hyaku-guramu kudasai.

Please give me 100 grams of that.

2. How to say '500 yen per 100 grams'

At grocery stores, fish stores, etc., the price tags are often written in the following ways:



Note: The tags above are read as 100 guramu 500 yen

Lesson 18 Making a decision

When you refer to beef that is 300 yen per 100 grams, for example, you can say:

100 guramu 300-en no (gyuu)niku

This expression can be generalized into the following pattern

Unit (100 g, 1 kg, etc.) price **no** merchandise

- | | |
|---|--|
| e.g. 100 guramu 500-en no gyuuniku | <i>100 g of the beef that is 500 yen</i> |
| 1 kiro 300-en no ringo | <i>1 kg of the apples that are 300 yen</i> |

However, as we discussed in Lesson 17, when you have been talking about a particular item or when you choose one from among several, it is not necessary to say its name again. You can simply say.

100 guramu 500-en no *the one that is 500 yen for 100 g*

When you want to order 200 g of the merchandise that is 500 yen for 100 grams, for example, you can use the following expression

100 guramu 500-en no o 200 guramu kudasai. *Please give me 200 g of the one that is 500 yen for 100 g*

You may have noticed that this expression is merely an expansion of what we discussed above. Compare the following

Kore o 200 guramu kudasai. *Please give me 200 g of this*

100 guramu 500-en no o 200 guramu kudasai *Please give me 200 g of the one that is 500 yen for 100 g*

3. When you decide not to buy anything and you want to leave the store

When you find out that the store doesn't carry the item you want and you want to leave, you can use the following expressions

Jaa, kekkoo desu. *(lit., 'Well, that's all right')*

The word **kekkoo** means 'fine' or 'all right.' The above expression means something like 'If you don't have the merchandise I want, then I'll go without (i.e., I won't buy).'

When you leave the store, you may want to express your gratitude to the clerk for showing you the merchandise by saying **Doomo (arigatoo)**, etc.

When you can't find what you want and you want to leave the store, you may say something like 'I'll come again.' This can be expressed as follows:

Jaa, mata kimasu. *Well, I'll come again*

4. *Bargaining*

Ordinarily, you don't bargain in Japan (especially at department stores). However, at small shops such as antique shops, for example, there are cases in which people do bargain. However, you should try to bargain only after observing other customers to find out whether it is acceptable to bargain at the shop you are in, for bargaining can be offensive to the clerk or shopkeeper.

When you want to bargain, you can use the following expression:

Moo sukoshi yasuku narimasen ka?
'Can't you make it cheaper?' (lit., Won't it become a little cheaper?)

会話

Situation 1

ムアー アメリカのビールはありますか。
酒屋 ええ、ハトワイサーとソユリノノたけてですか
ムアー しゃあ、ハトワイサーをワンパノクください。
酒屋 1,200円です。ありがとうございました。

Situation 2

アノターノン すみません。このネクタイとそのオクタイを見せてください。
店員 はい、どうぞ。
アノターノン これはいくらですか。
店員 3,500円です。
アノターノン そってですか、しゃあ、これをください。

Situation 3

ケリー そのセーターを見せてください。
店員 はい。
ケリー 赤いのはありますか。
店員 あいにくですか、こちらたけてす。
ケリー そうですか。しゃあ、結構です。また来ます。

Situation 4

キース すきやきの肉はありますか。
肉屋 ええ、あちらのカウンターです。

キース これはいくらですか。
肉屋 100グラム、1,400円です。こちらは1,700円です。
キース しゃあ、1,400円のを600グラム、ください。

Lesson 19

PAYING AND RECEIVING CHANGE

いくらですか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- find out the total price you should pay
- deal with a cashier
- deal with cases in which you are shortchanged



DIALOGS

KAIWA

Situation 1

Ms. Kraft goes to a neighborhood vegetable store.

- | | | |
|------------------|--|---|
| Kurafuto: | Kono mikan kudasai. Ikura desu ka? | <i>I'd like these oranges.
How much are they?</i> |
| Yaoya: | Hito-yama 550-en desu. | <i>550 yen per pile.</i> |
| Kurafuto: | Sore kara, hoorensoo to retasu kudasai. | <i>Then I'd like some spinach
and lettuce.</i> |
| Yaoya: | Hoorensoo wa ichi-wa 250-en, retasu
wa ik-ko 200-en desu. | <i>Spinach is 250 yen a bunch,
lettuce is 200 yen a head.</i> |
| Kurafuto: | Zenbu de ikura desu ka? | <i>How much is it in all?</i> |
| Yaoya: | Choodo 1000-en ni narimasu.
Maido arigatoo gozaimasu. | <i>It comes to exactly 1000 yen.
Thank you very much.</i> |

Situation 2

Mr Hunter picks up a few English language books at a bookstore and takes them to the cashier.

- | | | |
|----------------|---|---|
| Hantaa: | Kore o kudasai. | <i>(I'd like to buy) these, please.</i> |
| Ten-in: | Kashikomarimashita.
Ichiman-en oazukari itashimasu.
Shooshoo omachi kudasaimase. | <i>Certainly.
I've received 10,000 yen.
Please wait a moment.</i> |
| <i>...</i> | | |
| Ten-in: | Omatase itashimashita. Hap-pyaku
gojuu-en no okaeshi de gozaimasu. | <i>I'm sorry to have kept you
waiting.
Here is the change, 850 yen.</i> |

Situation 3

Mrs. Dixon buys some vegetables for 380 yen at the neighborhood grocery store. Since Mrs. Dixon had given the grocer a thousand yen bill, the change should be 620 yen.

- | | | |
|-----------------|---|---|
| Yaoya: | Hai, doomo. Hyaku nijuu-en no
otsuri desu. | <i>Here you are. Thank you.
This is your change of 120 yen.</i> |
| Dikuson: | Anoo... ima sen-en watashimashita ga... | <i>Uh... I just gave you 1,000 yen.</i> |
| Yaoya: | A, doomo sumimasen. | <i>Oh, I'm sorry.</i> |
| <i>...</i> | | |
| Yaoya: | Sumimasen ne. Mata doozo. | <i>I'm sorry Please come again.</i> |

VOCABULARY

KOTOBA

Dialogs

hito-yama	a pile	ひとやま
hoorensoo	spinach	ほうれんそう
ichi-wa	a bunch	いちわ
retasu	lettuce	レタス
ik-ko	one	いっこ
zenbu de	altogether	ぜんぶで
zenbu	all	ぜんぶ
narimasu	become	なります
maido arigatoo gozaimasu	thank you very much (used by shop clerks)	まいどありがとうございます
shooshoo	a little	しょうしょう
oazukari itashimasu	I'm taking (deferential)	おあずかりいたします
kudasaimase	Please (very polite)	くださいませ
omatase itashimashita	I'm sorry to have kept you waiting (deferential)	おまたせいたしました
okaeshi de gozaimasu	your change is... (deferential)	おかえしでございます
otsuri	change (money)	おつり
ima	now	いま
watashimashita	handed over	わたしました

Practice

shitsuree itashimashita	I'm sorry, I beg your pardon	しつれいいいたしました
nashi	pear	なし
ninjin	carrot	にんじん
kyuuri	cucumber	きゅうり
kyabetsu	cabbage	キャベツ
tomato	tomato	トマト

PRACTICE

RENSHUU

A. Production and Comprehension Exercise (注: 教師は適宜に答える)

Directions:

The student asks how much several items cost altogether. The instructor answers and the student repeats and writes down the price. Then the instructor checks whether or not the student got the correct price.

Example:

Student: Zenbu de ikura desu ka?

Instructor: Ichiman sanzen-en de gozaimasu.

Student: Ichiman sanzen-en desu ne.

(writes 13,000)

Instructor: (checks the student's answer)

Answer sheet

- | | |
|----|-----|
| 1. | 6. |
| 2. | 7. |
| 3. | 8. |
| 4. | 9. |
| 5. | 10. |

B. Substitution Exercise

Directions:

Substitute the various yen amounts listed for gosen-en in the example sentence.

Example:

Ima gosen-en watashimashita ga...

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1. ¥10,000 | 6. ¥30,000 |
| 2. ¥8,000 | 7. ¥6,000 |
| 3. ¥20,000 | 8. ¥2,500 |
| 4. ¥50,000 | 9. ¥7,000 |
| 5. ¥15,000 | 10. ¥3,000 |

C. Comprehension Exercise

(注: 教師は適宜に答える)

Directions:

The instructor returns change to the student. The student then thanks him/her and writes down the amount heard. Finally, the instructor checks the student's answer.

Example:

Instructor: **Omatase itashimashita.
Nisen sanbyaku-en no okaeshi de gozaimasu.**
Student: **Doomo.** (writes down 2,300)
Instructor: (checks the student's answer)

Answer sheet

- | | |
|----|-----|
| 1. | 6. |
| 2. | 7. |
| 3. | 8. |
| 4. | 9. |
| 5. | 10. |

D. Substitution & Comprehension Exercise

Directions:

The student requests fruits or vegetables as given in the list below and asks how much they are. The instructor answers that they cost so-and-so much for a certain amount. The student acknowledges the instructor's response and writes down what s/he has heard. Then the instructor checks the student's answer.

Example:

Student: **Kono mikan kudasai. Ikura desu ka?**
Instructor: **Hito-yama 550-en desu.**
Student: **Aa soo desu ka.** (writes down 1 pile=550-en)
Instructor: (checks the student's answer)

Student's list

教師用スクリプト

- | | |
|----------------|----------------------|
| 1. Kono kyuuri | 一本 四十円ですが… |
| 2. ano ninjin | 一山 三百五十円でございます。 |
| 3. kyabetsu | 一個 百八十円。 |
| 4. sono tomato | 百グラム 百四十五円です。 |
| 5. nashi | 一個 百五十円、三個で四百円ですよ。 |
| 6. ano ringo | 大は一つ二百五十円で 小は百二十円です。 |

E. Translation & Substitution Exercise

Directions:

The instructor welcomes the student. The student then states that s/he wishes to buy various amounts of fruits and vegetables as given in the list below. The instructor then confirms what s/he has heard.

Example:

Instructor: Irasshaimase.

Student: Hoorensoo ni-wa to retasu hitotsu kudasai.

Instructor: Hoorensoo ni-wa to retasu hitotsu desu ne.

Student's list

1. one cabbage and a pile of cucumbers
2. three apples and two pears
3. a pile of tomatoes and one cabbage
4. five pears and a pile of carrots
5. two piles of apples and a head of lettuce

F. Comprehension Drill

Arrange the following sentences in the right order and give a rough translation of each dialog to the instructor (write the letters of the exchanges in the correct order in the answer space provided):

1. A: 7,800-en desu.
B: Kore desu ka? Doozo.
C: Sono akai seetaa o misete kudasai.
D: Jaa, kore o kudasai.
E: Ikura desu ka?

Answer: _____

2. A: Moo sukoshi yasui no wa arimasu ka?
B: 800-en desu.
C: Ainiku desu ga...
D: Sono tokee wa ikura desu ka?
E: Jaa, kekkoo desu.

Answer: _____

3. A: Omatase itashimashita. 800-en no okaeshi de gozaimasu.
B: Hitotsu kudasai.
C: 2,000-en oazukari itashimasu. Shooshoo omachi kudasai.
D: Kore wa ikura desu ka?
E: 1,200-en de gozaimasu.

Answer: _____

4. A: Sumimasen, kore o kudasai.
B: Omatase itashimashita,
C: Maido arigatoo gozaimasu.
D: Hai, 3,000-en oazukari itashimasu.
E: 300-en no otsuri desu.

Answer: _____

5. A: Kashikomarimashita.
B: Kore wa ikura desu ka?
C: Jaa, kore o kudasai.
D: 2,500-en desu.
E: Doomo arigatoo gozaimashita.
F: Mata doozo.

Answer: _____

G. Comprehension Exercise

Listen to the conversation on the tape twice, aiming for overall understanding. Then fill in the chart while listening to the tape again. Check your answers by listening to the tape for a fourth time.

Question	Conversation No 1	2	3	4	5
Did the customer buy the merchandise? (yes/no)					
What did the customer buy?					
How much did it cost?					
Did the customer receive change? (yes/no)					

テープ用スクリプト

1. A いらっしゃいませ。お客様ですか。
B 見ているだけです。
2. A すみません、この本を下さい。
B かしこまりました。千八百円でございます。
お待たせ致しました。二百円でございます。毎度ありがとうございます。
3. A いらっしゃいませ。
B そのカメラを見せてください。
A はい。
B これはいくらですか。
A 三万二千円です。
B そうですか。もう少し安いのありますか。
A そうですね。二万九千円のはいかかですか。
B ああ、いいですね。これを下さい。
A はい。三万円お預かり致します。
お待たせ致しました。ありがとうございました。千円のお返してございます。

4. A: ちょっと、すみません。もう少し大きいレインコートはありますか。
B: ちょっとお待ちください。
お客様、あいにくですが、大きいのはございません。
A: そうですか。じゃあ.....

5. A: すみません。そのセーターは、いくらですか。
B: 八千円でございます。
A: そうですか。赤いのはありますか。
B: はい、こちらです。
A: じゃあ、それを下さい。
B: かしこまりました。一万円お預かり致します。
お待たせ致しました。二千円のおつりでございます。

READING

KANJI

1. 一山 hito-yama one pile
2. 一本 ip-pon one (cylindrical object)
3. 一個 ik-ko one unit
4. 一把 ichi-wa one bunch
5. 大 dai large
6. 中 chuu medium
7. 小 shoo small

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. How to ask the total price you pay

In English, when you have bought several items or you want to make sure of the price you must pay, you might ask 'How much is that in all?' The Japanese expression for this is:

Zenbu de ikura desu ka? *How much is it altogether?*

2. Otsuri 'change'

In most shops, you don't have to take the merchandise to the cashier. The clerk will take care of it (bookstores are an exception). Give the merchandise and the money to the clerk. He or she will wrap it and bring it back to you with your change, if there is any.

It often happens, especially in a department store, that the clerk states the amount of money s/he has received from you at the time you pay. In such cases, s/he will say:

(amount you gave)-en oazukari itashimasu.
I have received (amount you gave) yen.

The way the clerk gives you change is different in Japan from the normal American practice. When the clerk hands you your change, s/he may say the following:

X-en no otsuri de gozaimasu. *Here's your change of X-yen.*

(Note: Instead of **otsuri**, **okaeshi** [which literally means 'return'] may also be used.)

In some cases, the clerk may give you your change without stating the amount.

Although it should not happen very frequently, you may occasionally be shortchanged. When this happens, you should make it clear how much you handed to the clerk. You can use the following expression for this purpose:

Ima X-en watashimashita ga... I gave you X yen.

Then the clerk will check the change and give you the correct amount.

3. When you leave the store

When you leave the store, the clerk will probably say one of the following:

Arigatoo gozaimashita.
Maido doomo.

Thank you very much.
Thank you. (*maido* literally means 'every time' and is often used at neighborhood stores)

Maido arigatoo gozaimasu.
Mata doozo.

Thank you very much.
Please come again.

It is not necessary to say anything in reply to the above but you may say **Sayonara**, if you wish.

4. A different way of giving change

When you make a small purchase in a Japanese shop and pay for it with a large bill, you might get the impression that at least in one respect the Japanese are not very considerate. The clerk will not hand you the change in the American way, counting it out as s/he hands it to you. Instead, s/he will hand you all the different denominations in a lump, just saying **Arigatoo gozaimasu** 'thank you'.

This method of giving change might appear inconsiderate to those accustomed to the western way. It might even arouse doubts as to whether one has been 'shortchanged'. But if you carefully observe the Japanese customers, you will note that most of them hardly appear to check the amount before putting it away.

It may be that some customers simply trust the clerks or at least don't want to give the impression that they mistrust them. It might also be that some feel that it's unseemly to count money in public. In most cases, however, it's just that the Japanese are good and fast at arithmetic.

The Japanese who pays for a 1,150 yen purchase with a 10,000 yen note has already calculated in his/her head the amount of change s/he should receive. When the change is given, one swift glance and some quick mental arithmetic tells the customer whether it is the correct amount.

Conversely, a Japanese person traveling in the United States for the first time is usually bewildered when the clerk gives change in the American way. S/he would think that it is a lot of unnecessary trouble and excessive consideration for the customer.

5. Counters for fruits and vegetables

In English, we can ordinarily put a number directly before the word for a fruit or vegetable, for example, 'one pear, two cabbages, three cucumbers', etc. However, even in English, there are some exceptions such as 'one head of lettuce' or 'two bunches of spinach', where a counter is needed.

In Japanese, all words for fruits and vegetables (as well as many other nouns) require a counter between the number and the word for the fruit or vegetable. Some commonly used counters include:

yama (for piles of apples, oranges, carrots, cucumbers, tomatoes, etc.)

wa (for bunches of spinach or carrots, etc.)

ko (for heads of lettuce or cabbage, individual apples, oranges, etc.)

hon (for individual cucumbers, carrots, etc.)

Notice the forms for the various numbers plus counter:

NUMBER	YAMA	WA	KO	HON
one	hito-yama	ichi-wa	ik-ko	ip-pon
two	futa-yama	ni-wa	ni-ko	ni-hon
three	mi-yama	san-wa/ba	san-ko	san-bon
four			yon-ko	yon/shi-hon
five			go-ko	go-hon
six			rok-ko	rop-pon
seven			shichi/nana-ko	shichi/nana-hon
eight			hachi/hak-ko	hachi/hap-pon
nine			kyuu-ko	kyuu-hon
ten			jik/juk-ko	jip/jup-pon

会話

Situation 1

クラフト: このみかん、ください。いくらですか。
八百屋: 一山、550円です。
クラフト: それから、ほうれん草とレタスください。
八百屋: ほうれん草は一把 250円、レタスは一個 200円です。
クラフト: 全部でいくらですか。
八百屋: ちょうど、1000円になります。
毎度ありがとうございます。

Situation 2

ハンター: これをください。
店員: かしこまりました。10,000円 おあずかりいたします。
少々お待ちくださいませ。
...
店員: お待たせいたしました。
850円のおかえしでございます。

Situation 3

八百屋: はい、どうも。120円のおつりです。
ティクソン: あのう…… 今、1,000円わたしましたが……
八百屋: あ、どうもすみません。
...
八百屋: すみませんね。またどうぞ。

Lesson 20

DAILY GREETINGS

いいお天気ですねえ。

In this lesson, you will learn

- common greetings involving weather
- other routine expressions used for daily greetings
- months and dates



DIALOGS**KAIWA****Situation 1**

On the street near his apartment, Mr. Norton sees a nextdoor neighbor walking towards him. They greet each other.

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| Nooton: | Konnichiwa. | <i>Good afternoon.</i> |
| Nihonjin: | Konnichiwa. | <i>Good afternoon.</i> |
| Nooton: | Kyoo wa ii otenki desu ne. | <i>It's a beautiful day, isn't it?</i> |
| Nihonjin: | Hontoo ni ii otenki desu ne. | <i>Yes, it really is.</i> |

Situation 2

A storekeeper in Mrs. Gordon's neighborhood bows and greets her in the morning when she passes by.

- | | | |
|------------------|--|---------------------------------------|
| Nihonjin: | Aa, Goodon-san no okusan, ohayoo gozaimasu. | <i>Oh, Mrs Gordon, good morning.</i> |
| Goodon: | Ohayoo gozaimasu. | <i>Good morning.</i> |
| Nihonjin: | Iya na otenki desu ne. | <i>Nasty weather, isn't it?</i> |
| Goodon: | Soo desu ne. | <i>Yes, it is.</i> |
| Nihonjin: | Dokoka e odekake desu ka? | <i>Are you going out somewhere?</i> |
| Goodon: | Ee, chotto... Jaa, mata, gomen kudasai. | <i>Yes. Well, I'll see you . bye.</i> |
| Nihonjin: | Itte (i)rasshai. | <i>Good-bye.</i> |

Situation 3

Mr. Bishop is walking home from a subway station when a neighborhood shopkeeper sees him. The shopkeeper bows and greets him.

- | | | |
|------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Nihonjin: | Konbanwa. | <i>Good evening.</i> |
| Bishoppu: | Konbanwa. | <i>Good evening.</i> |
| Nihonjin: | Ima okaeri desu ka? | <i>Are you returning home now?</i> |
| Bishoppu: | Ee. Ja, oyasuminasai. | <i>Yes. Well, good night.</i> |
| Nihonjin: | Oyasuminasai. | <i>Good night.</i> |

Situation 4

Mr. and Mrs. Nelson are ready to go out for the evening. They have left their children with their babysitter, Michiko

<i>Neruson:</i>	Jaa, kodomo-tachi (o) onegai shimasu.	<i>Well, please look after the children while we are out.</i>
<i>Michiko:</i>	Hai. Itte (i)rasshai.	<i>Certainly Bye</i>
<i>Neruson:</i>	Itte mairimasu.	<i>See you later.</i>
	• • •	• • •
<i>Neruson:</i>	Tadaima.	<i>We're home.</i>
<i>Michiko:</i>	Okaerinasai.	<i>Welcome back.</i>
<i>Neruson:</i>	Kodomo-tachi wa?	<i>How are the children?</i>
<i>Michiko:</i>	Chotto mae ni nemashita.	<i>They went to sleep a little while ago.</i>

VOCABULARY**KOTOBA****Dialogs**

kyoo	today	きょう
(o)tenki	weather	(お)天気
hontoo ni	truly	ほんとうに
hontoo	true	ほんとう
iya	nasty, unpleasant	いや
dokoka	somewhere	どこか
odekake desu	go out (polite)	おでかけてす
gomen kudasai	excuse me; hello (anyone there?); good-bye	こめんくたさい
itte (i)rasshai	good-bye (used by the one staying behind; lit., 'go and come')	いって(い)らっしゃい
okaeri desu ka?	are you going home? (polite)	おかえりですか
jaa, mata	so long, see you again later	しゃあまた
oyasuminasai	good night	おやすみなさい
itte mairimasu	I'm going out (lit., 'I'll go and come back')	いってまいります
tadaima	I'm back (used by the one who has returned)	たたいま
okaerinasai	welcome home (used by the one who stayed behind)	おかえりなさい
kodomo-tachi	children	こともたち
chotto mae ni	a little while ago	ちょっとまえ
nemashita	went to sleep, went to bed (past tense of nemasu)	ねました

Practice

atsui	hot	あつい
samui	cold	さもい
natsu	summer	なつ
fuyu	winter	ふゆ
omoi	heavy	おもい
muzukashii	difficult	むずかしい
atatakai	warm	あたたかい
suzushii	cool	すずしい

ichi-gatsu	January	いちかつ
ni-gatsu	February	にかつ
san-gatsu	March	さんかつ
shi-gatsu	April	しかつ
go-gatsu	May	こかつ
roku-gatsu	June	ろくかつ
shichi-gatsu	July	しちかつ
hachi-gatsu	August	はちかつ
ku-gatsu	September	くかつ
juu-gatsu	October	しゅうかつ
juuichi-gatsu	November	しゅういちかつ
juuni-gatsu	December	しゅうにかつ

Notes

chotto (soko made)	just over there (answers 'where are you going?' used as a greeting)	ちょっと(そこまで)
haru	spring	はる
aki	fall	あき
...do	degree (of temperature)	と
tsuyu	rainy season	つゆ

Supplement

tsuitachi	first day of the month	ついたち
futsu-ka	second day of the month, two days	ふつか
mik-ka	third day of the month, three days	みっか
yok-ka	fourth day of the month, four days	よっか
itsu-ka	fifth day of the month, five days	いつか
mui-ka	sixth day of the month, six days	むいか
nano-ka	seventh day of the month, seven days	なのか
yoo-ka	eighth day of the month, eight days	ようか
kokono-ka	ninth day of the month, nine days	ここのか
too-ka	tenth day of the month, ten days	とおか
juuichi-nichi	eleventh day of the month, eleven days	しゅういちにち
juuni-nichi	twelfth day of the month, twelve days	しゅうににち

Lesson 20 Daily greetings

juuyok-ka	fourteenth day of the month, fourteen days	じゅうよっか
hatsuka	twentieth day of the month, twenty days	はつか
nijuuuyok-ka	twenty-fourth day of the month, twenty-four days	にじゅうよっか
sanjuu-nichi	thirtieth day of the month, thirty days	さんじゅうにち
sanjuuichi-nichi	thirty-first day of the month, thirty-one days	さんじゅういちにち

Personalized list

PRACTICE**RENSHUU****A. Production Drill**

Greet the instructor by repeating what s/he said.

Example:

Instructor: Ohayoo gozaimasu.
Student: Ohayoo gozaimasu.

教師用スクリプト

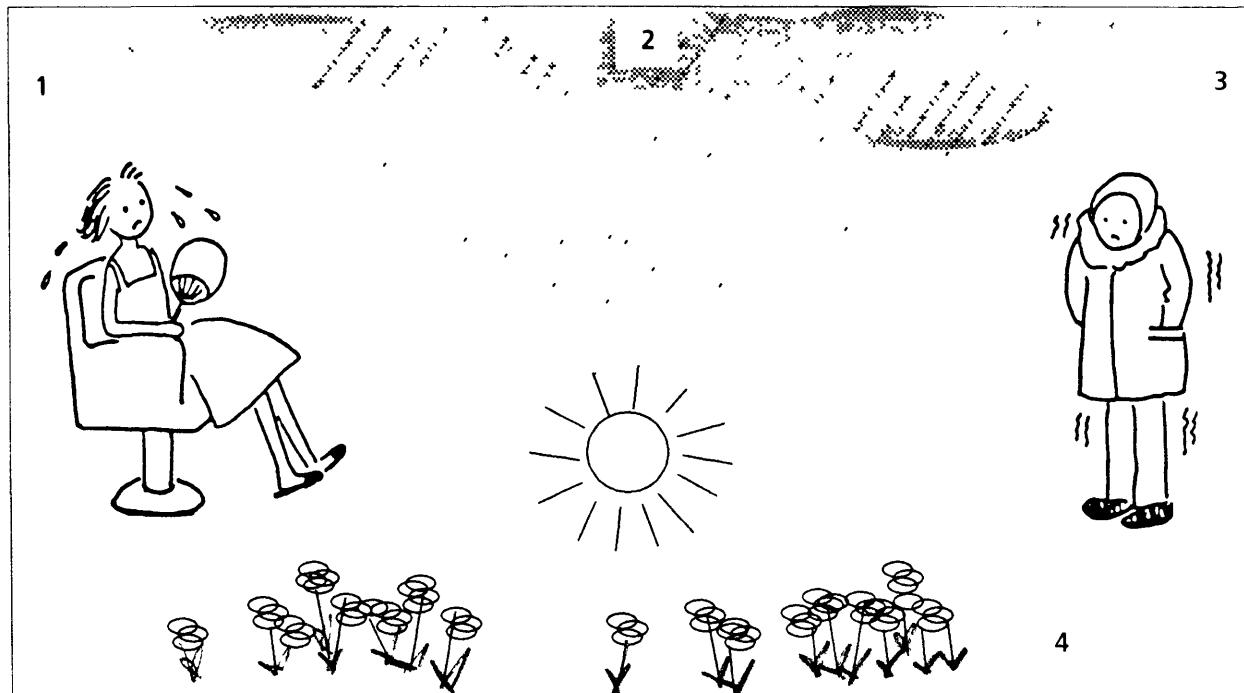
暑いてですねえ。	今日は。
いい(お)天気ですねえ。	今晚は。寒いてですねえ。
お休みなさい。	暖かいですねえ。
涼しいですねえ。	いやな(お)天気ですねえ。

B. Production Drill

Greet the instructor, using the illustrations below as cues.

Example.

Student: Atsui desu ne. (referring to illustration 1)
Instructor: (responds with an appropriate greeting)



C. Production and Comprehension Exercise

Directions:

The instructor greets a student. The student returns the greeting by selecting an appropriate response from the list below and ends the conversation with Jaa, mata or Jaa, gomen kudasai.

Example.

Instructor: Konnichiwa.

Student: Konnichiwa.

Instructor: Kyoo wa atsui desu ne.

Student: Ee, atsui desu ne. OR Soo desu ne.

Jaa, mata. OR Jaa, gomen kudasai.

注 教師は適当にませて挨拶する

おはようございます。

いやなお天気ですねえ。

今晚は。

今、お帰りですか。

寒いですね。

とこかへお出かけですか。

いっていらっしゃい。

いいお天気ですねえ。

今日は。

今日は暑いですねえ。

しゃ、お休みなさい。

しゃ、こめんくたさい。

今日は暖かいてですねえ。

Student's choice

Atsui desu ne.

Ee, chotto...

Soo desu ne.

Hontoo ni...

Konbanwa.

Iya na (o)tenki desu ne.

Oyasuminasai.

Ee.

Ohayoo gozaimasu.

Konnichiwa.

Itte mairimasu.

Jaa, gomen kudasai.

Ja, mata.

D. Production Exercise

What do you say in the following situations?

1. You meet your next door neighbor in the morning on a cold day.
2. You meet a neighborhood shopkeeper in the evening. The weather is nasty.
3. You meet someone who lives in your apartment building during the day. It's a very hot day.
4. You meet a neighborhood shopkeeper in the morning. The weather is beautiful.
5. You come home from a concert. The babysitter greets you.
6. You meet a neighborhood shopkeeper who greets you by asking 'Are you going out somewhere?'
7. You meet a next door neighbor who asks 'Are you returning home now?'

E. Names of the months

Directions:

Repeat after the instructor.

一月	January
二月	February
三月	March
四月	April
五月	May
六月	June
七月	July
八月	August
九月	September
十月	October
十一月	November
十二月	December

F. Matching Exercise

Directions:

Match the Kanji below with the corresponding English translation.

八月	February
三月	September
十一月	April
五月	December
二月	June
七月	August
十二月	November
六月	July
一月	October
十月	May
四月	January
九月	March

Lesson 20 Daily greetings

G. Translation Exercise

Directions: Translate the following Kanji into English.

- | | | |
|-------|--------|---------|
| 1. 九月 | 5. 五月 | 9. 一月 |
| 2. 六月 | 6. 十月 | 10. 四月 |
| 3. 八月 | 7. 二月 | 11. 十二月 |
| 4. 七月 | 8. 十一月 | 12. 三月 |

H. Completion Drill

Directions: Choose the expression which correctly completes each sentence.

1. Washinton no natsu wa
 - a. atsui desu.
 - b. atsuku arimasen.
2. Furorida no fuyu wa
 - a. samui desu.
 - b. samuku arimasen.
3. Amerika kara Nihon made
 - a. tooi desu.
 - b. tooku arimasen.
4. Nyuuyooku no fuyu wa
 - a. samui desu.
 - b. samuku arimasen.
5. Kanada no natsu wa
 - a. atsui desu.
 - b. atsuku arimasen.

I. Transformation Drill

Directions: Transform the following sentences into the negative.

1. Koko kara eki made tooi desu.
2. Koko wa samui desu.
3. Kore wa omoi desu.
4. Tanaka-san no kuruma wa chiisai desu.
5. Nihongo wa muzukashii desu.
6. Koko wa atatakai desu.
7. Koko wa suzushii desu.

READING

KANJI

1. 駐車禁止 chuusha kinshi no parking
2. 制限速度 seegen sokudo speed limit
3. 一時停止 ichiji teeshi stop
4. 駐車場 chuushajoo parking lot

Lesson 20 Daily greetings

Supplementary materials

A. Repetition Drill

The following is a table of the months in Japanese. Fill in the blanks and repeat after the instructor to practice pronunciation.

January	ichi-gatsu
February	ni-gatsu
March	san-gatsu
April	shi-gatsu
May	()gatsu
June	()gatsu
July	()gatsu
August	()gatsu
September	ku-gatsu
October	()
November	()
December	()

B. Dictation Practice

The instructor will dictate the names of various months. Write down in English what you hear.

注: 教師は適宜に一月から十二月まで言う

- | | | |
|----|-----|-----|
| 1. | 6. | 11. |
| 2. | 7. | 12. |
| 3. | 8. | 13. |
| 4. | 9. | 14. |
| 5. | 10. | 15. |

C. Days of the months

1. Repeat after your instructor.

1st:	tsuitachi	一日	17th:	juushichi-nichi	十七日
2nd:	futsu-ka	二日	18th:	juuhachi-nichi	十八日
3rd:	mik-ka	三日	19th:	juuku-nichi	十九日
4th:	yok-ka	四日	20th:	hatsuka	二十日
5th:	itsu-ka	五日	21st:	nijuichi-nichi	二十一日
6th:	mui-ka	六日	22nd:	nijuuni-nichi	二十二日
7th:	nano-ka	七日	23rd:	nijuusan-nichi	二十三日
8th:	yoo-ka	八日	24th:	nijuuyok-ka	二十四日
9th:	kokono-ka	九日	25th:	nijuugo-nichi	二十五日
10th:	too-ka	十日	26th:	nijuuroku-nichi	二十六日
11th:	juuichi-nichi	十一日	27th:	nijuushichi-nichi	二十七日
12th:	juuni-nichi	十二日	28th:	nijuuhachi-nichi	二十八日
13th:	juusan-nichi	十三日	29th:	nijuuku-nichi	二十九日
14th:	juuyok-ka	十四日	30th:	sanjuu-nichi	三十日
15th:	juugo-nichi	十五日	31st:	sanjuuichi-nichi	三十一日
16th:	juuroku-nichi	十六日			

Lesson 20 Daily greetings

2. The instructor will give several days of the month. Write down what you hear.

注: 教師は適宜に日にちを言う

- | | | |
|----|-----|-----|
| 1. | 6. | 11. |
| 2. | 7. | 12. |
| 3. | 8. | 13. |
| 4. | 9. | 14. |
| 5. | 10. | 15. |

3. Match the following:

- | | |
|--------------|--------|
| 1. yok-ka | a. 五日 |
| 2. too-ka | b. 七日 |
| 3. mik-ka | c. 一日 |
| 4. nano-ka | d. 六日 |
| 5. futsu-ka | e. 二十日 |
| 6. mui-ka | f. 八日 |
| 7. kokono-ka | g. 二日 |
| 8. tsuitachi | h. 四日 |
| 9. hatsuka | i. 三日 |
| 10. yoo-ka | j. 九日 |
| 11. itsu-ka | k. 十日 |

4. Read the following Kanji:

- | | | |
|---------|--------|----------|
| 1. 三日 | 6. 五日 | 11. 十八日 |
| 2. 六日 | 7. 十日 | 12. 十四日 |
| 3. 二日 | 8. 九日 | 13. 一日 |
| 4. 二十四日 | 9. 七日 | 14. 三十日 |
| 5. 四日 | 10. 八日 | 15. 二十七日 |

注: 教師はカレンダーを使って学生に月、日を練習させる

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. Weather terminology and greetings

After exchanging greetings like *Ohayoo gozaimasu* ‘Good morning’ or *Konnichiwa* ‘Good afternoon,’ Japanese often mention something about the weather. The weather expressions used in such situations should be taken as a kind of greeting just as in English. However, you may find that the Japanese use these expressions more frequently than Americans. The following are some weather words frequently used in greetings:

<i>atsui</i>	<i>hot</i>
<i>samui</i>	<i>cold</i>
<i>ii (o)tenki</i>	<i>good weather</i> ([o]tenki = <i>weather</i>)
<i>iya na (o)tenki</i>	<i>awful weather</i>

All these words can be used in the following pattern:

Kyoo wa (atsui) desu. *Today is (hot).*

When Japanese weather expressions are used as greetings, they typically take the form of a request for confirmation, as in English:

English: *It's hot, isn't it?*
Japanese: **Atsui desu ne.**

Again, as in English, Japanese responses to this kind of greeting are usually in the affirmative (i.e., you say that you agree).

The following are some typical Japanese responses:

a. Simple repetition

A: **Atsui desu ne.**
B: **Atsui desu ne.**

b. **Soo desu ne.** *That is so, isn't it?*

A: **Samui desu ne.** *It's cold, isn't it?*
B: **Soo desu ne.** *Yes, isn't it?*

c. **Hontoo desu ne.** *That's true, isn't it?*

A: **Ii otenki desu ne.** *It's a fine day, isn't it?*
B: **Hontoo desu ne.** *It certainly is.*

Lesson 20 Daily greetings

2. Where are you going?

In Lesson 1, you learned that 'How are you?' functions in English primarily as a greeting and that the expression is not usually used to make an inquiry about the listener's health. The comparable Japanese expression, *Ogenki desu ka?*, is used both as a greeting and as an inquiry about health.

In this lesson, you will learn another such formula. When you go out, your neighbor may say something like the following:

(Ima) odekake desu ka? Are you going out (now)?

Dokoka e odekake desu ka? Are you going somewhere?

If a person is not familiar with the way these expressions are used, it might seem that the Japanese are very nosy. However, these are routine expressions used as part of a greeting and should not be taken literally. Just like English 'How are you?', they are used to acknowledge a human relationship. Since this is the case, you don't really have to give exact answers to the 'inquiry.' A typical answer is *Ee, chotto (soko made)* 'Yes, just over there'

Similarly, when you come home, your neighbor may say

(Ima) okaeri desu ka ? Are (you) coming home (now)?

You can simply answer *Ee* to this greeting.

3. How to close an encounter

Often it is more difficult to close a conversation than to open one. This is especially true when speaking a foreign language. In your daily encounters with your Japanese neighbors, it may sometimes happen that greetings become longer than you really want them to be. Look at the following:

Nihonjin: Jonson-san, ohayoo gozaimasu.

Jonson: Ohayoo gozaimasu.

Nihonjin: Ima odekake desu ka?

Jonson: Ee.

Nihonjin: Kyoo wa ii otenki desu ne.

Jonson: Soo desu ne. Ja, mata.

Unless Jonson-san shows some sign that he wants to go, the friendly Japanese may feel that s/he has to continue the conversation, although to Jonson-san the conversation may have already become too long (he may be in a rush to get to his office). The expressions Jonson-san needs are 'Excuse me, I have to go now,' or 'Well, I'll see you,' or the like. The following are expressions that can be used in the above situation:

Jaa, mata. Well, (see you) again

Jaa, gomen kudasai. Well, excuse me (I have to go)

Note that **Sayoonara** would sound a little odd in the above situation, for it is usually used when the speaker thinks s/he will not meet the hearer again, at least on the same day.

If a similar conversation takes place late in the evening, **Oyasuminasai** 'Good night' is also appropriate in place of **mata** 'again.' You can use **Gomen kudasai** here, too.

4. Set expressions for greetings

Itte (i)rasshai.	See you. Good-bye.
Itte mairimasu.	See you. Good-bye.

The expression **Itte irasshai** literally means '*Please go and come back,*' and **Itte mairimasu** means '*I'll go and come back.*' These expressions are exchanged in a home when a family member leaves. The person going out says **Itte mairimasu** or **Itte kimasu** and those remaining say **Itte (i)rasshai**.

These expressions are also used among non-family members when they feel that they belong to the same group. The concept of 'group' differs in its range depending on the individual, but usually people living in a neighborhood or people working at the same company would be regarded as members of a group.

Ordinarily, you should respond to **Itte irasshai** by saying **Itte mairimasu**. However, once you have said **Jaa, mata** or **Jaa, gomen kudasai**, you don't have to reply to **Itte irasshai**.

Tadaima	<i>I'm back.</i>
Okaerinasai.	<i>Welcome home.</i>

Tadaima literally means '*right now*' and is said by the person who has returned. The person who has been waiting for the person who has returned says **Okaerinasai**, which literally means '*You have come home.*' In English, people use various expressions when leaving and coming home but in Japan set expressions are used for these occasions. Such expressions as **Konnichiwa**, **Konbanwa** or **Sayoonara** are not used among family members.

5. The four seasons and the Japanese climate

Japan has four seasons, each three months long. March through May are the spring months; June through August, the summer months; September through November, the fall months; and December through February, the winter months. Spring, summer, fall, and winter are called in Japanese **haru**, **natsu**, **aki**, and **fuyu**, respectively. In Japanese, months are literally referred to as '*the first month*', '*the second month*', etc., which corresponds to January, February, etc., in English. The following names of the seasons and months are given for reference:

<u>Season</u>		<u>Month</u>	
haru	<i>spring</i>	san-gatsu	三月
		shi-gatsu	四月
		go-gatsu	五月
	<i>summer</i>	roku-gatsu	六月

Lesson 20 Daily greetings

		shichi-gatsu	七月
		hachi-gatsu	八月
aki	<i>fall</i>	ku-gatsu	九月
		juu-gatsu	十月
		juuichi-gatsu	十一月
fuyu	<i>winter</i>	juuni-gatsu	十二月
		ichi-gatsu	一月
		ni-gatsu	二月

Generally speaking, the climate of Japan is similar to that of the middle portion of the U.S. The mean temperatures (in Fahrenheit), percent humidity, and number of rainy days during the four seasons in the major cities are as follows:

	HARU (spring)			NATSU (summer)			AKI (fall)			FUYU (winter)		
	T	H	R	T	H	R	T	H	R	T	H	R
Sapporo	43.0	68	9	68.4	80	9	50.7	74	13	22.8	75	16
Tokyo	56.3	66	10	77.4	79	10	62.4	74	11	39.4	57	5
Nagoya	55.6	69	10	78.3	81	12	61.9	76	9	37.8	71	7
Kyoto	55.6	67	7	79.0	76	8	62.1	74	5	38.3	72	5
Fukuoka	57.0	74	10	79.7	80	11	63.1	76	7	41.5	75	12
Naha	69.4	79	10	82.8	82	9	75.4	74	9	60.8	70	13

Note: T=temperature H=humidity in % R=rainy days

6. How to describe the temperature in Japanese

As mentioned in previous lessons, since the metric system is used in Japan, temperatures are indicated in Centigrade rather than in Fahrenheit as in the U.S. The following is a conversion table between Centigrade and Fahrenheit:

Fahrenheit	23	32	41	50	68	98.6	104	212
Centigrade	-5	0	5	10	20	36.9	40	100

Conversion Formulas

To convert Fahrenheit to Centigrade, subtract 32 from Fahrenheit and divide by 1.8:

$$\text{Centigrade} = \frac{\text{Fahrenheit} - 32}{1.8}$$

To convert Centigrade to Fahrenheit, multiply Centigrade by 1.8 and add 32:

$$\text{Fahrenheit} = \text{Centigrade} \times 1.8 + 32$$

The counter used in giving temperatures is -do 'degree,' and the pronunciation of numbers before this counter is the same as in the simple counting of numbers.

Examples:

5 degrees	go-do
34 degrees	sanjuu yon-do

会話

Situation 1

ノートン 今日は。
日本人 今日は。
ノートン 今日はいいお天気ですね。
日本人 本当にいいお天気ですね。

Situation 2

日本人 ああコートンさんの奥さん、お早うございます。
コートン お早うございます。
日本人 いやなお天気ですね。
コートン そうですね。
日本人 どこかへお出かけですか。
コートン ええ、ちょっとしゃあ、又。ごめんくたさい。
日本人 いって(い)らつしゃい。

Situation 3

日本人 今晚は。
ヒショノブ 今晚は。
日本人 今、お帰りですか。
ヒンヨノブ ええ。しゃあ、おやすみなさい。
日本人 おやすみなさい。

Situation 4

ネルソン しゃあ、子供たちをお願いします。
みちこ はい。いっていらっしゃい。
ネルソン いってまいります。

ネルソン たたいま。
みちこ： お帰りなさい。
ネルソン 子供たちは?
みちこ： ちょっと前に寝ました。

REVIEW LESSON:**MAKING IT WORK(2)**

This is a review lesson. You will be asked to act out or make up a conversation with the instructor based on the situations listed below. Try to use the expressions you have learned so far as appropriately as possible.

What do you say or do in the following situations?

- 1 You want to go to Shinjuku but don't know where to buy tickets
- 2 You want to know if the train at the platform stops at Shinjuku
- 3 You plan to go to Shinjuku but don't know how to buy tickets, so you ask a Japanese person to do it for you
- 4 You need to find out which train to take to get to Kanda
- 5 You want to know if the express train stops at Ochanomizu
- 6 You ask a Japanese person how many stops there are before Ginza 4-chome, where you want to get off
- 7 You want to get off at Ginza 3-chome but are afraid you'll miss it. Ask a Japanese person next to you to let you know when you reach it
- 8 You're looking for the Nikkatsu Hotel. Walking in that direction, you ask which building from here it is
- 9 You're pretty sure Nihonbashi is the next station but you ask a Japanese person to make sure
- 10 You ascertain that the station you are just coming into is Toranomon
- 11 You want to know which exit to take to get to the Kabuki Theater
- 12 You want to know if the exit you're about to take is the right one for Isetan department store
- 13 You want to go to Nihonbashi and want to know if there's a direct line to there
- 14 You ask a taxi driver to take you to the U.S. Embassy
- 15 You have come as far as the Ginza by taxi. Tell the driver to stop at the entrance to Mitsukoshi department store
- 16 You have reached your destination by taxi. Now you want the driver to let you out right away
- 17 You tried calling a taxi without success, so you ask a Japanese person to help
- 18 You want to take the bus to Yokohama. Find out which bus stop to go to and which bus to take
- 19 You need to find out at a department store information desk which floor women's sweaters are sold on
- 20 While shopping at a department store, you get a headache. Find out where the drug counter is and buy some aspirin
- 21 You ask a salesclerk at a department store to show you a sweater

Review Lesson: Making It Work (2)

- 22 You are asked by a salesperson if you are looking for something. You answer that you're just looking.
23. You had a salesclerk show you a white sweater but now you want to know if they have a red one in the same style.
- 24 You've tried on a pair of shoes but they're too small. You ask for one size larger.
- 25 In front of a camera showcase, you have pointed out a camera to the salesclerk. He gives you the wrong one, the one above the one you want. Tell him to show you the one below.
26. You were shown a necktie for 7000 yen but that is more than you want to pay. Ask to see a cheaper one.
- 27 You've gone into a neighborhood shop and looked about but decided not to buy anything. Give the proper greeting when leaving.
- 28 At the fish store, buy three of the fish you want.
- 29 Buy 400g of the sukiyaki beef that sells for 800 yen per 100 grams.
- 30 Buy 2kg of the tangerines that sell for 750 yen per kg.
- 31 You paid for 750 yen's worth of purchases with a 1000 yen bill but received only 150 yen in change. What now?
- 32 You've bought two or three items and want to know the total amount of the purchase.
33. You meet an acquaintance on a rainy, sultry afternoon.
34. You meet a neighbor on a cold winter evening.
35. Ask today's date.
36. In response to question no. 35, say that you don't know.
37. What do you say when you cannot think of the right word?
38. Ask what train track a train you are waiting for will arrive at.
39. Offer your seat to someone.
40. Ask if Ueno is the third station.
41. Ask if this train stops at Ochanomizu.
42. Ask how much it is.
43. Ask the time the store closes on Sunday.
44. Ask how much a Shinkansen ticket to Kyoto is.
45. Ask the directions to the South exit.
46. Tell a salesclerk to give you five of these.
47. Greet your Japanese neighbors (various ways).
48. Ask if there is a different color.
49. Ask a salesclerk to show you some object.
50. Reply to a Japanese neighbor when s/he says to you 'Dokoka e odekake desu ka?'

Lesson 21

SEATING AND ASKING FOR SERVICE

英語のメニューがありますか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- ask someone to buy a meal ticket for you
- ask to share a table
- ask the waiter/waitress to come with you
(to the display of dishes with food)
- tell the waiter/waitress how many people there are in
your group
- ask for an English menu



DIALOGS**KAIWA****Situation 1**

Mrs Proctor is shopping in a department store. It's lunch time and she goes to the dining hall of the department store. She has heard that one is supposed to buy a meal ticket at the entrance.

Purokutaa:	Sumimasen. Nihongo ga wakarimasen. Kore no shokken o katte kudasaimasen ka?	Excuse me I don't understand Japanese. Would you buy me a meal ticket for this dish?
Nihonjin:	Ee, ii desu yo.	Sure
Purokutaa:	Kore, okane desu.	Here's the money
	...	
Nihonjin:	Hai.	Here you are (handing her the ticket)
Purokutaa:	Doomo arigatoo.	Thank you very much

Situation 2

Ms Hamilton is with three of her friends, none of whom speaks Japanese. They go to a restaurant.

Ueetaa:	Irasshaimase. Nan-nin-sama desu ka?	Welcome How many (people is it)?
Hamiruton:	Yo-nin desu.	Four
Ueetaa:	Doozo kochira e.	This way, please
	...	
Hamiruton:	Eego no menyuu wa arimasu ka?	Do you have an English menu?
Ueetaa:	Hai, gozaimasu. Shooshoo omachi kudasai.	Yes, we do Just a moment, please
	...	
Ueetaa:	Hai, doozo.	Here you are (handing her the menu)
Hamiruton:	Doomo arigatoo.	Thank you

Situation 3

Mr Johnson goes to a Japanese-style restaurant which is very crowded. He finds an empty seat at a table near a window but a Japanese person is sitting at the table.

Jonson:	Sumimasen. Koko ii desu ka?	<i>Excuse me, may I sit here?</i>
Nihonjin:	Ee, ii desu yo.	<i>Sure.</i>
Jonson:	Doomo.	<i>Thank you.</i>
	• • •	• • •
Jonson:	Sumimasen.	<i>Excuse me.</i>
Ueetoresu:	Irasshaimase. Nan ni nasaimasu ka?	<i>Welcome. Would you like to order?</i>
Jonson:	Eego no menyuu wa arimasu ka?	<i>Do you have an English menu?</i>
Ueetoresu:	Ainiku desu ga, gozaimasen.	<i>I'm sorry, we don't.</i>
Jonson:	Soo desu ka. Jaa, sumimasen ga, chotto issho ni kite kudasaimasen ka?	<i>Oh. Well then, could I trouble you to come with me?</i>
Ueetoresu:	Hai.	<i>Sure.</i>
	• • •	• • •
Jonson:	Are onegai shimasu.	<i>I'd like that one. (pointing to a dish)</i>
Ueetoresu:	Hai, wakarimashita.	<i>All right.</i>

VOCABULARY

KOTOBA

Dialogs

shokken	meal ticket	しょっけん
katte	buy (TE form of kaimasu)	かって
kudasaimasen ka	won't you please	くださいませんか
nan-nin-sama	how many people? (polite)	なんにんさま
nan-nin	how many people?	なんにん
yo-nin	four people	よにん
menyuu	menu	メニュー
nasaimasu	do, make (polite)	なさいます
issho ni	together	いっしょに
kite	come(TE form of kimasu)	きて

Practice

hito-ri	one person	ひとり
futa-ri	two persons	ふたり
shinbun	newspaper	しんぶん
zasshi	magazine	ざっし
sandoitchi	sandwich	サンドイッチ
sarada	salad	サラダ

Notes

itashimashoo ka	(what) shall I do/make? (deferential)	いたしましょうか
-----------------	--	----------

PRACTICE**RENSHUU****A. Number of People**

1. The counter for person(s) is **-ri** or **-nin**, which is written in Kanji as 人. Study the following and practice the pronunciation by repeating after your instructor.

1 person	hito-ri	一人
2 persons	futa-ri	二人
3 persons	san-nin	三人
4 persons	yo-nin	四人
5 persons	go-nin	五人
6 persons	roku-nin	六人
7 persons	shichi/nana-nin	七人
8 persons	hachi-nin	八人
9 persons	ku/kyuu-nin	九人
10 persons	juu-nin	十人
11 persons	juu ichi-nin	十一人
12 persons	juu ni-nin	十二人
• •	•	
• •	•	

2. Say the following in Japanese:

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. 3 persons | 7. 7 persons |
| 2. 4 persons | 8. 9 persons |
| 3. 2 persons | 9. 8 persons |
| 4. 1 person | 10. 6 persons |
| 5. 5 persons | 11. 10 persons |
| 6. 6 persons | 12. 14 persons |

Lesson 21 Seating and asking for service

3. The instructor will read several different numbers of people. Write them down in English.

- | | |
|----|-----|
| 1. | 6. |
| 2. | 7. |
| 3. | 8. |
| 4. | 9. |
| 5. | 10. |

4. Match each of the following Kanji expressions with the corresponding romanization:

- | | |
|--------|---------------|
| 1. 三人 | a. futa-ri |
| 2. 九人 | b. yo-nin |
| 3. 五人 | c. kyuu-nin |
| 4. 十五人 | d. go-nin |
| 5. 一人 | e. san-nin |
| 6. 七人 | f. juu go-nin |
| 7. 二人 | g. hito-ri |
| 8. 四人 | h. kyuu-nin |
| 9. 六人 | i. shichi-nin |
| 10. 九人 | j. roku-nin |

B. Response Drill

Directions:

The waitress (=instructor) asks how many people are in the group. The customer (=student) answers, referring to the list below.

Example:

Waitress: Nan-nin-sama desu ka?

Customer: San-nin desu.

Student's list

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. 3 persons | 4. 2 persons |
| 2. 1 person | 5. 6 persons |
| 3. 5 persons | 6. 4 persons |

C. Substitution Drill

Eego no menyuu wa arimasu ka?

shinbun

hon

chizu

zasshi

menyuu

D. Production and Comprehension Exercise

注: 教師は下記スクリプト参照

Directions:

The instructor (=waitress/waiter) greets a student (=customer). The student chooses a dish from the list below and asks if the restaurant serves it. The instructor answers yes or no. The student checks the instructor's response on the answer sheet.

Example:

*Instructor: Irazshaimase.
 Student: Sandoitchi wa arimasu ka?
 Instructor: Hai, gozaimasu.
 Student: (checks the correct response)*

Student's list

Answer sheet

- | | | |
|---------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. bifuteki | () yes | () no |
| 2. koohii | () yes | () no |
| 3. biiru | () yes | () no |
| 4. sarada | () yes | () no |
| 5. sandoitchi | () yes | () no |

教師用スクリプト

1. お待たせいたしました。何に致しましょうか。
あいにくですが、ビフテキはございませんが.....
2. いらっしゃいませ。はい、アメリカン・コーヒーとモカですが.....
3. お待たせ致しました。何になさいますか。
はい、「きりん」でよろしいですか。
4. いらっしゃいませ。何になさいますか。はい、(指さす)こちらです。
5. いらっしゃいませ。何になさいますか。はい、ハム・サンド、
野菜サンド、それに、トマト・サンドがございます。

E. Production and Comprehension Exercise 注: 教師は下記スクリプト参照

Directions:

Make a request or ask a question as instructed below. After the instructor answers your question in Japanese, select the statement which best describes the instructor's response.

1. Ask someone to buy a meal ticket for you.
 The person will buy a ticket for you.
 The person didn't understand what you want.

2. Ask the person if you can share the table with him/her.
 The person said O.K.
 You can't sit down there.

3. Call a waitress and ask her if they have an English menu.
 They don't have one.
 The waitress will bring one.

4. Ask someone to come with you.
 The person will come with you.
 The person didn't understand what you want him/her to do.

5. You are in front of plastic samples. Order a dish by pointing.
 The person understood what you want.
 The person didn't understand what you want.

6. The waitress asked how many people there are in your group.
Answer that there are six.
 The waitress will take you to a table.
 The waitress didn't get the number of people.

教師用スクリプト

1. 食券ですか。いいですよ。
2. あ、すみませんね。今、友達が来るんですよ。
3. いらっしゃいませ。何に致しましょうか。
英語のメニューですか。申し訳ございませんか、ございません。
4. は? 何ですか?
5. あ、あれですね。わかりました。
6. 六人様でございますね。こちらへどうぞ。

READING

KANJI

- | | | | |
|----|----|----------|--------------------------|
| 1. | 食堂 | shokudoo | dining hall, dining room |
| 2. | 食券 | shokken | meal ticket |
| 3. | 百 | hyaku | hundred |
| 4. | 千 | sen | thousand |
| 5. | 万 | man | ten thousand |
| 6. | 円 | -en | yen |

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. **Shokken** (食券) 'meal ticket'

At some restaurants--department store dining halls, for example, you are required to buy a shokken (食券) 'meal ticket' at the shokken uriba (食券売場), which is located at the entrance. After you buy a shokken, give it to the waitress or waiter at your table. The waiter/waitress will then bring you the dish. When you finish the meal, you simply leave the restaurant.

To buy a shokken, you need to know the name of the dish you want. At department store dining halls as well as at many other places, there is a window near the entrance in which plastic samples of available dishes are displayed. The name of the dish and its price are placed in front of each sample. Therefore, what you do is look at the display, decide on a dish, and give its name and the money to the attendant at the shokken uriba. If you can't read the name of the dish you want, you can ask a Japanese person to buy a shokken for you by pointing to the dish in the display. You can use the following expression for this purpose:

Kore no shokken o katte kudasaimasen ka?
Would you please buy a meal ticket for this dish?

You may have noticed that in the above sentence, the phrase kudasaimasen ka is used after the verb katte 'buy'. As you studied earlier, you can express the same meaning by using kudasai, as in the following:

Kore no shokken o katte kudasai.
Please buy a meal ticket for this one

However, as indicated by the difference in the translations of the two sentences, the first sentence is more polite than the second one. Since you are asking a stranger for a favor, it is more appropriate to use the more polite expression, i.e., the first sentence.

2. **Seating**

With the exception of some western-style restaurants and expensive Japanese restaurants, you don't have to wait to be seated. You may simply take any unoccupied seat. However, if the restaurant you are in is crowded, you may have to share a table with someone else. If such is the case, you should ask the person already at the table if it's all right to take the seat by saying

Koko ii desu ka? *May I sit here? (literally, 'Is here O K?')*

The Japanese will probably say

(Ee,) ii desu yo. *Sure /Please*

You can pretty well guess when the seat is already taken by observing the person's attitude, even if you don't understand what is being said. A refusal will probably begin with an apology.

When you are with several people at a restaurant where someone seats you, the waiter/waitress will probably ask you how many people there are in your group by saying:

Nan-nin-sama desu ka? *How many people are there?*

After getting the number from you, s/he will take you to a table by saying:

Kochira e doozo. *This way, please.*

When you want to call a waiter/waitress for service, you can say:

Sumimasen. *Excuse me.*

When a waiter/waitress comes to your table, s/he will first say **Irasshaimase** 'Welcome' and will probably then say:

Nan ni itashimashoo ka? *What shall we serve you?*
OR
Nan ni nasaimasu ka? *What would you like?*

The above two expressions are comparable to 'May I take your order?' or 'Would you like to order?' in English.

3. How to find the dish you want

In some restaurants, menus are written both in Japanese and English. If you don't see an English menu on the table, you may want to find out if they have one. You can use the following expression:

Eego no menyuu wa arimasu ka?
Do you have an English menu? (cf. Lesson 4)

If the restaurant doesn't have an English menu but has a display window outside, you can ask the waiter/waitress to come with you to the display by saying:

Chotto issho ni kite kudasaimasen ka?
Would you please come with me?

The word **chotto** in the above sentence literally means '*a little bit*'. It is used to soften the tone of the request and should not be taken literally.

You may wonder what you should do if the restaurant you are in has neither an English menu nor plastic samples. One way to cope with such a situation is to ask if they serve a dish you like. (You must know the name of the dish in Japanese, of course.) You can use the following expression for this purpose:

(dish name) wa arimasu ka? *Do you serve (dish name)?*

Lesson 21 Seating and asking for service

Another way out of this dilemma is to see if anyone at another table is eating a dish that attracts you. If you see a dish you like, you can order the same by saying:

Are onegai shimasu. *That one, please.*

If the restaurant doesn't have a dish you want and you don't want to bother, you can say **Jaa, mata kimasu** '*I'll come again*' and leave the place to find a restaurant that has plastic samples outside.

会話

Situation 1

プロクター すみません。日本語かわかりません。
 これの食券を買って下さいませんか。

日本人 ええ、いいですよ。

プロクター これ、お金です。

日本人 はい。

プロクター とうもありかとう。

Situation 2

ウエイター いらっしゃいませ。何人様ですか。

ハミルトン 四人です。

ウエイター どうぞ、こちらへ

ハミルトン 英語のメニューはありますか。

ウエイター はい、こさいます。少々お待ち下さい。

ウエイター はい、どうぞ。

ハミルトン とうもありかとう。

Situation 3

ショーン・ノン すみません。ここ、いいですか。

日本人 ええ、いいですよ。

ショーン・ノン とうも。

ショーン・ソン すみません。

ウエイトレス いらっしゃいませ。何になさいますか。

ショーン・ノン 英語のメニューはありますか。

ウエイトレス あいにくですか、こさいません。

ショーン・ノン そうですか。しゃ、すみませんか、ちょっと一緒に来て下さいませんか。

ウエイトレス はい。

ショーン・ノン あれ、お願いします。

ウエイトレス はい、わかりました。

Lesson 21 Seating and asking for service

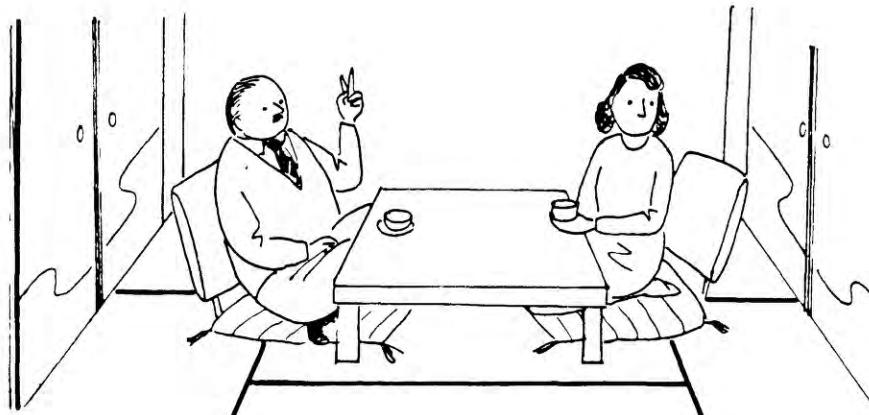
Lesson 22

PLACING AN ORDER

二人前、お願いします。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- indicate that you are not yet ready to place an order
- get the waiter/waitress's attention to tell him/her that you are ready to place an order
- order a certain number of servings of a dish
- place an order for more of something you have already ordered



DIALOGS**KAIWA****Situation 1**

Mr Wilson and his friend go to a Japanese style restaurant near the American Embassy

<i>Uiruson:</i>	Sumimasen. Onegai shimasu.	<i>Excuse me I'd like to order, please</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Okimari desu ka?	<i>Have you decided?</i>
<i>Uiruson:</i>	Ee, tempura futatsu to biiru hitotsu onegai shimasu.	<i>Yes, please bring two servings of tempura and one beer</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Hai.	<i>Certainly</i>
	• • •	
<i>Uiruson:</i>	Sumimasen. Biiru moo ip-pon onegai shimasu.	<i>Excuse me One more bottle of beer, please</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Hai, kashikomarimashita.	<i>Certainly</i>

Situation 2

Mr Young is in a Japanese style restaurant in the Ginza with two friends

<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Irasshaimase. Gochuumon wa?	<i>May I help you? What would you like?</i>
<i>Yangu:</i>	Chotto matte kudasai.	<i>Please wait a moment</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Hai.	<i>Certainly</i>
	• • •	• • •
<i>Yangu:</i>	Sumimasen. Onegai shimasu.	<i>Excuse me I'm ready to order</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Hai. Nan(i) ni itashimashoo ka?	<i>All right What will it be?</i>
<i>Yangu:</i>	Sashimi mittsu to sukiyaki san-ninmae onegai shimasu.	<i>Three servings of sashimi and three servings of sukiyaki, please</i>

<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Hai. Onomimono wa?	<i>Certainly. And to drink?</i>
<i>Yangu:</i>	Osake ni-hon to koora ip-pon onegai shimasu.	<i>Two sake and a cola, please.</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Sumimasen. Koora wa gozaimasen ga...	<i>I'm sorry, but we don't have cola.</i>
<i>Yangu:</i>	A, soo desu ka.	<i>Oh, I see.</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Ocha wa ikaga desu ka?	<i>How about green tea?</i>
<i>Yangu:</i>	Jaa, ocha onegai shimasu.	<i>Well, then, green tea, please.</i>

Situation 3

Ms. Sanders and her friend go to a restaurant for dinner.

<i>Sandaasu:</i>	Suteeki futatsu onegai shimasu. Sarada wa arimasu ka?	<i>Two steaks, please. Do you have salad?</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Mikkusu sarada to guriin sarada ga gozaimasu.	<i>We have mixed salad and green salad.</i>
<i>Sandaasu:</i>	Jaa, guriin sarada futatsu.	<i>Well, then, two green salads, please.</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Suteeki wa midiamu desu ka, rea desu ka?	<i>Would you like your steaks medium or rare?</i>
<i>Sandaasu:</i>	Midiamu to rea desu.	<i>One medium and one rare, please.</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Onomimono wa ikaga desu ka?	<i>How about something to drink?</i>
<i>Sandaasu:</i>	Wain wa arimasu ka?	<i>Do you serve wine?</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Aka to shiro ga gozaimasu.	<i>Yes, we have red and white.</i>
<i>Sandaasu:</i>	Jaa, aka ip-pon onegai shimasu.	<i>A bottle of red wine, please.</i>

VOCABULARY**KOTOBA****Dialogs**

okimari desu ka	Have you decided (polite)	おきまりですか
ip-pon	one cylindrical object	いっぽん
gochuumon	(your) order (polite)	ごちゅうもん
matte	wait (TE form of machimasu)	まって
san-ninmae	three servings	さんなんまえ
ni-hon	two cylindrical objects	にほん
(o)nomimono	something to drink (polite)	(お)のみもの
koora	cola	コーラ
ocha	(green) tea	おちゃ
suteeki	steak	ステーキ
mikkusu sarada	mixed salad	ミックスサラダ
guriin sarada	green salad	グリーンサラダ
midiamu	medium (steak)	ミディアム
rea	rare (steak)	レア
wain	wine	ワイン
aka	red	あか
shiro	white	しろ

Practice

ip-pon	one cylindrical object	いっぽん
ni-hon	two cylindrical objects	にほん
san-bon	three cylindrical objects	さんほん
yon-hon	four cylindrical objects	よんほん
go-hon	five cylindrical objects	ごほん
rop-pon	six cylindrical objects	ろっぽん
ichi-ninmae	one serving	いちなんまえ
ni-ninmae	two servings	になんまえ
san-ninmae	three servings	さんなんまえ

yo-ninmae	four servings	よにんまえ
go-ninmae	five servings	ごにんまえ
roku-ninmae	six servings	ろくにんまえ
naifu	knife	ナイフ
fooku	fork	フォーク
pai	pie	パイ
dezaato	dessert	デザート

Notes

**okimari ni
narimashita ka** Have you decided?
(very polite) おきまりになりましたか

Personalized list

PRACTICE**RENSHUU****A. Repetition Drill**

Directions: Repeat after the instructor.

ip-pon	<i>one cylindrical object</i>	ichi-ninmae	<i>one serving</i>
ni-hon	<i>two cylindrical objects</i>	ni-ninmae	<i>two servings</i>
san-bon	<i>three cylindrical objects</i>	san-ninmae	<i>three servings</i>
yon-hon	<i>four cylindrical objects</i>	yo-ninmae	<i>four servings</i>
go-hon	<i>five cylindrical objects</i>	go-ninmae	<i>five servings</i>
rop-pon	<i>six cylindrical objects</i>	roku-ninmae	<i>six servings</i>

B. Substitution Drill

Tenpura onegai shimasu.

Sushi	Osake
Sashimi	Biiru
Koora	Naifu to fooku

C. Combination Drill

Directions: Combine the following by using the appropriate counter and onegai shimasu.

Example:

cue:	tenpura	3 servings	
response:	Tenpura mittsu (OR san-ninmae) onegai shimasu.		
sushi	4 servings	sashimi	5 servings
biiru	2 bottles	yakitori	2 servings
sake	1 bottle	sukiyaki	1 serving
fooku	2	koohii	1
koora	3 bottles	tenpura	3 servings

D. Production Drill

Using the items in C above, place additional orders.

Example:

cue:	tenpura	3 servings	
response:	Tenpura moo mittsu onegai shimasu.		

E. Matching Drill

Match the following Japanese expressions with the corresponding English expressions:

Kaite kudasai.	Please wait.
Matte kudasai.	Please buy.
Kite kudasai.	Please say.
Katte kudasai.	Please come.
Itte kudasai.	Please write.
Misete kudasai.	Please show (me).

F. Production Drill

Example:

cue: Ask (him/her) to wait a moment.
response: Chotto matte kudasai. or Chotto matte kudasaimasen ka?

- Ask (him/her) to come with you.
- Ask (him/her) to repeat.
- Ask (him/her) to buy a meal ticket.
- Ask (him/her) to buy a (train) ticket.
- Ask (him/her) to repeat slowly.
- Ask (him/her) to write here.
- Ask (him/her) to show it to you.

G. Menu Reading

Look at the menu from a kissaten 'coffee shop' on the next page:

Round 1

Directions:

The instructor will ask you where a certain section of items is written on the menu. Answer by pointing to the section and saying **Koko desu**.

Example:

Instructor: Sofuto dorinku wa doko desu ka?
Student: Koko desu. (pointing to the section)

注: 教師は適当にメニューを見ながら学生に聞く。

メニューソフト・トリンク

コーヒー	480	トマトノユース	400
紅茶	450	オレンジノユース	450
アイスコーヒー	480	レモネート	450
アイス紅茶	430	ハナナノユース	500
コカコーラ	380	ミックスノユース	500
ミルク	300	レモンスカノユ	500
ソーダ水	350	オレンジスカノユ	500
ココア	450	<u>ア・ラ・カルト</u>	
ワインナーコーヒー	500	(PM2 00から)	

フロート

クリームソーダ	480	スペケノティ・ナホリタノ	700
コーヒーフロート	480	チキン・クラタン	800
オレンジフロート	550	シュリンプ・クラタノ	800
コーラフロート	480	チキン・ピラフ	700
ミルクセーキ	480	シュリンプ・ピラフ	700

クリームパフェ

アイスクリーム	400	トースト厚焼き (ハター・シャム付き)	300
チョコレートサンティー	500	ハム・トースト	420
チョコレートパフェ	500	野菜サントウイノチ	400
フルーツパフェ	500	エノク・サントウイノチ	400

ランチ・タイム・サービス

(AM 11:30 - PM 2:00)

ロイヤル・ランチ	950	チーズ・ケーキ	600
ハウス・スペシャル	800	チョコレート・ケーキ	600
レティス・ランチ	750	ストロベリー・ショートケーキ	600
ライス・コンソメスープ付き コーヒー又は紅茶付き		コーヒー又は紅茶付き	

サントイッチ

トースト厚焼き (ハター・シャム付き)	300
ハム・トースト	420
野菜サントウイノチ	400
エノク・サントウイノチ	400
ミックス・サントウイノチ	500
ホノトトノク	400

ティー・タイム・サービス

(PM 2:00-5:00)

チーズ・ケーキ	600
チョコレート・ケーキ	600
ストロベリー・ショートケーキ	600
コーヒー又は紅茶付き	

Round 2

Directions

Find the following items on the menu:

milk
tomato juice
Coca-Cola

ham sandwich
chocolate cake
coffee

Round 3

Directions

Find out the following, with the help of your instructor:

special lunch menu
the price of cheese cake
the price of tea
the price of iced tea
the price of a vegetable sandwich

G. Production and Comprehension Exercise

注 教師は下記スクリプト参照

Directions:

The instructor asks if the student would like to have dessert or a drink. The student selects an appropriate item from the list and asks if the restaurant serves it or not. The instructor answers by giving the kinds of desserts/drinks the restaurant serves. The student chooses one and orders it.

Example

Instructor: Onomimono wa ikaga desu ka?
Student: Wain wa arimasu ka?
Instructor: Aka to shiro ga gozaimasu.
Student: Jaa, aka onegai shimasu.

注 教師は「お飲み物はいかかでこさいますか。」又は「デザートはいかかでこさいますか。」のどちらかを使うこと。

Student's list

教師用返事

wine
pie
ice cream
coffee

赤と白かこさいます。
アノブルとチェリーかこさいます。
ハニラとチョコレートかこさいます。
アメリカンとモカかこさいます。

H. Role Play

Directions.

The instructor (=waitress or waiter) asks if the student is ready to order. The student says 'Wait' and the instructor responds. The student selects an item from the list below and calls the instructor to place an order. The student orders and the instructor responds.

Example:

Instructor: Irasshaimase. Nan ni itashimashoo ka?

Student: Chotto matte kudasai.

Instructor: Hai.

...

Student: Sumimasen. Onegai shimasu.

...

Instructor: Okimari ni narimashita ka?

Student: Sushi to (o)sake futatsu onegai shimasu.

Instructor: Wakarimashita. Shooshoo omachi kudasai.

注 教師は「いらっしゃいませ」「何にいたしましょうか」「何になさいますか」「かしこまりました」「少々お待ち下さい」「こ任文は?」「はい、わかりました」「お決まりになりましたか」「お決まりですか」などを返事にませること。

Student's list

1. two portions of sushi and two bottles of sake
2. two servings of tempura and a bottle of beer
3. (o)sashimi and (o)sake
4. sukiyaki for three people and three bottles of beer
5. three mixed sandwiches and three coffees
6. two steaks, one medium and one rare, and two green salads
7. two bottles of beer and three servings of tempura
8. one mixed sandwich, one ham sandwich, and two coffees

READINGKANJI

1. 三人前 san-ninmae three servings
2. 営業中 eegyoochuu open for business
3. 開店 kaiten the opening of a shop
4. 開場 kaijoo doors open

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. How to indicate that you are ready to place an order

You can place an order with any waitress you see, not necessarily the one that waited on you first. When you want to call a waitress to place an order, you can say

Sumimasen. Onegai shimasu. *I would like to place an order*

Sumimasen acts as an attention getter. The expression *onegai shimasu*, which you've already encountered a number of times, literally means something like '*I'm going to make a request*' or '*I'm making a request*'. When used in the above situation, it indicates that you're asking for service

If you are not yet ready to order, you can say the following to the waitress or waiter:

Chotto matte kudasai. *Please wait a moment*

The waitress/waiter may wait at your table or may leave your table and return when you call her/him.

2. Useful expressions to know in placing an order

When the waitress or waiter comes to your table to take your order, s/he will probably say:

Nan ni nasaimasu ka? *What would you like to order?*
Nan ni itashimashooka?

Okimari ni narimashita ka? *Have you decided yet?*
Gochuumon wa? *Are you ready to order?*
What is your order?
Are you going to place an order?

The simplest way of placing your order is to point to the item on the menu and say

Kore onegai shimasu. *This, please* (cf. Lesson 15)
Kore kudasai. *Please give me this* (cf. Lesson 18)

When you order a certain number of servings of food or drinks, you can use the following pattern, which is similar to the one you studied in Lesson 18.

(food/drink) number + counter + **onegai shimasu**.
(cf. [merchandise] number + counter + **kudasai** in Lesson 18)

Tenpura san-ninmae onegai shimasu.
Hankachi ni-mai onegai shimasu.

As we discussed earlier, the Japanese use different counters for different types of objects. For example, when they refer to (train) tickets, they use the counter ...mai, as in the following examples:

Yokohama, ichi-mai.	<i>One ticket to Yokohama.</i>
Kyoto, ni-mai.	<i>Two tickets to Kyoto.</i>

When the Japanese refer to people, they use the counter ...ri for the numbers one and two and ...nin for the numbers larger than two, as in the following examples:

hitori	<i>one person</i>
futari	<i>two persons</i>
san-nin	<i>three persons</i>
yo-nin	<i>four persons</i>
go-nin	<i>five persons</i>
roku-nin	<i>six persons</i>
juu-nin	<i>ten persons</i>

The following are some counters that are frequently used in restaurants:

...hon: used for cylindrical objects like bottles

biiru ip-pon	<i>one bottle of beer</i>
(o)sake ni-hon	<i>two bottles of sake</i>
san-bon	<i>three bottles</i>
rop-pon	<i>six bottles</i>

...ninmae: used in counting servings of a dish

tenpura ichi-ninmae	<i>one portion of tenpura</i>
sashimi ni-ninmae	<i>two servings of sashimi</i>
san-ninmae	<i>three servings</i>
yo-ninmae	<i>four servings</i>

You also learned that the counter ...tsu can be used with the native Japanese numerals (numbers one to ten) when referring to the number of corners, intersections, etc. This counter is also used in a shopping situation like the following:

Kore o mittsu kudasai.	<i>Please give me three of these.</i>
	<i>(cf. Lesson 18)</i>

Lesson 22 Placing an order

In Lesson 18, we mentioned that when you are not sure of the appropriate counter, you can use . . .tsu. The amount expressed in this way is usually comprehensible to the Japanese, although it may sound a little odd. This is also true when placing an order at a restaurant. Although there are specific counters used for bottles, servings, etc., as we discussed above, if you can use the counter . . .tsu correctly, you should be able to place an order at a restaurant. Here are some examples:

Biiru hitotsu onegai shimasu.	<i>One (bottle of) beer, please.</i>
Sashimi futatsu onegai shimasu.	<i>Two (servings of) sashimi, please.</i>

When you want to place an additional order, you can use the following pattern:

(Food/drink) moo + number + . . .tsu onegai shimasu.

Thus, when you want to order two more bottles of sake, you can say:

(O)sake moo ni-hon (OR moo futatsu) onegai shimasu.
Two more bottles of sake, please.

 会話

Situation 1

 ウイルノン すみません。お願いします。
 ウエイトレス お決まりですか。
 ウイルノン ええ、てんぶら二つと ヒール 一つお願いします。
 ウエイトレス はい。

 ウイルノン すみません。ヒールもう一本 お願いします。
 ウエイトレス はい、かしこまりました。

Situation 2

 ウエイトレス いらっしゃいませ。こ任せは?
 ヤノク ちょっと待ってください。
 ウエイトレス はい。

 ヤノク すみません。お願いします。
 ウエイトレス はい。何にいたしましょうか。
 ヤノク さしみ 三つと、すきやき 三人前、お願いします。
 ウエイトレス はい。お飲み物は?
 ヤノク お酒 二本と、コーラ 一本 お願いします。
 ウエイトレス すみません。コーラはこさいませんか
 ヤノク あ、そうですか。
 ウエイトレス お茶はいかかですか。
 ヤノク しゃ、お茶お願いします。

Situation 3

 サンタース ステーキ二つお願いします、サラタはありますか。
 ウエイトレス ミノクスサラタとクリーンサラタがございます。
 サンタース しゃ、クリーンサラタ二つ。
 ウエイトレス ステーキはミティアムですか。レアですか。
 サンタース ミティアムとレアです。
 ウエイトレス お飲み物はいかかですか。
 サンタース ワインはありますか。
 ウエイトレス 赤と白かございます。
 サンタース しゃ、赤一本お願いします。

Lesson 22 Placing an order

Lesson 23

PLACING AN ORDER AND PAYING

おかんじょう、お願ひします。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- find out if a dish has a taste you like or don't like
- ask the waiter for a recommendation
- ask for the check
- find out where to pay
- deal with cashier etiquette



DIALOGS**KAIWA****Situation 1**

Ms Shaw is in a restaurant looking at the menu As she wants to have a beef dish, she asks a waitress where beef dishes are on the menu

<i>Shoo:</i>	Biifu wa doko desu ka?	<i>Where are the beef dishes?</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Kochira de gozaimasu.	<i>They are here</i>
<i>Shoo:</i>	Kore wa karai desu ka?	<i>Is this one spicy?</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Iie, karaku arimasen yo.	<i>No, it isn't</i>
<i>Shoo:</i>	Jaa, kore onegai shimasu.	<i>I'll have it, then</i>
• • •		
<i>Shoo:</i>	Sumimasen. Okanjoo onegai shimasu.	<i>Excuse me Check, please</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Hai. Maido arigatoo gozaimasu.	<i>Here you are Thank you very much</i>

Situation 2

Mrs Henderson is in a Japanese-style restaurant She decides to try a fish dish and asks a waitress where fish dishes are on the menu

<i>Hendaason:</i>	Sakana wa doko desu ka?	<i>Where are the fish dishes?</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Kochira desu.	<i>They are here</i>
<i>Hendaason:</i>	Kore wa shiokaraku arimasen ka?	<i>Isn't this one salty?</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Ee, sukoshi shiokarai desu ne.	<i>Yes, it's a little salty</i>
<i>Hendaason:</i>	Kore wa?	<i>How about this one?</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Sore wa shiokaraku gozaimasen.	<i>That one is not salty</i>
<i>Hendaason:</i>	Jaa, kore onegai shimasu.	<i>I'll have this one, then</i>
• • •		
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Osumi desu ka?	<i>Are you finished?</i>
<i>Hendaason:</i>	Ee. Okanjoo wa doko desu ka?	<i>Yes Where do I pay?</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Achira de gozaimasu.	<i>Over there, please</i>
<i>Hendaason:</i>	Doomo.	<i>Thank you</i>

Situation 3

Mr. Johnson wants to have tempura, so he asks a waitress where tempura is on the menu.

<i>Jonson:</i>	Tenpura wa doko desu ka?	<i>Where are the tempura dishes?</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Kochira de gozaimasu.	<i>They are here.</i>
<i>Jonson:</i>	Dore ga oishii desu ka?	<i>Which one is good?</i>
<i>Ueetoresu:</i>	Soo desu ne. Kore wa taihen oishii desu yo.	<i>Well, this one is very good.</i>
<i>Jonson:</i>	Jaa, sore kudasai.	<i>I'll have it, then.</i>
	• • •	• • •
<i>Jonson:</i>	Ikura desu ka?	<i>How much is it?</i>
<i>Reji no hito:</i>	850-en ni narimasu.	<i>It comes to 850- yen.</i>
<i>Jonson:</i>	Hai.	<i>Here you are.</i>
<i>Reji no hito:</i>	150-en no okaeshi desu. Maido arigatoo gozaimasu. Mata doozo.	<i>Here's 150-yen in change. Thank you very much. Please come again.</i>
<i>Jonson:</i>	Gochisoosama.	<i>It was very good.</i>

VOCABULARY**KOTOBA****Dialogs**

biifu	beef	ビーフ
karai	hot and spicy	からい
karaku arimasen	not hot (spicy)	からくありません
okanjoo	bill, check	おかんじょう
kochira	here (polite)	こちら
shiokarai	salty	しおからい
osumi desu ka?	are you finished? (polite)	おすみですか
dore	which one	どれ
oishii	good (tasting), delicious	おいしい
soo desu nee...	let me think for a minute	そうですねえ
taihen	very	たいへん
gochisoosama	thank you for the good food (polite)	ごちそうさま

Practice

atsui	hot	あつい
tsumetai	cold	つめたい
pooku	pork	ポーク
yasai	vegetables	やさい
gohan	cooked rice	ごはん
soosu	sauce	ソース
tori	chicken	とり
niku	meat	にく
maguro	tuna	まぐろ
toro	fatty part of tuna	トロ

Notes

suppai	sour	すっぱい
amai	sweet	あまい
nigai	bitter	にがい
ageta	fried	あげた
nita	cooked in broth (Japanese-style)	にた
yaita	grilled	やいた
nama no	raw	なまの
reji	cash register	レジ
chippu	tip	チップ
demae	delivery of prepared food	でまえ

Personalized list

PRACTICE

RENSHUU

A. Substitution Drill

Kore wa karai desu ka?

amai
shiokarai
suppai
nigai
karai
atsui
tsumetai

B. Transformation Drill

Example:

(cue) spicy
(Question) Karai desu ka?
(Response) lie, karaku arimasen.

sweet
salty
sour
bitter
spicy
cold
hot

C. Response Drill

Directions:

Student A asks Student B, referring to the list for Student A below. Student B answers, referring to the list for Student B below.

Example:

Student A: Kore wa karaku arimasen ka?
Student B: Ee, karaku arimasen.

List for student A

1. sweet
2. salty
3. sour
4. spicy
5. bitter

List for student B

- | |
|-----|
| Yes |
| No |
| No |
| Yes |
| No |

D. Production and Comprehension Exercise

Directions:

The student selects an item from the list below and asks the instructor whether it is salty, hot, spicy, sour, or bitter. The instructor answers. The student then checks the correct statement on the answer sheet.

Example:

Student: Kono biifu wa karai desu ka?
Instructor: Iie, karaku arimasen.
Student: (checks the correct statement)

List for student

biifu	spicy?
ebi	sweet?
yasai	sour?
pooku	salty?
soosu	sour?

Answer sheet

- | | | |
|--|----------|--|
| 1. The beef is spicy.
The beef isn't spicy. | () | そうですねえ、あまりからく
ないと思いますけど。 |
| 2. The shrimp are sweet.
The shrimp aren't sweet. | () | そうですねえ、少し甘いですけ
ど..... |
| 3. The vegetable is sour.
The vegetable isn't sour. | () | いいえ、そんなに酸っぱいと
いうほどじゃありませんよ。 |
| 4. The pork is salty.
The pork isn't salty. | () | そうですねえ、最近はあまり
塩辛くしないようにしてますか
ら..... |
| 5. The sauce is sour.
The sauce isn't sour. | () | そうですねえ、ちょっと甘酸っ
ぱいですけど、そんなに酸っぱ
くはありません。 |

教師用スクリプト

E. Production and Comprehension Exercise

Directions:

The instructor (waiter/waitress) refers to the menu on the next page and asks if the student is ready to place an order. The student asks the instructor to wait, selects food from the list below, and asks where the food is on the menu. The instructor points to the dishes. The student then selects a dish and asks about its taste, referring to the list below. The instructor answers. The student orders it if the taste is to his or her liking. If it is not, s/he chooses a different dish until s/he finds one whose taste s/he doesn't mind.

Example:

- Instructor:* Nan ni itashimashoo ka? (handing student the menu)
Student: Chotto matte kudasai. (looking at the menu below)
Instructor: Hai.
Student: Biifu wa doko desu ka?
Instructor: Kochira de gozaimasu.
Student: Kore wa karaku arimasen ka?
Instructor: Hai, karaku gozaimasen.
Student: Jaa, kore onegai shimasu.

Student's list

Type of food	Taste you don't like
1. tori	hot
2. sakana	spicy
3. yasai	sweet
4. pooku	sour
5. biifu	salty

特別御定食

メニュー(御夕食)

日本料理定食 (松) 8,200円
 (竹) 6,000円

刺身定食 4,600円
 (刺身盛り合わせ・お椀・御飯香物・デザート)

天婦羅定食 4,600円
 (天婦羅・お椀・御飯香物・デザート)

牛ロースてり焼定食 6,800円
 (牛ロースてり焼・お椀・御飯香物・トマトサラダ・デザート)

しゃぶしゃぶ定食 (松) 9,500円
 (しゃぶしゃぶ・野菜添え・そば香物・アイスクリーム)
 (竹) 6,400円
 (刺身盛り合わせ・しゃぶしゃぶ・野菜添え・そば香物・デザート)

オイル焼き定食 (ロース) 8,500円
 (オイル焼き・野菜添え・トマトサラダ・御飯香物・デザート)
 (ヒレ) 9,600円

F. Production Exercise

What do you say when you want to

1. get the attention of a waitress?
2. ask the waitress if the restaurant has an English menu?
3. ask the waitress to come with you to the plastic display?
4. ask the waitress to bring you a knife and a fork?
5. ask someone to buy a meal ticket for you?
6. ask where the cashier is?
7. ask if they serve teriyaki?
8. order the same thing that someone else is eating?
9. ask the waitress to wait a moment, because you haven't decided what to order yet?
10. ask the waitress to bring you some tea?
11. order one dish of tempura?
12. make sure the dish you have selected is not salty?
13. order one more bottle of beer?
14. ask for a check?
15. thank the waitress/cashier on leaving the restaurant?

G. Role Play

With the help of your instructor, list the words you think you will need in order to place an order. For example:

ageta	fried
nita	cooked in broth
yaita	grilled

Kore wa (ageta) sakana/niku/pooku, etc., desu ka?

Is this (fried) fish/meat/pork, etc.?

other words

tastes I don't like

Using the above words and expressions and the preceding menu, find a dish you want to order. You may want to use the expression **Dore ga oishii desu ka?** 'What is good?' (lit., 'Which is delicious?').

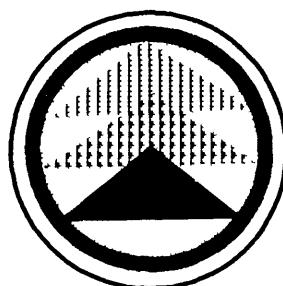
H. Menu Reading

Look at the menu from a Tokyo sushi shop on the following pages. Find out the following (with the help of your instructor where necessary):

1. What is the telephone number?
2. Where in Tokyo is the sushi-shop located?
3. What beverages do they serve?
4. Which is the word for *sushi*?
5. How many special dishes do they serve for lunch?
What are the prices?
6. The Japanese word for 'tuna' is **maguro** and the fatty part of the tuna is called **toro** (トロ). Locate it. Which is more expensive, **maguro** or **toro**?

List below the seafoods you want to try in sushi. With the help of your instructor, find out the Japanese words for them, and locate them on the menu.

御 献 立 表



神

田

江戸前

千代田寿司

[出前迅速]

本店 **268 - 4621**

東京都千代田区小川町6丁目17-5

■ にぎり		■ 一品料理	
並にぎり	一〇〇〇円	玉子焼き	五〇〇円
上にぎり	一三〇〇円	数の子	一二〇〇円
赤身にぎり	一〇〇〇円	魚荒煮	八〇〇円
中トロにぎり	一七〇〇円	下足生姜焼	八〇〇円
並ちらし	九〇〇円	お新香	五〇〇円
上ちらし	一三〇〇円	吸物	二〇〇円
特上ちらし	一七〇〇円	■ 御刺身	
のり巻		イカ刺し	
赤身鉄火巻	六〇〇円	トロ刺身	一八〇〇円
トロ鉄火巻	一〇〇〇円	赤身まぐろ刺身	一三〇〇円
赤身鉄火巻			
トロ鉄火巻			
その他好みにより御注文下さい。			

ランチタイム・スペシャル

十一時から二時まで

寿	し	大盛	八〇〇円
ちらし	並	六〇〇円	
●味噌汁 お吸物付			

・飲み物

ビール	五〇〇円
お酒	四五〇円
ジユース	二五〇円
コーラ	二五〇円
・サントリー オールド	三五〇〇円

■ 大小宴会その他お好みに応じます

千代田寿司

READING REVIEW**KANJI**

1. 駐車場

7. 四丁目

2. 休憩所(室)

8. 地下鉄

3. お手洗い

9. 左側通行

4. 横浜方面

10. 右折禁止

5. 上野

11. 発売中

6. 化粧室

12. 発売中止

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. *Finding out about the taste of a dish*

When you want to try a new dish whose name you don't know, you may want to ask about its taste. In this lesson, you will learn the following 'taste' words

shiokarai	salty
karai	hot, spicy
suppai	sour
amai	sweet
nigai	bitter

With the help of your instructor, add any additional words that you think you will need.

Suppose you want to try a beef dish. If you ask a waitress/waiter where the beef dishes are on the menu by saying *Bifū wa doko desu ka?*, s/he will probably point to them. Before you make a selection, you may want to know the way the dish is cooked. The following are some of the words you can use in such a situation. (Again, ask the instructor for more words if you think it necessary.)

ageta	fried
nita	cooked in broth
yaita	grilled
yudeta	boiled
nama no	raw

The above words can be used in the following way:

Kore wa yaita sakana desu ka? *Is this grilled fish?*

When you want to make sure of the taste of the dish you have chosen, you can use the above 'taste words' in the following way.

Kore wa (taste word) desu ka? *Is this one (taste word)?*

For example, if you want to ask whether the dish is salty or not, you can say:

Kore wa shiokarai desu ka? *Is this one salty?*

If the dish isn't salty, the waiter/waitress will often use the word *shiokaraku*, as in *Shiokaraku arimasen* OR *Shiokaraku gozaimasen*. The change from *shiokarai* to *shiokaraku* is exactly the same as that from *tooi* 'far' to *tooku (arimasen)* 'not far' (Lesson 10).

The following is a summary of the negative forms of the taste words:

<u>affirmative form</u>	<u>negative form</u>
shiokarai (desu)	shiokaraku arimasen
karai (desu)	karaku arimasen
amai (desu)	amaku arimasen
suppai (desu)	suppaku arimasen
nigai (desu)	nigaku arimasen

2. Hai as 'No' and lie as 'Yes'

In English, when you want to find out if a dish has a taste you don't like, you will often say something like 'Is this salty?' In Japanese, however, you usually ask a negative question as in the following example:

Kore wa karaku arimasen ka? *Isn't this salty?*

This is softer and politer to the Japanese ear than the more direct English question, though you will be understood if you ask 'Is it salty?'.

The English and Japanese answers to the above question are also quite different. In English, when the dish isn't salty you say 'No' while when it is you say 'Yes'. But in Japanese, when it isn't salty you say Hai and when it is you say lie. In Japanese, you respond to the whole content of the question rather than to a part of the content as in English. To the Japanese, the question means. 'Is it the case that the dish isn't salty?' If it is so (that the dish isn't salty), you reply Hai 'yes', and if it's not the case (the dish is salty), you reply lie 'no'. Thus, if you ask a waitress the above question and the waitress answers Hai, it means that she thinks it's the case that the dish isn't salty. Likewise, if she says lie, she means that it isn't the case that the dish isn't salty (i.e., it's salty).

Of course, you can avoid problems that may be caused by this type of question if you use a simple question like **Kore wa shiokarai desu ka?** However, without the knowledge of this difference, you may not always be able to react correctly to what is said to you by Japanese.

Another important thing to keep in mind is that Japanese whose English is imperfect may answer negative questions in English in the same way as they would in Japanese. For example, if you ask such a person 'Don't you want to come?' s/he may answer something like 'No, I want to come' or simply 'No' meaning 'Yes, I do.'

3. Which dish do you recommend?

In some cases, you may want to ask a waiter/waitress what dish s/he recommends. For example, after finding the type of dish you want, you may still not be sure which one to order.

In such a case, you can ask:

Dore ga oishii desu ka? *Which one is good?
Which one would you recommend?*

Lesson 23 Placing an order and paying

Of course, if the waiter/waitress points to a dish, then that is the one s/he recommends. (You don't really need to understand accurately what s/he is saying.) If s/he doesn't point to anything and says something you don't understand, you can ask:

Dore desu ka?

Which one is it?

If you want what s/he points to, you can say:

**Sore kudasai.
Sore onegai shimasu.**

Please give me that.

4. Paying the check and leaving the restaurant

If a waiter/waitress doesn't leave your check on the table, you can ask for it by saying:

Okanjoo onegai shimasu.

Check, please.

The word (o)kanjoo literally means 'calculation.' Thus, the above sentence literally means 'Please calculate (how much I owe you OR how much I should pay).'

Depending on the restaurant, you can pay the check either to a waiter/waitress or to the cashier. If you are not sure, ask a waiter/waitress by saying:

Okanjoo wa doko desu ka?

Where do I pay?

If you can pay the waiter/waitress directly, s/he will say something like the following:

Koko/kochira de onegai shimasu.

Here, please.

S/he then will take the money to the cashier and bring back your change, if any. If you are supposed to pay the cashier, s/he will say something like:

**Achira desu.
Achira de onegai shimasu.**

*Over there.
(Pay) over there, please.*

She may use the word reji 'cashier' (from 'register') instead of achira as in the following:

Reji de onegai shimasu.

(Pay at) the cashier, please.

When you leave, the cashier or the waiter/waitress will probably say:

**Maido/doomo arigatoo gozaimashita.
Mata doozo.**

*Thank you very much.
Please come again.*

Although it isn't necessary for you to say anything (just as in a shopping situation), Japanese people often say that they enjoyed the meal. If you want to do the same, you can use the following expression:

Gochisoosama (deshita).

I've enjoyed the meal.

 会話

Situation 1

ノヨー ヒーフはどこですか。
 ウエイトレス こちらでこさいます。
 ノヨー これは辛いですか。
 ウエイトレス いいえ、辛くありませんよ。
 ノヨー しゃ、これ、お願いします。

ンヨー すみません。お勘定、お願いします。
 ウエイトレス はい、毎度ありがとうございます。

Situation 2

ヘノターノノ 魚はどこですか。
 ウエイトレス こちらです。
 ヘノターノノ これは塩辛くありませんか。
 ウエイトレス ええ、少し塩辛いですね。
 ヘノターノノ これは?
 ウエイトレス それは塩辛くございません。
 ヘノターノノ しゃ、これ、お願いします。

ウエイトレス おすすめですか。
 ヘンターノノ ええ。お勘定はどこですか。
 ウエイトレス あちらでございます。
 ヘノターソノ どうも。

Situation 3

ノヨノノン てんぷらはどこですか。
 ウエイトレス こちらでこさいます。
 ノヨノノノ とれかおいしいですか。
 ウエイトレス そうですね。これは大変おいしいですよ。
 ノヨノノノ しゃ、それ、ください。

ノヨノノン いくらですか。
 レノの人 850円になります。
 ノヨノノノ はい。
 レノの人 150円のお返してます。毎度有り難うございます。又どうぞ。
 ノヨノノノ こちそうさま。

Lesson 23 Placing an order and paying

Lesson 24

OPENING A TELEPHONE CONVERSATION

もしもし、田中さんのお宅ですか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- open a telephone conversation
- find out if you are calling the place you have in mind
- find out if the person you have in mind is in
- say 'speaking' in Japanese
- apologize when you have a wrong number
- respond to the apology for a wrong number
- ask the caller to hold on
- ask the caller who s/he is

DIALOGS

KAIWA

Situation 1

Mrs. White receives a call at home.

<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Moshi moshi.	<i>Hello.</i>
<i>Howaito:</i>	Moshi moshi.	<i>Hello.</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Howaito-san no otaku desu ka?	<i>Is this Mr. White's residence?</i>
<i>Howaito:</i>	Hai, soo desu.	<i>Yes, it is.</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Goshujin irasshaimasu ka?	<i>Is Mr. White at home?</i>
<i>Howaito:</i>	Shitsurei desu ga, donata desu ka?	<i>May I ask who is calling?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	NHK no Yamamoto desu ga . . .	<i>This is Mr. Yamamoto from NHK.</i>
<i>Howaito:</i>	Shooshoo omachi kudasai.	<i>Please hold on a moment.</i>

Situation 2

Mr. Turner calls Mr. Koyama's house.

<i>Taanaa:</i>	Moshi moshi. Koyama-san no otaku desu ka?	<i>Hello. Is this the Koyama residence?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	lie, chigaimasu.	<i>No, it isn't.</i>
<i>Taanaa:</i>	Doomo sumimasen.	<i>Oh, I'm sorry.</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	lie, doo itashimashite.	<i>That's O.K.</i>

Situation 3

Mrs. Greenberg receives a call from a Japanese woman.

<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Moshi moshi. Guriinbaagu-san no otaku desu ka?	<i>Hello. Is this the Greenberg residence?</i>
<i>Guriinbaagu:</i>	Hai, soo desu.	<i>Yes, it is.</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Erizabesu-san irasshaimasu ka?	<i>Is Elizabeth in?</i>
<i>Guriinbaagu:</i>	Watakushi desu ga . . .	<i>Speaking.</i>

VOCABULARY**KOTOBA****Dialogs**

moshi moshi	hello (on the phone)	もしもし
otaku	house (another's), residence	おたく
irasshaimasu	is/are (polite)	いらっしゃいます
shitsuree	rudeness	しつれい
donata	who? (polite)	どなた
NHK	Japan Broadcasting Cooperation	
doomo sumimasen	I'm sorry, pardon me	どうもすみません

Notes

sayoo de gozaimasu	that is correct (very polite)	さようでございます
---------------------------	-------------------------------	-----------

Personalized list

PRACTICE

RENSHUU

A. Production and Comprehension Exercise

Directions:

The student makes a telephone call and asks for the person named on the list below. The Japanese says *Hai, soo desu* or *lie, chigaimasu*. The student apologizes if s/he got a wrong number.

Example:

Student: Moshi moshi. Yamada- san no otaku desu ka?
Instructor: lie, chigaimasu.
Student: Dooomo sumimasen.
Instructor: lie.

Student's list

Mr. Hara
Mr. Ono
Miss Takeda
Mrs. Ogata
Mrs. Yamada

B. Production Exercise

Directions:

The student makes a phone call to a close Japanese friend (=instructor) and asks for him/her using the friend's first name. The friend replies. Student and friend then reverse their roles.

Example:

Student : Moshi moshi, (Friend's family name)- san no otaku desu ka?
Friend: Hai, soo desu.
Student : (Friend's first name)-san irasshaimasu ka?
Friend: Watakushi desu ga...

C. Production Exercise

Directions:

The student makes a telephone call to the instructor. The instructor answers. The student identifies himself/herself by stating his/her work place and name and asks for the instructor's wife/husband. The instructor asks the student to wait a moment. Then the roles are reversed and the practice continues in similar fashion.

Example:

Student: Moshi moshi, (Instructor's name)- san no otaku desu ka?
Instructor: Hai, soo desu.
Student: (Student's work place) no (student's family name) desu ga, goshujin/okusan irasshaimasu ka?
Instructor: Shooshoo omachi kudasai.

D. Production and Comprehension Exercise

Directions:

The student calls the instructor and asks for a person whose name is selected from the list below. The instructor answers. The student checks the English statement on the answer sheet below that describes what has happened.

Example:

Student: Moshi moshi, Yamashita-san no otaku desu ka?
Instructor: Hai, soo desu.
Student: Goshujin (or Okusan) irasshaimasu ka?
Instructor: Shitsuree desu ga, donata desu ka?
Student: (checks the correct statement)

Student's List

1. Yamanaka's residence. Ask for Yasuko.
2. Takenaka's residence. Ask for Mr. Takenaka.
3. Ueda's residence. Ask for Mrs.Ueda.
4. Okada's residence. Ask for Kazuo.
5. Suzuki's residence. Ask for Mr. Suzuki.

Answer Sheet

1. () Instructor wants to know who you are.
() Instructor didn't understand what you said.
2. () Instructor wants to know who you are.
() Instructor asked you to wait.

Lesson 24 Opening a telephone conversation

3. () Instructor didn't understand what you said.
() Instructor is Ms. Ueda
4. () You can't talk to Kazuo
() Instructor wants you to repeat
5. () Mr Suzuki is not available at the moment.
() The person on the line asked you to wait

教師用スクリプト

- 1 失礼ですか、とあなた様ですか。
- 2 少々お待ち下さいませ。
- 3 私でございますか
- 4 は？ もう一度おしゃって下さいませんか。
- 5 はい、ちょっと待って下さい。



READING REVIEW

KANJI

- | | |
|-------|---------|
| 1. 出口 | 7. 改札口 |
| 2. 入口 | 8. 空車 |
| 3. 東口 | 9. 回送 |
| 4. 北口 | 10. 三番線 |
| 5. 南口 | 11. 急行 |
| 6. 西口 | 12. 案内所 |

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. How to get the person you want to talk to

In this lesson, you will learn expressions to use when you place or answer a telephone call at home.

Moshi moshi is used exactly like 'hello' in an English telephone conversation--you can use it when you begin a conversation or you can use it when you have a bad connection. Thus, in most cases the person who answers will first say moshi moshi. However, in some homes, the person may say the name first without moshi moshi. In that case, the person will say:

(name) de gozaimasu.

This is (name)'s residence.

After getting an answer, you usually make sure that you are calling the right place (except when the person says his/her name first). You can do this by asking:

(name)-san no otaku desu ka?

Is this (name)'s residence?

If it's the right place, the person who answers will probably say the following:

Hai, soo desu.

or

Hai, sayoo de gozaimasu.

Yes, it is.

Sayoo de gozaimasu is a more polite equivalent of Soo desu. Ordinarily, people tend to use especially polite and humble expressions in telephone conversation. One reason for this is that in a conversation that is not face-to-face, there is no way to show politeness except through very polite language. Bowing, for example, will not do any good.

If you reach a wrong number, the person who answers will probably say:

(lie), chigaimasu (yo).

No, it isn't.

Then apologize for the wrong number. You can use the following familiar expression:

Doomo sumimasen.

I'm sorry.

Then the person will probably reply by saying the following:

lie (doo itashimashite).

No, (not at all).

After confirming that the place you are calling is the right one, you ask for the person you want to talk to. For this purpose, you can use the following expression:

(name)-san irasshaimasu ka?

Is (name) in/at home?

If you want to talk to Mr. Tanaka, for example, you can say either:

Tanaka-san irasshaimasu ka?

OR

Goshujin irasshaimasu ka?

As you learned in Lesson 5, goshujin refers to someone else's husband. However, the word literally means 'master/head (of the house)'.

Thus, even if the person who answers is not the wife, you can still use the word goshujin in the above situation. The same thing applies when you are calling Mrs. Tanaka. You can use the word okusan no matter who answers the telephone.

If the person who answers the telephone is the one you want, s/he will probably say:

Wata(ku)shi desu (ga).

Speaking. (literally, 'It's me, but... [what do you want?])'

When the person who answers leaves the phone to get the person you want, s/he will probably say the following:

Chotto matte kudasai.

OR

Shooshoo omachi kudasai.

Please wait a moment.

Shooshoo is politer than chotto (both mean 'a little bit'), and omachi kudasai is politer than matte kudasai.

When you ask for the person you want, it is appropriate to identify yourself both by name and company affiliation. (This way you also avoid being asked who you are.) You can use the following expression for this purpose:

(work place) no (name) desu.

I'm (name) of (work place).

Thus, if you want to talk to Mr. Tanaka, you will say something like the following:

Amerika Taishikan no (your name) desu ga, goshujin irasshaimasu ka?

I'm (your name) from the American Embassy May I talk to Mr. Tanaka/your husband, etc.?

2. How to answer a call

What has been discussed above also applies when you answer a call.

When you want to know who the caller is, you can use the following expression, which is comparable to 'May I ask who is calling?' in English:

Shitsuree desu ga, donata desu ka? Excuse me, but who is calling?

If the caller is a friend of yours or your husband/wife's, s/he may skip a step or use less formal expressions.

Lesson 24 Opening a telephone conversation

For example, the person may not ask ... san no otaku desu ka? but instead ask immediately for the person s/he wants. S/he may also say ... -san onegai shimasu 'Mr./Mrs..., please' rather than ...-san irasshaimasu ka?

At any rate, although the general procedure is relatively routine, you can't accurately predict what the caller will say. Therefore, whenever you have difficulty, you can use the following familiar expressions:

Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasen.	<i>I don't understand Japanese well.</i>
Moo sukoshi yukkuri itte kudasaimasen ka?	<i>Please say it more slowly.</i>
Moo ichi-do yukkuri itte kudasaimasen ka?	<i>Please repeat slowly.</i>
...san desu ne?	<i>It's...isn't it?</i>

3. How to use public telephones

Different types of telephones are distinguished by their color. Public pay telephones in street booths are blue; semi-public pay phones in front of stores, in shops, and in certain public places are pink and red.

All coin-operated public phones can be used for local and short-distance calls taking up to six 10-yen coins. All pay phones, except yellow and green ones, are operated with 10-yen coins.

The yellow and green phones, used for long-distance calls, take both 10-yen and 100-yen coins. Only green telephones accept special 'telephone cards' which may be purchased in amounts of 500-yen or more at many small shops. The current value of the card is displayed on the telephone and the cost of the call is automatically deducted.

Phone numbers are composed of three groups of numbers. When making calls within Tokyo, dial just the last two groups, or seven digits in all.

The first group of digits is for connection with the long-distance exchange when making domestic inter-city calls. In this case, dial all the numbers in sequence.

How to use a pay phone:

1. pick up the receiver
2. insert a 10-yen coin
3. dial the number

A call is limited to three minutes, but on some phones it can be continued if you insert another 10-yen coin before the three minutes are up. If you put in more coins than necessary, they will be returned after the call is finished.

On some phones, the call will be automatically disconnected after three minutes.

会話

Situation 1

日本人: もしもし。
ホワイト: もしもし。
日本人: ホワイトさんのお宅ですか。
ホワイト: はい、そうです。
日本人: ご主人いらっしゃいますか。
ホワイト: 失礼ですが、どなたですか。
日本人: NHKの山本ですが.....
ホワイト: 少々お待ち下さい。

Situation 2

ターナー: もしもし、小山さんのお宅ですか。
日本人: いいえ、違います。
ターナー: どうもすみません。
日本人: いいえ、どういたしまして。

Situation 3

日本人: もしもし、グリーンバーグさんのお宅ですか。
グリーンバーグ: はい、そうです。
日本人: エリザベスさんいらっしゃいますか。
グリーンバーグ: 私ですが.....

Lesson 24 Opening a telephone conversation

Lesson 25

MAKING AND RECEIVING A BUSINESS CALL

**スミスですが、田中さん、
お願いします。**

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- **answer the phone in your office by identifying the name of the office**
- **call an office and give the extension number or the name of the department or section you want**
- **deal with polite expressions used in business phone calls**

DIALOGS**KAIWA****Situation 1**

Ms. Lawrence is a secretary in the visa section of the American Embassy. She answers a phone call.

Roorensu:	Sashoo-ka de gozaimasu.	<i>Visa Section.</i>
Watanabe:	Horuto-san onegai shimasu.	<i>May I speak to Mr. Holt?</i>
Roorensu:	Shitsuree desu ga, donata desu ka?	<i>May I ask who is calling?</i>
Watanabe:	Nihon Ryokoo no Watanabe desu ga...	<i>This is Mr. Watanabe of Japan Travel.</i>
Roorensu:	Shooshoo omachi kudasai.	<i>Please wait a moment.</i>

Situation 2

Ms. Carroll calls her friend Ms. Suzuki at Nihon camera.

Kookanshu:	Nihon Kamera de gozaimasu.	<i>This is Nihon Camera.</i>
Kyaroru:	Naisen 521, onegai shimasu.	<i>Extension 521, please.</i>
Kookanshu:	Shooshoo omachi kudasai.	<i>Hold on a moment, please.</i>
	• • •	• • •
Nihonjin:	Jinji-ka desu.	<i>Personnel.</i>
Kyaroru:	Amerika Taishikan no Kyaroru desu ga, Suzuki-san onegai shimasu.	<i>I'm Carroll of the American Embassy. May I speak to Ms. Suzuki?</i>
Nihonjin:	Shooshoo omachi kudasai.	<i>Please wait a moment.</i>

Situation 3

Mr. Simmons of the American Consulate is calling Mr. Sato, who is in the sales department of Yamada Industries.

Kookanshu:	Ohayoo gozaimasu. Yamada Koogyoo de gozaimasu.	<i>Good morning. This is Yamada Industries.</i>
Shimonzu:	Amerika Ryoojikan no Shimonzu desu ga, eegyoo-ka no Sato-san onegai shimasu.	<i>I'm Simmons of the American Consulate. May I speak to Mr. Sato of the sales department?</i>
Kookanshu:	Otsunagi shimasu. Shooshoo omachi kudasai.	<i>I'll connect you. Please wait a moment.</i>

VOCABULARY

KOTOBA

Dialogs

sashoo-ka	visa section	さしょうか
sashoo	visa	さしょう
ka	section	か
Nihon Ryokoo	Japan Travel	にほんりょこう
ryokoo	travel, trip	りょこう
naisen	extension (telephone)	ないせん
jinji-ka	personnel section/ department	じんじか
jinji	personnel (affairs)	じんじ
eegyoo-ka	sales department	えいぎょうか
eegyoo	sales	えいぎょう
otsunagi shimasu	I'll connect you (deferential)	おつなぎします

Practice

shachoo	president (lit., company head)	しゃちょう
buchoo	department head	ぶちょう
kakarichoo	section chief	かかりちょう
seeji-bu	political section	せいじぶ
seeji	politics	せいじ
keezai-bu	economic section	けいざいぶ
keezai	economics	けいざい
gyoosee-bu	administrative section	ぎょうせいぶ
gyoosee	administration	ぎょうせい

Lesson 25 Making and receiving a business call

ryooji-bu	consular section	りょうじぶ
ryooji	consul	りょうじ
keeri-ka	accounting section	けいりか
soomu-bu	department of general affairs	そうむぶ

Notes

bu	department	ぶ
kachoo	division chief	かちょう
biza	visa	ビザ

Personalized list



PRACTICE

RENSHUU

A. Word Study

The following are some typical business titles in Japanese:

shachoo	president (lit., 'company head')
buchoo	department head
kachoo	division head
kakarichoo	section chief

Notes: Choo in the above titles is written as 長 and means 'head.'

A bu is larger than a ka, which is larger than a kakari.

a. Substitution Drill

(cue) Department head Yamada
 (response) Yamada-buchoo onegai shimasu.

Division head Tanaka
 President Ueda
 Section head Yoshida
 Department head Inoue

b. Matching Drill

Without referring to the above, can you match the following?

shachoo	section head
kachoo	president
kakarichoo	department head
buchoo	division head

B. Production Exercise

Directions:

The student makes a phone call and asks for a person on the list below. Then the instructor asks the student to wait a moment. Alternatively, the student makes a phone call without giving his/her name. The instructor asks who is calling and the student identifies him/herself. Then the instructor asks the student to wait a moment.

Lesson 25 Making and receiving a business call

Example 1:

Student: Amerika Taishikan no (his/her name) desu ga,
Nakamura-san onegai shimasu.
Instructor: Shooshoo omachi kudasai.

Example 2:

Student: Nakamura-san onegai shimasu.
Instructor: Shitsuree desu ga, donata desu ka?
Student: Amerika Taishikan no (his/her name) desu.
Instructor: Shooshoo omachi kudasai.

Student's list

1. Identify your work place (American Consulate) and give your name.
Ask for Yamashita-buchoo.
2. Ask for Okazaki-san. You work for the American Center.
3. Ask for Miyama-kachoo. You work for the American Embassy.
4. Identify your work place (American Center) and give your name.
Ask for Nakajima-buchoo.
5. Ask for Nakajima-buchoo. You work for the American Consulate.
6. Ask for Yamada-kakarichoo. You work for the American Embassy.

C. Word Study and Substitution Drill

The following are some of the section names in the American Embassy:

seeji-bu	political section
keezai-bu	economic section
gyoosee-bu	administrative section
ryooji-bu	consular section
sashoo-ka	visa section

Substitution Drill

(cue) political section
(response) Seeji-bu de gozaimasu.

administrative section
visa section
political section
economic section
consular section

D. Word Study and Production Exercise

教師用スクリプト下記参照

The following are some of the sections in a Japanese company:

eegyoo-bu	<i>sales department</i>
keeri-ka	<i>accounting division</i>
jinji-ka	<i>personnel division</i>
soomu-bu	<i>department of general affairs</i>

Directions:

The instructor answers the phone, giving the name of an institution.
 The student asks for a person, identifying the person's name and the department/section, etc. that the person belongs to, referring to the list below.
 The instructor asks the student to wait.

Example:

Instructor: Pan Amerikan Kookuu de gozaimasu.
Student: Jinji-ka no Matsumoto-kachoo onegai shimasu.
Instructor: Shooshoo omachi kudasai.

Student's list

Ogawa, department head, sales department
 Nakanishi, division head, accounting division
 Nakada, personnel division
 Urata, department head, department of general affairs
 Ooshita, sales department

教師用スクリプト

1. お早うございます。日本保険でございます。
2. 講談社でございます。
3. お待たせ致しました。東京工業です。
4. 富士コンピューターでございます。お待たせ致しました。
5. 交通公社でございます。

E. Production Exercise

教師用スクリプト下記参照

Directions

The instructor (=operator) answers the phone. The student asks for an extension number, referring to the list below. The instructor (=secretary) answers the phone and identifies the section, department, etc. The student asks for the person on the list.

Example

Instructor: Pan Amerikan Kookuu de gozaimasu.
Student: Naisen 143 onegai shimasu.

...

Instructor: Jinji-ka desu.
Student: Yamada-san onegai shimasu.

Student's list

Extension number	Person you ask for
592	Yamamoto-san
671	Oki-kachoo
480	Ogawa-san
395	Koyama-kakarichoo
702	Tanaka-buchoo

教師用スクリプト

- 1 三菱商事でございます。営業部でございます。
- 2 富士テレビでございます。おはようございます。人事課でございます。
- 3 おはようございます。住友銀行でございます。総務部でございます。
- 4 おはようございます。毎日新聞です。人事課です。
- 5 日本航空でございます。営業部です。

F. Production and Comprehension Exercise

教師用スクリプト下記参照

Directions:

The instructor makes a call and asks for a person. The student asks who is calling. The instructor identifies her/himself by giving her/his work place and name. The student asks the instructor to wait. Then the student checks the correct item on the answer sheet below.

Example:

Instructor: Howaito-san onegai shimasu.

Student: Shitsuree desu ga, donata desu ka?

Instructor: Asahi shinbun no Okada desu ga...

Student: Shooshoo omachi kudasai.

(student checks the correct item)

Answer sheet

1. () Nihon Biiru, Yamanaka
() Nihon Biiru, Yamada
2. () Mitsubishi Ginkoo, Sasaki
() Mitsui Ginkoo, Sasaki
3. () Gaimushoo, Saito
() Tsuusanshoo, Shimizu
4. () Toyota, Saito
() Nissan, Takahashi
5. () Asahi Shinbun, Okawa
() Yomiuri Shinbun, Ogawa

教師用スクリプト

- 1 フラウンさんお願いします。日本ヒールの山田です。
- 2 クリーンさんいらっしゃいますか。三井銀行の佐々木と申します。
- 3 ケリーさんお願いします。外務省の斎藤ですか
- 4 テーラーさんお願い致します。日産の高橋と申します。
- 5 ハーパーさんお願いします。読売新聞の小川と申します。

G. Translation Exercise

- a. Student A: Extension 397, please.
Student B: Please wait a moment.
...
Student B: Personnel Division.
Student A: I'm (name) from the American Embassy.
May I speak to Mr. Murakami?
Student B: Please wait a moment.
- b. Student A: Hello. Is this the accounting section?
Student B: Yes, it is.
Student A: May I speak to (B's name)?
Student B: Speaking.
- c. Student A: May I speak to Mr. Kitamura?
Student B: Who is calling, please?
Student A: I'm (name) from the American Embassy.
Student B: Please wait a moment.
- d. Student A: Hello. Is this the sales department?
Student B: Yes, it is.
Student A: May I speak to Mr. Kato, the department head?
Student B: May I ask who is calling?
Student A: I'm (name) from the American Embassy.
Student B: Please wait a moment.
- e. Student A: American Embassy.
Student B: The visa section, please.
Student A: Please wait a moment.
...
Student A: Visa Section.
Student B: May I speak to Mr. White, the section head?
Student A: May I ask who is calling?

Supplementary Materials

A. Substitution Drill

Example 1:

cue: Yoshida-san
response: Yoshida-san no otaku desu ka?

Example 2:

cue: Mitsubishi Ginkoo
response: Mitsubishi Ginkoo desu ka?

Cue word

Suzuki-san
NHK
Kodama-san
Tokyo Eki
Nihon Ginkoo
Yamaguchi-san

B. Scrambled Sentence Exercise

Instructions: Arrange the words in 'your' part in the proper order.

1. *Caller:* Moshi moshi.
You: (Taishikan, moshi moshi, gozaimasu, Amerika, de)
-

2. *Caller:* Buraun-san onegai shimasu.
You: (omachi, shooshoo, kudasai)
-

3. *Caller:* Uiruson-san onegai shimasu.
You: (donata, shitsuree, ga, desu, ka, desu)
-

4. *Caller:* Sumisu-san onegai shimasu.
You: (desu, watakushi, ga)
-

5. *You:* (moo ichi-do, sumimasen, kudasai, itte)
-

Lesson 25 Making and receiving a business call

C. Give the Japanese equivalents.

1. A: _____ A: Hello.
B: _____ B: Hello.
A: _____ A: Is this the American Embassy?
B: _____ B: Yes, it is.
A: _____ A: May I speak to Mr. King?
B: _____ B: Please wait a moment.

2. A: _____ A: Hello.
B: _____ B: Hello. This is the visa section.
A: _____ A: May I speak to Mr. Johnson?
B: _____ B: Hold on a moment, please.

3. A: _____ A: Hello. Is this Japan Travel?
B: _____ B: Yes, it is.
A: _____ A: May I speak to Ms. Suzuki?
B: _____ B: Who is calling, please?
A: _____ A: This is Ms. Smith from the U.S. Consulate.
B: _____ B: Hold on a moment, please.

READING

KANJI

- | | | | |
|----|----|---------|-----------------------|
| 1. | 料亭 | ryootee | (Japanese) restaurant |
| 2. | 料理 | ryoori | cooking, cuisine |

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. How to call a person at his/her office

When you call a person at his/her office, the operator will probably say the name of the company after using a greeting expression (without moshi moshi). For example, if you are calling Mitsubishi Shooji 'Mitsubishi Trading Company' in the morning, the operator will probably say:

Ohayoo gozaimasu. Mitsubishi Shooji de gozaimasu.
Good Morning This is Mitsubishi Trading Company

If you know the extension number, you can say the following to the operator:

Naisen xxx onegai shimasu. *Extension xxx, please*

As you learned in Lesson 10, phone numbers in Japanese are simply read out as in English. Thus, extension number 123 is read **Naisen ichi ni san**. It should be noted that you can't use kudasai for **onegai shimasu** in the above sentence. You learned that kudasai and **onegai shimasu** can be used interchangeably in buying merchandise or placing an order at a restaurant. However, the word kudasai (without a verb in front of it) is normally used when you ask someone to give you some concrete objects. Thus, when you ask for an extension number, person, section, or department on the phone, only **onegai shimasu** is possible.

If you don't have the extension number, you can give the name of the section or department to the operator:

... ka/bu onegai shimasu. *section/department, please.*

For example, if you are calling the **jinji-ka** 'personnel section,' you can say:

Jinji-ka onegai shimasu. *Personnel Office, please*

The operator will probably reply by saying one or both of the following:

Shooshoo omachi kudasai. *Please wait a moment*
Otsunagi shimasu/itashimasu. *I'll connect you*

The person who answers in the section/department will give the name of the department first, as illustrated below

Jinji-ka desu/de gozaimasu. *This is the Personnel office*

When you ask for the person you want, you can say

... san onegai shimasu. *Mr. . , please*

When a Japanese person calls someone at their office, s/he usually uses the title of the person after their name. Thus, if you are calling Mr. Tanaka, who is a section chief, you will say:

Tanaka-kachoo onegai shimasu. *Section Chief Tanaka, please.*

Occasionally, the office you are calling has more than one person with the same name. This is especially true when you are calling someone whose name is Tanaka, Yamada, or some other very common name. In this case, if you give the title of the person, the person who answers the phone will be able to more easily identify who you want. Another advantage to using a title is that even if you don't know the name of the person, you still have a good chance of getting through without extended explanations.

Kachoo-san onegai shimasu. *The section chief, please.*

In the above example, the address term . . . san is used after the title. The use of the address term makes the sentence softer and more polite. If you don't use this word, the implication is that your position is higher than that of person you are calling.

It is best, whenever you can, to make sure that you know the name of the person before calling and to use the neutral expression (name)-san . This will avoid problems that may be caused by misuse of the title. However, it is worth knowing that the title is used in the above manner by the Japanese, especially when you are answering a call in your office.

2. How to answer a call in your office

What has been discussed above also applies when you answer a call in your office. For example, if you answer the phone for the American Embassy, the first thing you will say is:

(Greeting) Amerika Taishikan de gozaimasu.

(Greeting) This is the American Embassy.

If you are answering in the visa section, your first utterance will be:

Sashoo-ka de gozaimasu. *The visa section.*

(Sashoo is the Japanese word for 'visa')

The caller may ask for your boss by saying . . .san onegai shimasu. Alternatively, s/he may ask for your boss by giving only his/her title (and . . .san). What is important is that you are supposed to use more polite (or more humble) expressions when you answer the phone. This is because the Japanese think you are answering the phone on behalf of your office.

Thus, de gozaimasu is more appropriate than desu. Likewise, Shooshoo omachi kudasai 'Please wait a moment' is more appropriate than Chotto matte kudasai. We will continue our discussion of more polite (and more humble) expressions used in telephone conversations in the next lesson.

会話

Situation 1

ローレンス 査証課でございます。
渡辺 ナルトさんお願いします。
ローレンス 失礼ですか、となたですか。
渡辺 日本旅行の渡邊ですか
ローレンス 少々お待ち下さい。

Situation 2

交換手 日本カメラでございます。
キャロル 内線521お願いします。
交換手 少々お待ちください。

人事課の人 人事課です。
キャロル アメリカ大使館のキャロルですか、鈴木さんお願いします。
人事課の人 少々お待ちください。

Situation 3

交換手 お早うございます。山田工業でございます。
ンモンス アメリカ領事館のノモンスですか、営業課の
佐藤さんお願いします。
交換手 おつなぎします。少々お待ちください。

Lesson 26

MORE TELEPHONE CALLS

英語のわかる人はいませんか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- say that you will give the phone to a person who can understand Japanese
- ask if you can talk to a person who understands English
- say that the person the caller wants is not in
- say that you will call again



DIALOGS

KAIWA

Situation 1

A Japanese man calls Mr. Wright's residence. Mrs. Wright answers the phone.

<i>Yamashita:</i>	A, moshi moshi. Raito-san no otaku desu ka?	<i>Hello. Is this Mr. Wright's residence?</i>
<i>Raito:</i>	Hai, soo desu.	<i>Yes, it is.</i>
<i>Yamashita:</i>	Asahi Shinbun no Yamashita desu ga, goshujin irasshaimasu ka?	<i>I'm Yamashita of the Asahi Newspaper. Is your husband home?</i>
<i>Raito:</i>	Ima orimasen ga...	<i>No, he is not.</i>
<i>Yamashita:</i>	Soo desu ka. Jaa, mata odewa itashimasu.	<i>Oh. Well then, I'll call again.</i>
<i>Raito:</i>	Soo desu ka. Sayoonara.	<i>I see. Good-bye.</i>

Situation 2

A Japanese man calls the American Embassy and asks for Mr. Holt.

<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Horuto-san onegai shimasu.	<i>May I speak to Mr. Holt?</i>
<i>Denisu:</i>	Ima orimasen ga...	<i>He is not in now.</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Soo desu ka. Nan-ji goromo odori ni narimasu ka?	<i>Oh. What time will he come back?</i>
<i>Denisu:</i>	Sumimasen. Nihongo ga wakaru mono to kawarimasu. Shoosho omachi kudasai.	<i>I'm sorry. I'll get someone who speaks Japanese. Please wait a moment.</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	lie, kekkoo desu. Mata denwa shimasu.	<i>No, that's O.K. I'll call again.</i>
<i>Denisu:</i>	Soo desu ka.	<i>Is that so?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Jaa, shitsuree shimasu.	<i>Well then, good-bye.</i>
<i>Denisu:</i>	Sayoonara.	<i>Good-bye.</i>

Situation 3

After talking to an operator, Mr. Jones is connected to the section where Mr. Koyama works.

Joonzu: Koyama-san onegai shimasu. May I speak to Mr. Koyama?

Nihonjin: Chotto omachi kudasai. Hold on a second, please.

• • •

Nihonjin: Omatase shimashita. Koyama wa kyoo wa oyasumi desu. Ashita wa kuru to omoimasu ga, nanika okotozuke ga gozaimasu ka?

I'm sorry to have kept you waiting. Koyama is on leave today. I think he'll come tomorrow, but is there a message?

Joonzu: Sumimasen. Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasen. Eego ga wakaru hito wa imasu ka?

I'm sorry. I don't know Japanese very well. Is there anyone who speaks English?

Nihonjin: Jaa, chotto omachi kudasai.

Well then, please wait a moment.

VOCABULARY**KOTOBA****Dialogs**

orimasen	is not (here) (deferential form of imasen)	おりません
odenwa itashimasu	make a telephone call (very deferential)	おでんわいたします
goro	approximately	ごろ
omodori ni narimasu	return (deferential)	おもどりになります
mono	person (humble)	もの
to	to, toward	と
kawarimasu	change	かわります
denwa shimasu	make a phone call	でんわします
omatase shimashita	I'm sorry to have kept you waiting (deferential)	おまたせしました
oyasumi desu	rest, take a vacation (polite)	おやすみです
ashita	tomorrow	あした
kuru	come (dictionary form of kimasu)	くる
...to omoimasu	think thatとおもいます
nanika	some kind of, something	なにか
okotozuke	message	おことづけ

Notes

yasunde imasu	be resting, taking leave (TE form of yasumimasu)	やすんでいます
seki o hazushite imasu	be away from one's desk	せきをはずしています

PRACTICE**RENSHUU****A. Production Exercise**

Directions

Student A makes a phone call to student B and asks for B's husband or wife. Student B says either that s/he is not in now or asks the caller to wait for a moment and identify him/herself. Student A responds in the first case by saying s/he will call again and in the second by identifying himself/herself, giving a work place and name.

Example 1

Student A Moshi moshi. Goshujin/okusan onegai shimasu.
Student B Ima orimasen ga...
Student A Jaa, kekkoo desu. Mata odenwa shimasu.

Example 2

Student A Moshi moshi. Goshujin/okusan onegai shimasu.
Student B Shooshoo omachi kudasai.
Student A Shitsuree desu ga, donata desu ka?
Student A Amerika Taishikan no (A's name) desu.

B. Production and Comprehension Exercise

教師用スクリプト下記参照

Directions.

The student asks for a person on the phone, referring to the list below. The instructor answers. The student checks the instructor's response on the answer sheet below. If the person the student asked for is not in, s/he says that s/he will call again.

Example

Student Moshi moshi. Yamada-kachoo onegai shimasu.
Instructor Ima seki o hazushite orimasu ga...
Student (check the correct response)
 Soo desu ka. Jaa, mata odenwa shimasu.

教師用スクリプト

- 1 部長は今席をはすしておりますか
- 2 今日はお休みですか
- 3 今ちょっと席をはすしておりますか
- 4 はい、少々お待ちください。
- 5 伊藤は今日は休みてですか

Lesson 26 More telephone calls

Student's list	Answer
1. Watanabe-buchoo	() He is off today. () He is not at his desk now.
2. Matsushita-kachoo	() He is not in today. () He is off today. () He is away on a business trip.
3. Katoo-kachoo	() He is in today. () He isn't at his desk now. () He is at a meeting now.
4. Nishida-buchoo	() He is at a meeting. () He is not at his desk. () He will be with you in a moment.
5. Itoo-kachoo	() He is off today. () He is away on a business trip. () He will come to the phone.

C. Production Exercise

教師用スクリプト下記参照

Directions:

The instructor asks whether a person that s/he wants to talk to is in or not. The student answers that s/he is not in now. The instructor asks further questions or makes a request, based on the script below. If the student understands, s/he responds appropriately. If not, s/he says that s/he does not understand Japanese well and will get someone who speaks Japanese.

Example:

Instructor: Nakamura-buchoo irasshaimasu ka?
Student: Ima orimasen ga...
Instructor: Aa, soo desu ka. Itsu goro omodori ni narimasu ka?
Student: Sumimasen. Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasen.
Nihongo ga wakaru mono to kawarimasu.

教師用スクリプト

1. ブラウン課長お願いします。
ああ、そうですか。でも、今日はいらしてますね。
2. ホールさんお願いします。外出中ですか。
3. ホワイトさんいらっしゃいますか。
今日はお戻りになりますか。
4. テーラー部長いらっしゃいますか。
おことづけをお願いしたいんですが、よろしいですか。
5. スペンサーさんいらっしゃいますか。
ちょっと急用なんですが.....

D. Production Exercise

教師用スクリプト下記参照

Directions:

The student calls a person on the phone, referring to the list below. The instructor answers, reading the script below. If the student understands, s/he answers appropriately. If not, s/he says that s/he doesn't understand Japanese well and asks for someone who speaks English.

Example:

- Student:* Sato-san onegai shimasu.
Instructor: Ainiku desu ga, tadaima chotto seki o hazushite orimasu.
Student: Sumimasen. Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasen. Ego ga wakaru hito wa imasu ka?

Student's list

教師用スクリプト

1. **Oota-buchoo** 只今ちょっと席を外している様ですか.....
何かおことづけ致しましょうか。
2. **Sasaki-san** 佐々木は京都へ出張でございます。
来週帰る予定でございますが.....
3. **Imai-kachoo** 今井は今外出しております。
何かおことづけがございますか。
4. **Koyama-kachoo** あいにく小山は休みです。
明日はまいりますが.....
おことづけがございますか。
5. **Kaneko-buchoo** 申し訳ありませんが只今会議中でございます。
お急ぎの用でございますか。

E. Production and Comprehension Exercise

教師用スクリプト下記参照

Directions:

The student asks if there's someone who speaks English. The instructor responds by reading from the script. The student checks the appropriate response.

Example:

- Student:* Ego ga wakaru hito wa imasu ka?
Instructor: Ee, chotto omachi kudasai.
Student: (checks the correct response)

Lesson 26 More telephone calls

Response

教師用スクリプト

1. () No, there isn't.
() Yes, please wait a moment.
 2. () No, there isn't.
() Yes, please wait a moment.
 3. () No, there isn't.
() Yes, please wait a moment.
 4. () No, there isn't.
() Yes, there is.
- あいにくですか、今はちょっと
はい、ちょっとお待ちください。
今ちょっと。
そうですね。しゃあ、ちょっと
お待ちください。

F. Production and Comprehension Exercise

教師用スクリプト下記参照

Directions:

The student says that s/he will get someone who speaks Japanese. The instructor responds, reading from the script. The student checks the appropriate response.

Example:

Student: Nihongo ga wakaru mono to kawarimasu.

Instructor: Soo desu ka. Jaa, onegai shimasu.

Student: (checks the right response)

Response

教師用スクリプト

1. () No, that's O.K.
() Yes, please.
 2. () No, that's O.K.
() Yes, please.
 3. () No, that's O.K.
() Yes, please.
 4. () No, that's O.K.
() Yes, please.
- いいえ、結構です。またお電話致
します。
そうですか。しゃあ、お願
います。
いいえ、また電話致しますから
結構です。
すみませんね。お願
います。

G. Comprehension Exercise

教師用スクリプト下記参照

Directions:

You answer the phone. The caller is your instructor. Choose the statement which best describes the subsequent conversation.

教師用スクリプト

1. The caller

() says that s/he is Clark.
() wishes to talk to Clark.

もしもし。クラークさんですか。
2. The caller says that

() s/he will call again later.
() s/he wants you to call him/her later.

しゃあ、また後でお電話します。
3. The caller

() asked you to repeat what you said.
() told you that s/he will call again.

もう一度おっしゃって下さいませんか。
4. The caller

() wants to know your name.
() is going to tell you his/her name.

恐れ入りますか、どちら様ですか。

H. Comprehension Exercise

テープ用スクリプト次ページ参照

Listen to the taped conversation and answer the following with Yes or No:

Conversation No Questions	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Did the caller get the right number?							
Was the person the caller wanted in?							
Did the caller identify himself/herself?							

テープ用スクリプト

1. A: もしもし。コナリーさんのお宅ですか。
B: はい、そうです。
A: 私、NHKの山下ですか、こ主人いらっしゃいますか。
B: はい、少々おまちください。
2. A: もしもし。鈴木さんのお宅ですか。
B: いいえ、違います。
A: あ、どうも、すみません。
B: いいえ。
3. A: もしもし。
B: 日本カメラでございます。
A: 私、アメリカ大使館のフラウンですが、営業部の山田さんお願ひします。
B: あ、フラウンですか。私、山田です。
4. A: もしもし。鈴木さんお願ひします。
B: あ、鈴木はちょっと席をはすしていますが.....
A: じゃあ、また電話します。
B: そうですか。失礼しました。
A: さよなら。
5. A: もしもし。佐藤課長いらっしゃいますか。
B: 課長は、きょうお休みですが、明日来ると思いますが、何かおことづけがございますか。
A: いいえ、結構です。また明日電話します。
B: そうですか。じゃあ、ごめんください。
A: さよなら。
6. A: もしもし。太田さんお願ひします。
B: 私ですか 失礼ですか、どなたですか。
A: アメリカンセンターのトンプソンです。
B: ああ、トンプソンさんですか。
7. A: もしもし。青木さんのお宅ですか。
B: はい、さようてございます。
A: 私、アメリカ大使館のケリーですか、こ主人お願ひします。
B: すみません。主人はまたもとりませんか.....
A: じゃあ、またお電話致します。
B: そうですか。失礼しました。ごめんください。
A: ごめんください。

READING REVIEW**KANJI**

- | | |
|--------|---------|
| 1. 東口 | 8. 東京方面 |
| 2. 出口 | 9. 山手線 |
| 3. 運賃表 | 10. 改札口 |
| 4. 地下鉄 | 11. 西口 |
| 5. 入口 | 12. 五番線 |
| 6. 南口 | 13. 北口 |
| 7. 連絡口 | 14. 急行 |

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. How to say '(name) isn't in now'

When you are answering a call, you may need to say that the person the caller wants is not in. Look at the following

Caller: Howaito-san onegai shimasu. *Mr White, please*
Answerer: Howaito wa ima orimasen ga... *White isn't in now*

As you may have noticed, the person who answered didn't use -san after the name in the above conversation. This is because the person is answering the phone on behalf of the institution s/he belongs to. (Cf. Lesson 5 for the in-group/out-group distinction.) Thus, when the person mentions an in-group member, s/he is expected to treat the person as s/he would herself/himself (cf. Lesson 5). When you greet a Japanese colleague by the name of Yamamoto in the morning, you will say

Yamamoto-san, ohayoo gozaimasu. *Good morning, Mr Yamamoto*

However, when you mention him to an out-group member on the phone (i.e., when you are acting on behalf of your institution), you will say:

Yamamoto wa ima orimasen ga... *Yamamoto isn't in now*

In Lesson 24, you learned that when you ask for a person on the phone, you can say:

(name)-san irasshaimasu ka? *Is (name) in?*

The word **irasshaimasu** is the more polite form of **imasu**. Thus, the above sentence indicates that the speaker is showing respect to the person s/he is referring to. However, when you refer to an in-group member, you use a deferential or humble expression so that your speech sounds polite to the hearer. The word **orimasu** is the humble form of **imasu**.

This is why the person who answered in the conversation above said **Orimasen ga** rather than **Irasshaimasen ga** or **Imasen ga**.

The following is a summary of the above:

(when you ask if an out-group person
is in)

X-san irasshaimasu ka?
Is Mr X in?

(when you say an in-group
person isn't in)

X wa ima orimasen ga...
X isn't in now

Although respectful or humble words are more appropriate in the above situations, the neutral word **imasu** can be used without being offensive, as in the following:

X-san wa imasu ka?

X wa ima imasen ga...

2. How to say 'I'll call again'

When the person you want is not in, you may wish to leave a message. However, the contents of the message may be too complex to express in Japanese. In such a case, you may wish to say 'I'll call again' in Japanese, so that you can call at another time (or avoid possible difficulties in comprehending what the person on the line says). You can use the following expression for this purpose:

Mata odenwa shimasu. *I'll call again.*

3. 'Is there someone (there) who understands English?'

You may wonder what the person on the line will say when the person you want is absent. The following are some key words and expressions you will need to know to understand what you hear:

(X wa) kyo wa yasunde imasu. *X is absent today.*

OR

(X wa) ima seki o hazushite imasu. *X isn't at his/her desk at the moment.*

Although you can say **Mata odenwa shimasu** 'I'll call again,' if you have urgent business you may want to talk to a person who understands English.

The following is the expression to use in such a case:

Eego ga wakaru hito wa imasu/imasen ka?

Is there someone who understands English?

Likewise, when you are answering a call and have difficulty understanding what the caller is saying, you may want to say something like 'I'll switch with a person who understands Japanese.' You can use the following expression for this purpose:

Nihongo ga wakaru mono to kawarimasu.

I'll switch with a person who understands Japanese.

Compare the expressions **eego ga wakaru hito** 'person who understands English' and **nihongo ga wakaru mono** 'person who understands Japanese.' You may have noticed that the word **hito** is used in the first expression and **mono** in the second, although both mean 'person.' This is another example of the in-group/out-group distinction. The word **mono** is used when you refer to an in-group person while **hito** is used when you refer to an out-group person. **Mono** is humble while **hito** is neutral.

会話

Situation 1

山下: あ、もしもし。ライトさんのお宅ですか。
ライト: はい、そうです。
山下: 朝日新聞の山下ですが、ご主人いらっしゃいますか。
ライト: 今、おりませんが.....
山下: そうですか、じゃ、又お電話いたします。
ライト: そうですか。さようなら。

Situation 2

日本人: ホルトさん、お願ひします。
デニス: 今、おりませんが.....
日本人: そうですか、何時ごろおもどりになりますか。
デニス: すみません。日本語がわかる者とかわります。
少々、お待ちください。
日本人: いいえ、けっこうです。又、電話します。
デニス: そうですか。
日本人: じゃ、失礼します。
テニス: さようなら。

Situation 3

ジョーンズ: 小山さん、お願ひします。
日本人: ちょっとお待ちください。
...
日本人: お待たせしました。小山は今日はお休みです。
明日は来ると思いますが、何かおことづけがございますか。
ジョーンズ: すみません。日本語がよくわかりません。
英語がわかる人はいますか。
日本人: じゃあ、ちょっとお待ちください。

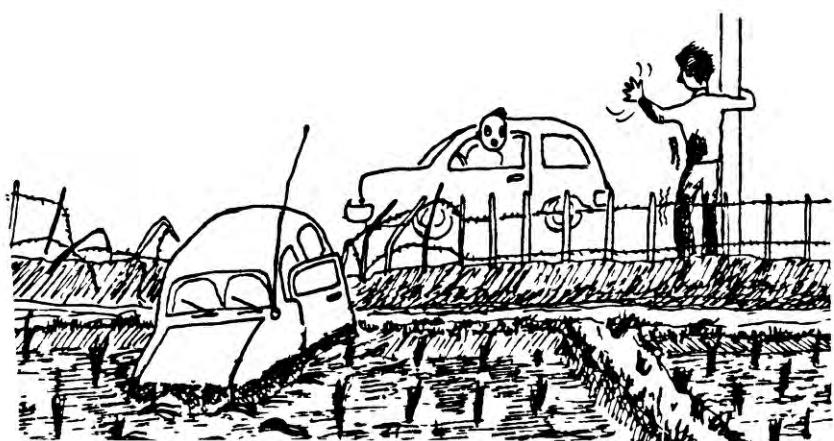
Lesson 27

EMERGENCIES

警察を呼んでください。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- tell someone that you've had a car accident
- ask someone to call an ambulance, the police, a doctor, and /or another place you want to reach
- describe simple symptoms to a doctor



DIALOGS**KAIWA****Situation 1**

While driving on a country road, Mr Nelson has a car accident which does not involve another party.

<i>Neruson:</i>	Chotto. Kuruma no jiko desu. Sumimasen ga, keesatsu o yonde kudasai.	<i>Excuse me I had a car accident. Could you please call the police?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Keganin wa imasu ka?	<i>Is there anyone injured?</i>
<i>Neruson:</i>	Imasen.	<i>No, there isn't.</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Jaa, sugu keesatsu ni denwa shimasu. Chotto matte ite kudasai.	<i>Well then, I'll call the police right away Please wait</i>
<i>Neruson:</i>	Anoo, Amerika Taishikan ni denwa shitain desu ga...	<i>Ah, I'd like to call the American Embassy</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Jaa, issho ni ikimashoo.	<i>Well then, let's go together</i>

Situation 2

Mrs. Cunningham has a car accident while driving alone on the street. The other party seems to be injured badly.

<i>Kaninguhamu:</i>	Chotto, sumimasen. Kuruma no jiko desu. Keganin ga imasu. Keesatsu to kyuukyuusha o yonde kudasai.	<i>Excuse me. I had a car accident. There's someone injured. Please call the police and an ambulance</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Kuruma no jiko? Jaa, sugu denwa shimasu.	<i>A car accident? Then I'll call right away</i>
<i>Kaninguhamu:</i>	Sumimasen ga, Amerika Taishikan ni denwa shite kudasaimasen ka? Shujin ga imasu kara...	<i>Would you please call the American Embassy?</i>
<i>Nihonjin:</i>	Ii desu yo.	<i>My husband works there.</i>
<i>Kaninguhamu:</i>	Kore wa watakushi no meeshi desu. Onegai shimasu.	<i>All right. This is my calling card. I'm much obliged to you.</i>

Situation 3

While on a business trip to a small town, Mrs. Bennett is staying at a Japanese-style inn. She has a severe pain in her abdomen and wants to see a doctor.

<i>Benetto:</i>	Sumimasen. Sugu oisha-san o yonde kudasai.	<i>Excuse me. Please call a doctor immediately.</i>
	• • •	• • •
<i>Isha:</i>	Doo shimashita ka?	<i>What happened?</i>
<i>Benetto:</i>	Koko ga itain desu.	<i>I have a pain here. (pointing)</i>
	• • •	• • •
<i>Isha:</i>	Netsu wa arimasesen kara daijoobu deshoo. Kore o nonde sukoshi yasunde ite kudasai.	<i>You don't have a fever, so it should be all right. Take this and rest up for a while.</i>
<i>Benetto:</i>	Sumimasen. Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasen.	<i>I'm sorry. I don't understand Japanese very well.</i>
<i>Isha:</i>	Soo desu ka. No fever. Take this three times a day, before meals.	<i>I see. No fever. Take this three times a day before meals.</i>
<i>Benetto:</i>	Wakarimasu. Doomo arigatoo.	<i>I understand. Thank you.</i>

VOCABULARY**KOTOBA****Dialogs**

chotto	Excuse me (may I have your attention?)	ちょっと
jiko	accident	じこ
keesatsu	police	けいさつ
keganin	injured person	けがにん
matte ite kudasai	please (remain) waiting	まっていてください
ikimashoo	let's go	いきましょう
kyuukyuusha	ambulance	きゅうきゅうしゃ
oisha-san	doctor	おいしゃさん
doo shimashita ka?	what's the matter?	どうしましたか
itai	painful, hurts	いたい
netsu	fever	ねつ
daijoobu	all right, no problem	だいじょうぶ
deshoo	probably be	でしょう
nonde	drink (TE form of nomimasu)	のんで
yasunde ite	(remain) resting (TE form of yasumimasu)	やすんでいて

Practice

atama	head	あたま
me	eye	め
ha	tooth	は
hana	nose	はな
kuchi	mouth	くち
nodo	throat	のど
kubi	neck	くび
kata	shoulder	かた
ude	arm	うで
te	hand	て

yubi	finger, toe	ゆび
mune	chest	むね
onaka	abdomen	おなか
ashi	foot, leg	あし
tasukete!	help!	たすけて!

Notes

isha	doctor	いしゃ
hakike ga shimasu	feel nauseous	はきけがします
kimochi ga warui desu	feel sick, sick in one's stomach	きもちがわるいです
memai ga shimasu	I feel dizzy	めまいがします

Reference

hai	lung	はい
choo	intestine	ちょう
senaka	back	せなか
hiza	knee	ひざ
hiji	elbow	ひじ
shita	tongue	した
koshi	lower back	こし
ketsuatsu	blood pressure	けつあつ
koo-ketsuatsu	high blood pressure	こうけつあつ
tee-ketsuatsu	low blood pressure	ていけつあつ
taion	body temperature	たいおん
shujutsu	operation	しゅじゅつ
myaku (haku)	pulse	みゃく
rentogen	X-ray	レントゲン
shinzoobyoo	heart disease	しんぞうびょう
shinzoomahi	heart attack	しんぞうまひ
ikaiyoo	stomach ulcer	いかいよう
haien	pneumonia	はいえん
seebyoo	VD	せいびょう
benpi	constipation	べんぴ

Lesson 27 Emergencies

arerugii

geri

allergy

diarrhea

アレルギー

げり

Personalized list

PRACTICE

RENSHUU

A. Word Study

The following are some of the parts of the body in Japanese. Repeat them after the instructor to practice pronunciation.

atama	head	ude	arm
me	eye	te	hand
ha	tooth	yubi	finger
hana	nose	mune	chest
kuchi	mouth	onaka	abdomen
nodo	throat	ashi	leg, foot
kubi	neck	kata	shoulder
i	stomach	koshi	lower back
senaka	back	hiza	knee
mimi	ear		

Using the above words, practice saying the following:

... ga itain desu. *I have a pain in my...*

B. Production Exercise

Directions:

The instructor draws a picture of the human body on the blackboard and asks what each part is called, pointing to various parts of the body. The student gives a name in Japanese.

Example:

Instructor: Kore wa nan desu ka?
 Student: Atama desu.

注: 教師は頭、手、足、お腹、歯、目等の体の部分名をも用いる

C. Match the following

atama	neck
ha	hand
senaka	leg/foot
ashi	chest
te	head
onaka	tooth/teeth
mune	eye/eyes
kubi	abdomen
me	back

Lesson 27 Emergencies

D. Substitution Drill

Keesatsu o yonde kudasai.

Kyuukyuusha
Shujin
Takushii
Isha
Keesatsu

E. Substitution Drill

Keesatsu ni denwa shite kudasai.

Amerika Taishikan
Kanai
Koko
Amerika Ryoojikan
Shujin
Keesatsu

F. Production and Comprehension Exercise

Directions :

The instructor asks what is wrong. The student gives a symptom, referring to the list below.

Example:

Instructor: Doo shimashita ka?
Student: Atama ga itain desu.

Student's list

1. You have a pain in your chest.
2. You feel dizzy.
3. You feel nauseous.
4. You have a pain in your foot.
5. You feel sick to your stomach.
6. You have a headache.

注: 教師は適当に下記の質問を用いる

どうなさいましたか。
どうしましたか。
どこが痛いんですか。

G. Production Exercise

教師へ: 1 は「助けて！」でも「Help!」でもよい。実際に緊急の場合、何語でもかまわない。

Answer the following in Japanese:

1. What do you shout when you want help?
2. What do you say when you want to ask a person to call a telephone number you have written on a piece of paper?
3. What do you say when you report that a person has been injured?
4. What do you say when you want someone to call an ambulance?
5. What do you say when you report that there has been a car accident?
6. What do you say when you want to find someone who speaks English?
7. What do you say when you feel nauseous?
8. What do you say when you feel dizzy?
9. What do you say when you want to ask someone to call a doctor?
10. What do you say when you want to tell a person that you don't speak much Japanese?

READING REVIEW**KANJI**

- | | | |
|--------|----------|---------|
| 1. 劇場 | 8. 自由席 | 15. 浅草 |
| 2. 喫茶店 | 9. 発売中 | 16. 渋谷 |
| 3. 薬局 | 10. 駐車禁止 | 17. 大阪 |
| 4. 営業中 | 11. 禁煙 | 18. 日本橋 |
| 5. 大人 | 12. 丸の内 | 19. 六本木 |
| 6. 小人 | 13. 新橋 | 20. 新宿 |
| 7. 指定席 | 14. 赤坂 | 21. 銀座 |

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. What to do when you are involved in a car accident

When you are involved in a car accident, ask anyone around for help. When you want to say that there has been a car accident, you can say the following:

Kuruma no jiko desu.

There has been (literally, 'it is') a car accident

If there are any injured persons, say:

Keganin ga imasu.

There are injured persons

If you want to ask someone to call an ambulance, the police, and/or a doctor, you can use the following words and expressions:

kyuukyuusha

ambulance

keesatsu

police

isha

doctor

**Kyuukyuusha/keesatsu/isha
o yonde kudasai.**

*Please call an ambulance/the police/
a doctor*

It is a good idea always to carry with you a card with the telephone numbers of the U.S. Embassy and other places you might wish to call in an emergency. Your meeshi can also be quite useful. If you wish to have someone make a call to a number you have written down, you can say:

Koko ni denwa shite kudasai. *Please telephone this place*

Denwa means 'telephone' and the phrase denwa site (kudasai) means 'please phone'. The particle *ni* is used after the name of the place you want to contact. When you want to make a phone call, you can say:

Denwa sitain desu.

I want to make a call

Likewise, if you want to call the American Embassy, you can say:

Amerika Taishikan ni denwa shitain desu.

Lesson 27 Emergencies

You should contact your office immediately if you are involved in an accident so that they can send help or give you suggestions as to what to do.

When you need to talk with the police, show them your **meeshi** first. It will give them much of the information they need.

When you call the police or an ambulance yourself, dial the following numbers:

police	110
fire/ambulance	119

However, since the police or fire department will ask you about the details of the accident, it will be far easier to handle the situation if you can find a Japanese person to help you.

2. Some basic expressions for describing symptoms

Although describing medical symptoms in a foreign language can be extremely difficult, if you know the following basic expressions you can at least tell your doctor that you have nausea, that you feel dizzy, or where you have pain, etc.

Koko ga itain desu.	<i>I have a pain here.</i>
Hakike ga shimasu.	<i>I feel nauseous.</i>
Kimochi ga waruin desu.	<i>I feel sick.</i>

会話

Situation 1

ネルソン: ちょっと、車の事故です。すみませんが、警察を呼んでください。
 日本人: けが人はいますか。
 ネルソン: いません。
 日本人: じゃ、すぐ警察に電話します。
 ちょっと待っていてください。
 ネルソン: あのう、アメリカ大使館に電話したいんですが.....
 日本人: じゃあ、いっしょに行きましょう。

Situation 2

カニングハム: ちょっと、すみません、車の事故です。
 けが人がいます。警察と救急車をよんでください。
 日本人: 車の事故? じゃあ、すぐ電話します。
 カニングハム: すみませんが、アメリカ大使館に電話して
 くださいませんか。主人がいますから。
 日本人: いいですよ。
 カニングハム: これは私の名刺です。お願いします。

Situation 3

ベネット: すみません。すぐお医者さんを呼んでください。
 日本人: どうしましたか。
 ベネット: ここが痛いんです。
 ...
 医者: 熱はありませんから大丈夫でしょう。
 これを飲んで少し休んでいてください。
 ベネット: すみません。日本語がよくわかりません。
 医者: そうですか。No fever. Take this three times a day before meals.
 ベネット: わかります。どうもありがとうございます。

Lesson 27 Emergencies

Lesson 28

GETTING THINGS FIXED

電気がつきません。故障です。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- describe a maintenance problem in your apartment to your resident manager or to a repairman
- ask your resident manager to come up to your apartment to check on a problem
- ask your resident manager to call a repairman for you
- ask a repairman to fix something
- ask a repairman how long the repair will take
- comprehend the repairman's answer, including the number of days or weeks

DIALOGS

KAIWA

Situation 1

Mr Peterson calls the resident manager to report that the electricity isn't working

- | | | |
|------------|--|---|
| Piitaason: | Sumimasen. | Excuse me |
| Kanrinin: | Hai. Nan desu ka? | Yes What is it (what is the problem)? |
| Piitaason: | Denki ga tsukimasen.
Shirabete kudasaimasen ka? | The electricity is not working
Could you check it? |
| Kanrinin: | Soo desu ka. Wakarimashita. | I see Sure |

Situation 2

Ms Adams tells her maintenance man that the drain in the sink is clogged

- | | | |
|------------|--|---|
| Adamusu: | Sumimasen. Nagashi no mizu ga nagaremasen. | Excuse me, but the drain in the sink is clogged |
| Shuurinin: | Soo desu ka.
Otaku wa nan-ban desu ka? | Oh What is your (apartment) number? |
| Adamusu: | San-gai no 307 desu. | It's 307, on the third floor |
| Shuurinin: | Jaa, sugu itte shirabemasu. | I'll be right up to check |
| Adamusu: | Jaa, onegai shimasu. | I would appreciate it |

Situation 3

At a shoe repair shop, Mr. Thomas asks to have the heels on a pair of shoes fixed.

- | | | |
|-------------------|---|---|
| <i>Shuuri-ya:</i> | Irasshai. | Welcome. |
| <i>Toomasu:</i> | Konnichi wa. Kono kutsu no kakato o naoshite kudasai. | Good day Would you fix the heels of these shoes? |
| <i>Shuuri-ya:</i> | Kakato dake desu ne?
Kashikomarimashita. | Just the heels?
Certainly. |
| <i>Toomasu:</i> | Itsu dekimasu ka? | When will they be ready? |
| <i>Shuuri-ya:</i> | Soo desu ne. Ima chotto konde imasu kara asatte de ii desu ka? | Hmm. We're a little busy now, so how about the day after tomorrow? |
| <i>Toomasu:</i> | Asatte desu ne?
Nan-ji gorō desu ka? | Day after tomorrow?
About what time? |
| <i>Shuuri-ya:</i> | Gogo dekimasu. Onamae wa? | They will be ready in the afternoon.
Your name? |
| <i>Toomasu:</i> | Toomasu desu. Jaa, asatte gogo kimasu. Ikura gurai desu ka? | Thomas. Then I'll come back the day after tomorrow in the afternoon
How much will it be? |
| <i>Shuuri-ya:</i> | Sen-en desu. | 1,000 yen. |
| <i>Toomasu:</i> | Jaa, onegai shimasu. | O K Thank you. (lit., Please do it) |

VOCABULARY**KOTOBA****Dialogs**

sumimasen	excuse me	すみません
denki	electricity	でんき
tsukimassen	does not light up, does not turn on (negative form of tsukimasu)	つきません
shirabete	check up (TE form of shirabemasu)	しらべて
nagashi	kitchen sink	ななし
mizu	water	みす
nagaremasen	does not flow (negative form of nagaremasu)	ながれません
nan-ban	what number	なんばん
shirabemasu	check up	しらへます
irasshai	welcome	いらっしゃい
kakato	heel(s)	かかと
naoshite	fix, repair (TE form of naoshimasu)	なおして
itsu	when	いつ
dekimasu	be ready	てきます
konde imasu	be crowded	こんでいます
asatte	the day after tomorrow	あさって
gogo	p.m.	ごご
onamae	name (polite)	おなまえ

Practice

ichi-nichi	one day	いちにち
kakarimasu	take (time)	かかります
is-shuukan	one week	いっしゅうかん
raishuu	next week	らいしゅう
ik-kagetsu	one month	いっかげつ

denchi	battery	てんち
denki kamisori	electric shaver	てんきかみそり
dentaku	electric calculator	てんたく
sutereo	stereo	ステレオ
toosutaa	toaster	トースター
mikisaa	mixer	ミキサー
airon	iron	アイロン

Notes

koshoo shimashita	be broken, be out of order	こしょうしました
kowaremashita	be broken	こわれました
demasen	not come out (negative form of demasu)	てません
reezooko	refrigerator	れいぞうこ
suidoo	waterworks, plumbing	すいどう
renji	range, stove	レンジ
suidoo-ya	plumber	すいとうや
denki-ya	electrician, electric appliance repairman	てんきや

Supplement

hare	sunny	はれ
kumori	cloudy	くもり
ame	rain	あめ
yuki	snow	ゆき
deshita	was/were (past tense of desu)	でした
hi (. . bi)	day	ひ(び)

Personalized list

PRACTICE**RENSHUU****A. Production and Comprehension Exercise**

When the repairman answers your question about when the item will be fixed, he may give the date by saying:

(date) desu. OR (date) ni dekimasu.

Directions:

The student asks the instructor when an appliance will be fixed. The instructor answers. The student writes down the date. The instructor checks the number that the student has written down.

Example:

<i>Student:</i>	Itsu dekimasu ka?
<i>Instructor:</i>	Hatsuka desu. OR Hatsuka ni dekimasu.
<i>Student:</i>	(writes down 20)
<i>Instructor:</i>	(checks the answer)

B. Production and Comprehension Exercise 注:教師は日付と日数を交ぜて使う

When the repairman gives an answer, he may mention the number of days it will take. The number of days is expressed in the same way as the name of the day, except for the first day of the month, which is:

<u>date</u>	<u>period</u>
tsuitachi <i>first day of the month</i>	ichi-nichi <i>one day</i>

The word kakarimasu 'take' can be used when you talk about how long it takes to get to a place (cf. Lesson 10) or how long it takes to do a job.

Directions:

The student asks the instructor when the appliance will be fixed. The instructor answers by giving either the date or the number of days. The student writes down the number specifying whether the number stands for the day of the month or the number of days it will take. The instructor checks the student's answer.

Example:

<i>Student:</i>	Itsu dekimasu ka?
<i>Instructor:</i>	Mikka kakarimasu.
<i>Student:</i>	(writes down 3 days)
<i>Instructor:</i>	(checks the answer)

C. Comprehension and Production Exercise

The repairman may answer your question by telling you how many weeks or months it will take. The following are expressions that indicate the number of weeks and months. Repeat after your instructor to practice pronunciation.

one week	is-shuukan	(一週間)
two weeks	ni-shuukan	(二週間)
three weeks	san-shuukan	(三週間)
one month	ik-kagetsu	(一か月)
two months	ni-kagetsu	(二か月)
three months	san-kagetsu	(三か月)

The repairman may also say the item to be repaired will be ready next week. The Japanese expressions for 'next week' and 'next month' are *rai-shuu* (来週) and *rai-getsu* (来月) respectively. Now do as in Practice B. The instructor will answer your question by giving either the day or the number of days or weeks or months.

D. Word study

The following are some words for electrical appliances and accessories. Repeat them after your instructor to practice pronunciation. You may want to ask the instructor for other words that you think you may need.

sutereo	stereo set
toosutaa	toaster
mikisaa	blender, food mixer
denchi	battery
tokee	clock, watch
denki kamisori	electric shaver
dentaku	electric calculator
airon	iron

E. Role Play

Solve the following problems:

- Your refrigerator is out of order. Go to the kanri-nin and ask him/her to check it.
- Your tape recorder is out of order. Take it to a nearby denki-ya for repair.
- You have a pair of shoes that need to get repaired. Take them to a shoe repair shop.

Lesson 28 Getting things fixed

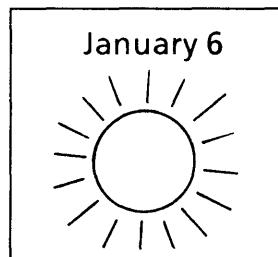
Supplementary materials

A. Production Exercises

Directions:

Practice describing the weather on the days depicted below as in the example.

Example:

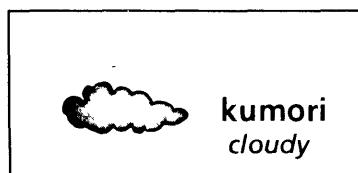
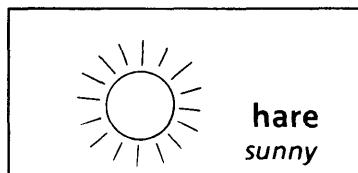


Ichi-gatsu muika wa hare deshita.

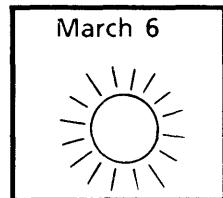
It was sunny on January 6.

Note: deshita is the past form of desu.

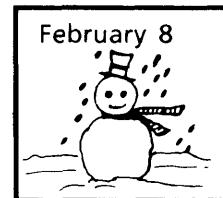
Signs:



1.



2.

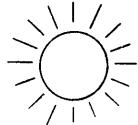
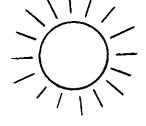


3.



4.



5. July 3 
6. September 5 
7. October 10 
8. September 9 
9. May 4 
10. November 7 
11. January 14 
12. August 20 
13. June 6 
14. February 1 
15. March 7 
16. April 2 
17. September 8 
18. January 24 

B. Production Exercise

This exercise makes use of the Japanese national holidays to review dates and months.

Directions:

Student A picks a day from list A and asks Student B the date of the holiday.
Student B answers by referring to list B.

Example:

Student A: **Gantan wa itsu/nan-gatsu nan-nichi desu ka?**

Student B: **Ichi-gatsu tsuitachi desu.**

List A		List B
Gantan (Oshoogatsu)	<i>New Year's Day</i>	Jan. 1
Seejin no hi	<i>Adults' Day</i>	Jan. 15
Kenkoku Kinen-bi	<i>National Foundation Day</i>	Feb. 11
Shunbun no hi	<i>Vernal Equinox Day</i>	Mar. 20 or 21
Tennoo Tanjoo-bi	<i>Emperor's Birthday</i>	Apr. 29
Kenpoo Kinen-bi	<i>Constitution Memorial Day</i>	May 3
Kodomo no hi	<i>Children's Day</i>	May 5
Keeroo no hi	<i>Respect for the Aged Day</i>	Sept. 15
Shuubun no hi	<i>Autumnal Equinox Day</i>	Sept. 23 or 24
Taiiku no hi	<i>Health Sports Day</i>	Oct. 10
Bunka no hi	<i>Culture Day</i>	Nov. 3
Kinroo Kansha no hi	<i>Labor Thanksgiving Day</i>	Nov. 23

READING REVIEW**KANJI**

- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| 1. 左側通行 | 9. 注意 |
| 2. 一方通行 | 10. 止まれ |
| 3. 一時停止 | 11. 明治神宮 |
| 4. 制限速度 | 12. 上野公園 |
| 5. 駐車禁止 | 13. 日比谷公園 |
| 6. 有料駐車場 | 14. 新宿御苑 |
| 7. 右折禁止 | 15. 劇場 |
| 8. 横断歩道 | 16. 国立劇場 |

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. When things break

If you live in an apartment and there are electrical or plumbing problems, you should contact the kanri-nin(管理人) 'resident manager' for help. However, the kanri-nin may or may not speak English. If s/he doesn't, you may have to describe the problem in Japanese and ask him/her to come up to your apartment to check or to call a repairman for you. The following expressions can be used to describe some of the problems you may encounter:

X ga koshoo shimashita. *X is out of order.*

X ga kowaremashita. *X is broken.*

In place of X above, you can use the following words:

suidoo	<i>waterworks, plumbing</i>
reizooko	<i>refrigerator</i>
nagashi	<i>sink</i>
renji	<i>range, stove</i>

Note also the following useful expressions:

Mizu ga demasen. *The water doesn't come out.*

Denki ga tsukimasen. *The electricity isn't working.*

When you want to ask your resident manager to come and check, you can use the following expressions:

Shirabete kudasaimasen ka? *Would you check it?*
Mite kudasaimasen ka? *Could you look at it?*

If you want to ask the resident manager to call a repairman, you can use the following expression:

X o yonde kudasaimasen ka? *Will you call X?*

In place of X above, you can use the following words:

suidoo-ya	<i>plumber</i>
denki-ya	<i>electrician, electric appliance repairman</i>

When you want to explain the problem in more detail to a kanri-nin or repairman, you can use the following expressions:

Koko ga kowaremashita.	<i>This part (place) is broken.</i>
Kore ga kowaremashita.	<i>This is broken.</i>

Ask your instructor for other words and expressions you think you may need. When you want to take an appliance to a repair shop, you can, of course, use the expressions that describe the problems mentioned above. You may also say the following to the repairman:

Naoshite kudasaimasen ka? *Will you fix it?*

You may also want to ask when the repaired item will be ready. You can use the following expression for this purpose:

Itsu dekimasu ka? *When will it be ready?*

In order to comprehend the repairman's answer, you have to know dates as well as days and weeks in Japanese (cf. Lesson 10 and 20 as well as chart on page 516).

2. About electrical Equipment

Electric current (voltage) in Japan is 100-110, which is about 9% lower than in the U.S., which is 110-120. In the western half of Japan (Kyoto, Osaka, Kobe, etc.), the cycles are the same as in the U.S.-- 60 cycles. However, 50 cycles is normal in the eastern half of the country, including Tokyo. Therefore, if you work in Tokyo and want to send or take electrical appliances with motors from the U.S., you will need to have them adjusted in Japan before using them. Electric clocks are often impractical to convert. Many appliances, such as toasters, are not affected by cycle level.

会話

Situation 1

ピーターソン: すみません。
管 理 人: はい、何ですか。
ピーターソン: 電気がつきません。調べてくださいませんか。
管 理 人: そうですか。わかりました。

Situation 2

アダムス: すみません。流しの水が流れません。
修 理 人: そうですか。お宅は何番ですか。
アダムス: 三階の307です。
修 理 人: じゃあ、すぐ行って調べます。
アダムス: じゃあ、お願ひします。

Situation 3

修 理 屋: いらっしゃい。
トーマス: こんにちは。この靴のかかとを直してください。
修 理 屋: かかとだけですね。かしこまりました。
トーマス: いつできますか。
修 理 屋: そうですね。今ちょっとこんでいますから、
あさってでいいですか。
トーマス: あさってですね。何時ごろですか。
修 理 屋: 午後できます。お名前は?
トーマス: トーマスです。じゃあ、あさって、午後来ます。
いくらぐらいですか。
修 理 屋: 千円です。
トーマス: じゃあ、お願ひします。

Lesson 29

GOING OUT FOR ENTERTAINMENT

何時に会いましょうか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- arrange a time and place to meet
- ask someone if s/he can go out for a drink or dinner with you
- accept or decline an invitation
- propose an alternative choice

DIALOGS**KAIWA****Situation 1**

Ms. Marshall works at the American Center. Ms. Nakajima is a friend of hers. One evening, Ms. Nakajima asks her to go out to dinner.

- | | | |
|------------------|---|--|
| Nakajima: | Maasharu-san, konban issho ni shokuji ni ikimasen ka? | <i>Ms. Marshall, how about having dinner with me this evening?</i> |
| Maasharu: | Sore wa ii desu ne.
Doko e ikimashoo ka? | <i>That sounds good.
Where shall we go?</i> |
| Nakajima: | Chuugoku-ryoori wa doo desu ka? | <i>How about Chinese food?</i> |
| Maasharu: | Ii desu ne. | <i>Fine.</i> |
| Nakajima: | Jaa, ii resotoran o shitte imasu kara,
soko e ikimashoo.
Nan-ji ni shimashoo ka? | <i>Well, I know a good restaurant; let's go there.
What time shall we make it?</i> |
| Maasharu: | Shichi-ji wa doo desu ka? | <i>How about seven o'clock?</i> |
| Nakajima: | Ee, ii desu yo. Jaa, watakushi ga Amerikan Sentaa e ikimasu. | <i>Fine. Then, I'll come to the American Center.</i> |
| Maasharu: | Soo desu ka. Jaa, onegai shimasu. | <i>All right. Thanks!</i> |

Situation 2

Mr. Tanaka is a colleague of Mr. Burns. He asks Mr. Burns to go see sumoo together.

- | | | |
|----------------|---|--|
| Tanaka: | Baanzu-san, sumoo o mi ni ikimasen ka? | <i>Mr. Burns, shall we go see a sumoo match?</i> |
| Baanzu: | Ii desu ne. Itsu desu ka? | <i>That sound great. When is it?</i> |
| Tanaka: | Do-yoobi desu. | <i>On Saturday.</i> |
| Baanzu: | Soo desu ka. Zannen desu ga,
Do-yoobi wa chotto... | <i>Oh. That's too bad. Saturday isn't so good for me..</i> |
| Tanaka: | Soo desu ka?
Nichi-yoobi mo dame desu ka? | <i>Is that so?
Is Sunday bad too?</i> |
| Baanzu: | Aa, Nichi-yoobi wa ii desu yo. | <i>Oh, Sunday is fine.</i> |
| Tanaka: | Jaa, Nichi-yoobi ni shimashoo.
Akasaka Mitsuke no eki no mae de yo-ji ni aimashoo. | <i>Then, let's make it Sunday.
Let's meet at four in front of Akasaka Mitsuke station.</i> |
| Baanzu: | Wakarimashita. Nichi-yoobi, yo-ji desu ne? | <i>O.K. At four, this Sunday, right?</i> |

Situation 3

Ms. Smith is at a ticket window at Kabukiza. She wants to buy three tickets for the evening performance on the 15th.

- | | | |
|------------------|--|--|
| <i>Sumisu:</i> | Juu go-nichi no kippu, san-mai
onegai shimasu. | <i>Three tickets for the 15th,
please.</i> |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | Hiru no bu desu ka, yoru no bu
desu ka? | <i>The afternoon performance
or the evening performance?</i> |
| <i>Sumisu:</i> | Yoru no bu desu. | <i>The evening performance.</i> |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | De wa, koko to koko ga nokotte
imasu. (showing a seating chart) | <i>O.K. Here and here is still
available.</i> |
| <i>Sumisu:</i> | Koko, onegai shimasu. | <i>Here, please.</i> |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | Hai. 20,000-en de gozaimasu. | <i>All right. That'll be 20,000
yen.</i> |

VOCABULARY

KOTOBA

Dialogs

shokujii	meal	しょくじ
shokujii ni ikimasen ka	Would you like to go out for dinner? (neg. form of ikimasu)	しょくじにいきませんか
Chuugoku-ryoori	Chinese cuisine	ちゅうごくりょうり
sumoo	sumoo wrestling	すもう
...mi ni ikimasen ka	Would you like to go see... ?	みにいきませんか
zannen desu ga...	it's too bad, it's unfortunate	ざんねんですが
dame	no good, won't do, bad	だめ
aimashoo	let's meet	あいましょう
hiru no bu	afternoon performance	ひるのぶ
yoru no bu	evening performance	よるのぶ
nokotte imasu	remain, be left (TE form of nokorimasu)	のこっています

Practice

nomi ni ikimasen ka	Would you like to go out for a drink?	のみにいきませんか
---------------------	---------------------------------------	-----------

Personalized list

PRACTICE**RENSHUU****A. Production Exercise**

One situation in which you may need to use time expressions is when you buy a reserved seat on a long-distance train such as the Shinkansen. Long-distance train tickets and reserved-seat tickets for the JR can be bought at the **Midori no madoguchi** (みどりの窓口) 'Green Window' of a station. There's a green sign at the window. When you buy a reserved-seat ticket or **shitee-ken** (指定券) you need to specify the date, time, train name, destination, and number of tickets you want. You can use the following formula:

(Date) (time) no (train name) no shitee-seki,
(destination) made (# of tickets)-mai onegai shimasu.

For example, if you want to take the Hikari at 3:00 on the 15th as far as Shin Osaka (新大阪), you can say:

Juu go-nichi 3-ji no hikari, Shin Osaka (made) ichi-mai onegai shimasu.

Now buy tickets for the following trains:

<u>Date</u>	<u>Time</u>	<u>Train</u>	<u>Destination</u>	<u># of tickets</u>
1. 2nd	11:00 a.m.	Kodama	Shizuoka	2
2. 8th	4:40 p.m.	Hikari	Hakata	3
3. 20th	7:28 a.m.	Hikari	Nagoya	1
4. 4th	8:30 a.m.	Hikari	Kyoto	2
5. 1st	9:16 a.m.	Kodama	Atami	3
6. 14th	5:00 p.m.	Hikari	Shin Osaka	1

Note: p.m.=gogo (午後) e.g., 3:00 p.m. gogo san-ji
a.m.=gozen (午前) e.g., 11:00 a.m. gozen juu ichi-ji

Lesson 29 Going out for entertainment

B. Production Exercise

注: 教師は同じ文型で適当に質問する

ROUND 1

Directions:

The instructor asks a student to go out for a drink or dinner. The student either accepts or declines the invitation, using **Ii desu ne** and/or **Ee, ikimashoo** or **Kyoo wa chotto...**

Example:

Instructor: Konban nomi ni ikimasen ka?

Student: Ii desu ne. Ikimashoo. OR Kyoo wa chotto...

ROUND 2

Directions:

The student asks the instructor to go out for a drink or dinner, referring to the list below. The instructor either accepts or declines the invitation using an appropriate expression.

Example:

Student : Konban nomi ni ikimasen ka?

Instructor: Ii desu ne. Ikimashoo.

List for student

1. How about going out for dinner tonight?
2. Shall we go to a restaurant?
3. Would you like to go see a show at the National Theater?
4. How about going to a beer garden tonight?
5. How about going out for a drink tonight?

C. Comprehension and Production Exercise

Directions:

Student A proposes something/somewhere to student B, referring to the list for student A. Student B prefers something/somewhere else, referring to the list for student B.

Example:

Student A: Resutoran ni shimashoo ka?
Student B: Shokudoo wa doo desu ka?

List for Student A

1. Itaria-ryoori
2. ku-ji
3. bifuteki
4. Do-yoobi
5. wain
6. baa
7. Chuugoku-ryoori
8. hachi-ji
9. resutoran
10. mik-ka

List for Student B

1. Furansu-ryoori
2. hachi-ji
3. osushi
4. Nichi-yoobi
5. osake
6. bia gaaden
7. Itariya-ryoori
8. shichi-ji han
9. shokudoo
10. yok-ka

D. Production Exercise

Directions:

Student A asks when s/he and Student B are to meet. Student B answers, referring to the list below.

Example:

Student A: Itsu aimashoo ka?
Student B: Futsuka ni aimashoo.

List for student B

1. 10 a.m. tomorrow
2. 8 p.m. at night
3. Sunday morning
4. Wednesday afternoon
5. 3 p.m. on the fifth
6. eighth

E. Production Exercise

Directions:

Student A asks where and at what time s/he and student B are to meet. Student B answers, referring to the list below.

Example:

Student A: Doko de nan-ji ni aimashoo ka?

Student B: Depaato no mae de san-ji ni aimashoo.

List for student B

place	time
1. coffee shop	three o'clock
2. in front of Mitsukoshi	five thirty
3. American Consulate	two o'clock
4. bookstore	four thirty
5. in front of U.S. Embassy	six o'clock

F. Production and Comprehension Exercise

Directions:

The student buys a ticket/tickets, referring to the list below. The instructor offers choices, reading from the script. The student makes a decision as to what date, time, etc. s/he prefers.

Example:

Student: Mikka no kippu o ni-mai onegai shimasu.

Instructor: Sen gohyaku-en no to sen-en no ga gozaimasu.

Student: Sen-en no o kudasai.

Student's list

教師用スクリプト

1. 4 tickets for the 10th 二千円のと千百円のがございます。
2. 3 tickets at 1,500 yen each 六日のと八日のがございます。
3. 1 ticket for the 6th 五時のと八時のがございます。
4. 5 tickets for the evening performance 七時のと九時のがございます。
5. 4 tickets for the eight-thirty performance 三千円のと二千五百円のがございます。

G. Reading Practice

a. Below is a copy of a menu. Choose the correct answer to the following questions:

1. What are the business hours (営業時間)?

- a. between 5:00 p.m. and 11:30 a.m.
- b. between 11:30 a.m. and 5:00 a.m.

2. What are the demae hours (出前時間)?

- a. between 11:30 p.m. and 10:00 a.m.
- b. between 10:00 a.m. and 11:30 p.m.
- c. between 11:30 a.m. and 10:00 p.m.

Hint: 午前 = a.m.

出前 = delivery service

◇ 営業時間

午前 11時30分 - 翌朝 5時

◎ 定休日

毎週月曜日

◇ 出前時間

午前 11時30分 - 深夜 10時まで

◇ 昼食時の出前は混み合います

ので 11時30分頃までに
ご注文下さい。

天勝

☎ 200-5898

Lesson 29 Going out for entertainment

b. Read the following Kanji (時 = ji, 分 = fun, pun):

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
九時十八分	四時三十二分	十一時四十六分	八時二十七分	三時五十一分

READING

KANJI

1.時 ... ji ... o'clock

2. 午前 gozen a.m.

3. 午後 gogo p.m.

4. 営業時間 eegyoo jikan business hours

5. 本日休業 honjitsu kyuugyoo closed today

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. Shall we go and see...?

In this lesson we take up the following expressions, which may be used by Japanese when they ask you to go out for a drink or dinner:

Nomi ni ikimasen ka? *Shall we go out for a drink?*

Shokuji ni ikimasen ka? *Shall we go out for dinner?*

When a person asks you if you can go out to see a play, exhibition, etc. with them, they may use a similar expression, such as the following:

(Kabuki) o mi ni ikimasen ka? *Shall we go and see a (Kabuki play)?*

2. Deciding the place and time to meet

It may sometimes be necessary to discuss the place and time to meet to go see a play, sumo, etc. When you want to propose a place and time and find out if the proposed place and time are convenient for the other person, you can use the following expressions:

(Time) wa doo desu ka? *How about (time)?*

(Place) wa doo desu ka? *How about (place)?*

For example, if you want to propose meeting in front of Mitsukoshi at 3:00, you can say:

Mitsukoshi no mae 3-ji wa doo desu ka?

OR

3-ji Mitsukoshi no mae wa doo desu ka?

How about in front of Mitsukoshi at three?

Another way to propose a time and place to meet is to use one of the following expressions:

time: **(Time) ni aimashoo ka?** *Shall we meet at (time)?*

place: **(Place) de aimashoo ka?** *Shall we meet at (place)?*

place & time: **(Place) de (time) ni aimashoo ka?**

OR

(Time) ni (place) de aimashoo ka?

For example, when you want to propose meeting in front of Mitsukoshi at 3:00 on the 4th, you can say:

Yokka 3-ji ni Mitsukoshi no mae de aimashoo ka?

OR

Mitsukoshi no mae de yokka 3-ji ni aimashoo ka?

Shall we meet in front of Mitsukoshi at 3:00 on the 4th?

It should be noted that the particle *ni* is used after the time expression while *de* is used after the place expression.

When you want to ask a person about a convenient time and place, you can ask the following questions:

Nan-ji ni aimashoo ka?

What time shall we meet?

Doko de aimashoo ka?

Where shall we meet?

The following are some time expressions that don't require *ni* after them:

ashita OR asu

tomorrow

asatte

the day after tomorrow

Ashita aimashoo ka?

Shall we meet tomorrow?

Listed below are some of the favorite places the Japanese go for drinks:

bia gaaden

beer garden

sunakku

snack bar

baa

bar

yakitori-ya

chicken-barbecue place

When a Japanese suggests a bar, for example, by saying **Baa wa doo desu ka** but you want to go some other place, you can reply by proposing the place you want to go, as in the following:

Soo desu ne... (place you want to go) wa doo desu ka?

Well... How about (place)?

When Japanese ask you to go out to dinner with them, they may say the following:

(Konban) shokuji ni ikimasen ka?

Shall we go out for a meal this evening?

You may want to discuss the kind of cuisine you are going to have. The following are some words for different types of cuisines:

Nihon-ryoori OR washoku

Japanese cuisine

Chuugoku-ryoori

Chinese cuisine

Furansu-ryoori

French cuisine

Itaria-ryoori

Italian cuisine

3. Deciding the time

After deciding where to go, you will probably talk about the time. You can use this formula

(Time) wa doo desu ka? *How about (time)?*

If you agree to the proposed time, you can say

Ee, ii desu yo. *Yes, that is fine*

Another way to discuss the time to meet is to use the following expression

(Time) ni shimashoo ka? *Shall we make it (time)?*

For example, if you want to suggest that you meet at 7:00 p.m., you can say

Shichi-ji ni shimashoo ka? *Shall we make it 7:00 p.m.?*

Note again that the particle **ni** is used after the time expression. The word **shimashoo** means 'let's do' and **shimashoo ka** means 'shall we ...?'

The expression **ni shimashoo ka** 'shall we make it ...?' is also frequently used to propose things other than time. For example

Baa ni shimashoo ka? *Shall we make it a bar?*

Chuugoku-ryoori ni shimashoo ka? *Shall we decide on Chinese food?*

When you want to express agreement to the above questions, you can say

(Ee), soo shimashoo. *Yes, let's do so*

4. Buying tickets

Tickets for major plays, sports, movies, etc. are usually available at **puree gaido** (プレート), which are located in department stores and other major shopping areas.

The expressions used in buying tickets for entertainment are similar to those used when buying train tickets except that you have to specify the date. Look at the following example

15-nichi no kippu 3-mai onegai shimasu.

Three tickets for (the performance) on the 15th

In some cases, especially in the case of plays, there are two performances per day, the afternoon performance (*hiru no bu* 昼の部) and the evening performance (*yoru no bu* 夜の部). Therefore, when you buy such a ticket, you will have to specify which performance you want a ticket for. Look at the following example:

Tooka no hiru no bu no kippu wa arimasu ka?
Do you have tickets available for the afternoon performance on the 10th?

5. How to ask someone to go out to dinner or for drinks

Japanese, especially men, often go out for a few drinks after work. It may happen that a Japanese colleague of yours will ask you to go out together after work. In that case, the person may say the following:

Konban nomi ni ikimasen ka? *Shall we go out for a drink/dinner tonight?*

If you feel like doing so, you can say:

Sore wa ii desu ne. *That would be great.*

If you don't feel like going, you can say:

Kyoo wa chotto... *Today is (not so good for me.)*

The Japanese may then propose a different day by saying:

Jaa, ashita wa doo desu ka? *How about tomorrow, then?*

The expression ...wa doo desu ka? is comparable to 'How about ...?' in English. Thus, when a Japanese proposes a place to go to, s/he may say:

(Place) wa doo desu ka? *How about (place)?*

If you can go out the next day, you can say:

(Ee), ii desu yo. *Fine.*

If you can't, then use the following expression:

Ashita mo chotto... *Tomorrow is also (not so good for me.)*

The Japanese may propose another day or s/he may give up inviting you, by saying:

Jaa, mata sono uchi ni. *Well, then, sometime in the near future.*

会話

Situation 1

中島: マーシャルさん、今晚、一緒に食事に行きませんか。
マーシャル: それはいいですね。どこへ行きましょうか?
中島: 中国料理はどうですか。
マーシャル: いいですね。
中島: じゃあ、いいレストランを知っていますから、そこへ行きましょう。何時にしましょうか。
マーシャル: 七時はどうですか。
中島: ええ、いいですよ。
マーシャル: じゃあ、私がアメリカンセンターへ行きます。
マーシャル: そうですか。じゃあ、お願いします。

Situation 2

田中: バーンズさん、相撲を見に行きませんか。
バーンズ: いいですね。いつですか。
田中: 土曜日です。
バーンズ: そうですか。残念ですが、土曜日はちょっと.....
田中: そうですか。日曜日も駄目ですか。
バーンズ: ああ、日曜日はいいですよ。
田中: じゃあ、日曜日にしましょう。赤坂見附の駅の前で、四時に会いましょう。
バーンズ: わかりました。日曜日、四時ですね。

Situation 3

スミス: 十五日の切符、三枚、お願いします。
日本人: 昼の部ですか、夜の部ですか。
スミス: 夜の部です。
日本人: では、こことここが残っています。
スミス: ここ、お願いします。
日本人: はい、二万円でございます。

Lesson 30

EXPRESSING APPRECIATION, REGRET AND OTHER SENTIMENTS

遅くなって申し訳ありません。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- express your appreciation for something someone has done for you
- apologize for something you have done or wish to do
- convey other sentiments

DIALOGS

KAIWA

Situation 1

Mr. Kelly, who dined at the Hashimotos' the previous evening, sees Mr. Hashimoto the next morning at the office.

Kerii: Kinoo wa taihen gochisoosama deshita. Totemo tanoshikatta desu. Doomo arigatoo gozaimashita.

That was a wonderful dinner yesterday. I had a great time. Thanks so much.

Hashimoto: Ie, ie, tondemo nai. Ohazukashii desu. Watakushi no hoo koso kiree na ohana o arigatoo gozaimashita.

Oh, no. It was nothing. It's embarrassing (not having been able to do more). It is I who must thank you for the beautiful flowers.

Kerii: lie, doo itashimashite. Okusama ni yoroshiku.

Don't mention it. Please give my regards to your wife.

Situation 2

Mr. Nelson arrives late for his appointment with Mr. Ogawa.

Neruson: Osoku natte, mooshiwake arimasen.

I'm very sorry I'm late.

Ogawa: Ie, ie.

That's all right.

Neruson: Tochuu de basu ga koshoo shimashita. Dakara, takushii de kimashita.

The bus broke down on the way, so I came by taxi.

Ogawa: Soo desu ka.
Sore wa taihen deshita ne.

Is that right? You must have had a difficult time.

Situation 3

Mr. Jackson has an appointment with Mr. Yamada today. Because some urgent business has come up, he calls Mr. Yamada on the telephone to postpone the appointment.

Jakuson:	Moshi moshi. Yamada-san desu ka? Watakushi, Jakuson desu.	<i>Hello. Mr. Yamada? Jackson speaking.</i>
Yamada:	Aa, Jakuson-san. Nan desu ka?	<i>Oh, Mr. Jackson. What is it?</i>
Jakuson:	Jitsu wa, kyuuyoo ga dekimashita. Dakara, mooshiwake arimasen ga, kyoo no yakusoku, ashita ni shite kudasaimasen ka.	<i>Well, I'm very sorry but something urgent has come up. So, could we postpone today's appointment until tomorrow?</i>
Yamada:	Ii desu yo. Jaa, ashita no gogo san-ji wa doo desu ka?	<i>Sure. How about three o'clock tomorrow afternoon?</i>
Jakuson:	Hai, kekkoo desu.	<i>That would be fine.</i>
Yamada:	Jaa, ashita.	<i>Then see you tomorrow.</i>
Jakuson:	Hontoo ni sumimasen. Jaa, ashita.	<i>I'm really sorry. See you tomorrow.</i>

VOCABULARY**KOTOBA****Dialogs**

totemo	very	とても
tanoshikatta	it was enjoyable (past tense of adjective tanoshii. See Notes.)	たのしかった
tondemonai	not at all	とんでもない
ohazukashii	I am embarrassed	おはずかしい
watakushi no hoo koso	it is I who...	わたくしのほうこそ
kiree na	beautiful	きれいな
osoku natte	being late	おそくなつて
mooshiwake arimasen	I am very sorry (formal)	もうしわけありません
tochuu	on the way	とちゅう
dakara	therefore	だから
taihen deshita ne	you must have had a difficult time	たいへんでしたね
jitsu wa	actually	じつは
kyuuyoo	urgent business	きゅうよう
dekimashita	came up, arose (past tense of dekimasu)	できました
yakusoku	engagement, appointment	やくそく

Practice

ototoi	the day before yesterday	おととい
senjitsu	the other day	せんじつ
kono aida	the other day	このあいだ
eega	movie	えいが
omoshirokatta	it was fun (past tense of adjective omoshiroi)	おもしろかった
omedetoo gozaimasu	congratulations (see Notes)	おめでとうございます
osaki ni	before you, after you (see Notes)	おさきに
itadakimasu	'I will receive' (see Notes)	いただきます
odaiji ni	Take care of yourself. (see Notes)	おだいじに
ki o tsukete	Be careful. (see Notes)	きをつけて

PRACTICE

RENSHUU

A. Substitution Drill

Kiree na ohana o arigatoo gozaimashita.

Purezento
Kippu
Kiree na hon
Oishii chokoreeto
Chizu
Odenwa

B. Substitution Drill

Kinoo wa taihen gochisoosama deshita.

Ototoi
Senjitsu
Kono aida
Do-yoobi
Nichi-yoobi

C. Substitution Drill

Osoku natte mooshiwake arimasen.

sumimasen
sumimasen deshita
mooshiwake arimasen
mooshiwake arimasen deshita

D. E-J Substitution Drill

Ashita no gogo san-ji wa doo desu ka?

Monday afternoon
eight o'clock on Wednesday
next Friday
the day after tomorrow
about four o'clock
next week
after two o'clock
nine o'clock tomorrow
next Tuesday

E. Response Drill

Round 1

Example:

Instructor: Kinoo wa tanoshikatta desu ka?

Student: Hai, tanoshikatta desu.

教師用

おとといは寒かったですか。

あそこの夏は蒸し暑かったです。

映画は面白かったです。

お刺身はおいしかったですか。

駅は遠かったです。

本は安かったです。

スーノケースは重かったです。

あそこの夏は涼しかったですか。

あの料理は辛かったです。

あそこの冬は暖かかったです。

Round 2

Example:

Instructor: Kinoo wa tanoshikatta desu ka?

Student: Iie, tanoshiku arimasen deshita.

F. What Should You Say?

Directions:

Choose the appropriate Japanese response to the situation described in English.

1. When someone is getting married, you say:

- a. Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.
- b. Omedetoo gozaimasu.

2. When you want someone to go ahead of you, you say:

- a. Osaki ni doozo.
- b. Osaki ni shitsuree shimasu.

3. Before you start eating, you say:

- a. Gochisoosama deshita.
- b. Itadakimasu.

4. When someone offers you tea and you don't want any, you say:
 - a. **Hai, kekkoo desu.**
 - b. **Iie, kekkoo desu.**
5. When someone is going out driving on an icy road, you say:
 - a. **Odaiji ni.**
 - b. **Ki o tsukete.**
6. When you want to excuse yourself from a meeting, you say:
 - a. **Shitsuree shimasu.**
 - b. **Shitsuree desu ga...**
7. When someone calls your home asking for your wife/husband and s/he is not at home, you say:
 - a. **Zannen desu ga, kanai/shujin wa ima orimasen ga...**
 - b. **Ainiku desu ga, kanai/shujin wa ima orimasen ga...**

READING REVIEW

KANJI

- | | |
|---------|-------------|
| 1. 予約 | 6. 注意 |
| 2. 空車 | 7. 駐車禁止 |
| 3. 非常口 | 8. 発売中止 |
| 4. 改札口 | 9. 一方通行 |
| 5. 横断歩道 | 10. 六本木方面出口 |

USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

1. When you visit a Japanese home

When a Japanese visits someone's home, the person usually brings a little gift with them such as candy, cookies, etc. Although Japanese may not expect a foreigner to do the same, it is often a good idea to follow suit. Such gifts are usually given right after exchanging greetings.

When a Japanese greets you at the genkan 'entrance hall,' the person will probably say **Irasshai** 'welcome' first. Other greeting expressions used in this situation are exactly the same as those you would use elsewhere, e.g., **konnichiwa**, **atsui desu ne**, etc. When you meet your friend's family members for the first time, you have to, of course, introduce yourself. When you want to give the gift you have brought with you, you can say **Kore o doozo** 'This is for you' (lit. '[take] this please.'). When a Japanese leads you to the living room, the person will probably say something like the following:

(Doozo) kochira e. OR Kochira e doozo.	<i>This way, please.</i>
--	--------------------------

2. When you want to take leave

When you want to take leave, you can say **Sorosoro shitsuree shimasu** 'Please excuse me, (I have to go now).' In most cases, the Japanese will probably ask you to stay longer by saying something like **Mada yoroshii deshoo?** 'Can't you stay a little longer?' Although it is possible to respond by saying **Iie** 'No', that expression sounds too direct and can be offending, for you are expected to decline an offer in an indirect manner. Perhaps a safer expression to use in this situation would be something like **Ee, demo...** 'Yes, but...', which indicates that you really want to stay longer but you have to leave (because you have something to do) or that you are afraid that you have stayed too long or that you have taken too much of your friend's time.

When you leave the house, the Japanese may ask you to come again by saying something like **Mata kite kudasai** 'Please come again.' Before saying **sayoonara**, it will be a good idea to thank the Japanese for the invitation by saying **(Kyoo wa) doomo arigatoo gozaimashita**.

3. When you have a Japanese guest

Most of the things that have been discussed above hold when you have a Japanese guest.

When you greet the Japanese, say **Irasshai**. Your Japanese guest may bring a little gift. Receive it graciously and say **Doomo arigatoo gozaimasu**. It should be noted, however, that you are not supposed to open the gift on receipt as you would do in the U.S. (Ask your instructor about this Japanese custom.) When you lead the person to your living room, you can say **Kochira e doozo**. When the person says that s/he would like to leave, ask him/her to stay longer by saying **Mada ii deshoo?** When the person leaves the house, ask him/her to visit you again by saying **Mata kite kudasai**.

4. **Tanoshikatta desu** '*I had a wonderful time.*' (lit., *It was enjoyable.*)

Tanoshikatta desu is the past tense for Tanoshii desu (lit., '*It is enjoyable.*'). The negative form for Tanoshikatta desu is Tanoshiku arimasen deshita (lit., '*It was not enjoyable.*'). True adjectives change form in this way. For example, tooi 'far' changes as follows:

Tooii desu.	<i>It is far.</i>
Tooku arimasen.	<i>It is not far.</i>
Tookatta desu.	<i>It was far.</i>
Tooku arimasen deshita.	<i>It was not far.</i>

5. **Other sentiments**

You may hear or have occasion to use the following expressions while in Japan. Discuss with your instructor how to use these expressions appropriately.

- a. **Omedetoo gozaimasu.** *Congratulations.*
This expression is used for weddings, graduations, promotions, births, birthdays, passing entrance exams and other happy occasions.
- b. **Shitsuree shimasu.** *Excuse me. (lit., I'll do something rude.)*
Generally, this is used when you are joining or leaving other people (e.g., entering a room, excusing yourself, etc.).
- c. **Shitsuree desu ga...** *Excuse me. (lit., It is rude, but...)*
This expression is used prior to asking personal questions (e.g., Shitsuree desu ga, donata desu ka?).
- d. **Zannen desu.** *I'm sorry. (lit., It is regrettable.)*
This is used to express regret, not anger. For example, it may be used after an exam is failed, after a party is missed, or when someone is absent when you visit their home.
- e. **Doozo osaki ni.** *Please go before me.*
Saki literally means 'first.' This expression is used when you ask someone to walk ahead of you or to do something else before you.
- f. **Osaki ni shitsuree shimasu.** *Please excuse my going before you.*
This expression is used whenever you do something before someone who is with you (e.g., walking through a doorway, getting up from a table, etc.).

Lesson 30 Expressing appreciation, regret and other sentiments

- g. **Odaiji ni.** *Take good care of yourself.*
This expression is used whenever leaving the company of someone who is in poor health.
- h. **Ogenki de.** *Good luck (to you). Take care.*
This expression is used to say 'good-bye' to a social acquaintance you do not expect to see again soon.
- i. **Ki o tsukete.** *Be careful.*
This is used to urge someone to drive, walk, climb stairs, travel or do other things carefully and safely.
- j. **Itadakimasu.**
'I am going to eat /drink.' This expression is used before one starts to eat or drink. Literally, it means '*I will receive.*'
- k. **Gochisoosama deshita.**
This means '*It was a feast.*' This is used when someone has finished his/her meal or drink to express gratitude.

会話

Situation 1

ケリー: きのうは大変ご馳走さまでした。とても楽しかったです。
どうもありがとうございました。

橋本: いえいえ、とんでもない。お恥ずかしいです。
私のほうこそ、きれいなお花をありがとうございました。

ケリー: いいえ、どういたしまして。奥様によろしく。

Situation 2

ネルソン: おそくなって、申し訳ありません。

小川: いえいえ。

ネルソン: 途中でバスが故障しました。だから、タクシーで来ました。

小川: そうですか。それは大変でしたね。

Situation 3

ジャクソン: もしもし。山田さんですか。私、ジャクソンです。

山田: ああ、ジャクソンさん。何ですか。

ジャクソン: 実は、急用ができました。だから、申し訳ありませんが、
今日の約束、あしたにしてくださいませんか。

山田: いいですよ。じゃあ、あしたの午後三時はどうですか。

ジャクソン: はい、結構です。

山田: じゃあ、あした。

ジャクソン: 本当に済みません。じゃあ、あした。

REVIEW LESSON:**MAKING IT WORK(3)**

This is a review lesson. You will be asked to act out or make up a conversation with the instructor based on the situations listed below. Try to use the expressions you have learned so far as appropriately as possible.

What do you say or do in the following situations?

1. You are on a train and want to know the name of the next stop.
2. You want to find out where the nearest subway station is.
3. You want to buy a train ticket to Shinjuku 3-chome and you need to find out which vending machine to use.
4. You want to find out how much the train fare to Shinjuku 3-chome is.
5. You are on the platform of a station and want to find out which side the Shinjuku 3-chome train comes in on.
6. You want to find out if the train coming in stops at Shinbashi.
7. You are on the subway during rush hour and want to ask people to get out of your way so that you can get off at your stop.
8. You want to go to Shinjuku by subway and need to find out whether or not you have to change trains if you go from Shinbashi.
9. You are on a bus and want to find out at which exit of the train station the taxi stand is located.
10. You are on a bus and want to find out how many more stops there are before you get to Akasaka Mitsuke.
11. You want to find out where the north exit of the station is.
12. You are in a taxi which is approaching your destination and you want to tell the driver to stop at the next traffic light.
13. You want a hotel clerk to call a taxi for you.
14. You don't understand the response of a Japanese person to your request for directions.
15. You are asking a Japanese for the way to a place and you want to ask the person to draw you a map.
16. You want to buy a sweater for your child and want to find out where in the department store they sell sweaters.
17. A store clerk showed you a sweater but you want to see the same sweater in different colors.
18. You are in a camera shop and a clerk showed you a camera but you want to see smaller and less expensive ones.
19. You have seen several cameras in a store and you would like to buy one of them.
20. You are in a camera shop and want to ask the clerk to show you the camera that is the third one from the left in the showcase.

Review Lesson: Making It Work (3)

21. You are doing some shopping in a store but you don't understand what the clerk is saying, so you want to ask if there is an English-speaking clerk in the store.
22. You have bought several items in a store and want to find out the total price.
23. You are in a restaurant and want to find out if they serve curried rice.
24. You have been sitting at a table in a restaurant for some time but no waiter/waitress seems to have noticed that you want to be helped.
25. You are in a tea parlor with one of your American friends and you want to order American coffee for two.
26. You have finished your meal in a restaurant and want to leave but the waiter/waitress hasn't brought you the bill yet.
27. You are at the front desk of a ryokan and want to find out if they have a room available.
28. You are staying at a ryokan and want to ask a front-desk clerk where you can buy film.
29. You are calling a Japanese company and want to ask for Mr. Kita who works in the sales department.
30. You receive a call from a Japanese person at your office but don't understand what s/he is saying, so you want to transfer the call to a Japanese-speaking person.
31. You are calling one of your Japanese friends at his house but the person who answered is someone other than your friend and s/he doesn't speak English.
32. You receive a call at home and the person on the phone asks for you.
33. You are introduced to Japanese people.
34. You want to introduce Mr. and Mrs. Jones to a Japanese person.
35. You and one of your Japanese friends have started home together and you want to say goodbye to him/her when you part.
36. You meet your neighbor when you go to work in the morning and you want to greet him/her.
37. The electricity in your apartment is not working and you want your resident manager to come up and check.
38. Your tape recorder is broken and you take it to an electrical appliance store for repair.
39. You want to buy two theater tickets for the 10th.
40. You want to buy a Shinkansen ticket to Shin Osaka.
41. Apologize to your Japanese friend for arriving late for your appointment.
42. Say that you want to speak to Mr. Yamada.
43. You want to know whom you are talking to. Ask politely.
44. Give a gift to someone.
45. Say "Good luck to you".
46. Take leave from someone's home.
47. Decline an offer in an indirect manner.
48. Ask someone to visit you again.

49. Welcome a guest at the entrance to your house.
50. Lead a guest to your living room.
51. Invite a guest to stay longer.
52. Congratulate someone.
53. Take leave of someone.
54. Express regret.
55. Say 'take good care of yourself.'
56. Tell someone to be careful.
57. What do you say when you are about to eat or drink?
58. After having finished eating or drinking, express your gratitude.
59. Thank a Japanese friend for a favor received.
60. What do you say when you do something before someone else who is with you?

Sayonara!

Review Lesson: Making It Work (3)

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

A

		Lesson
aa	Oh!	3
achira	over there, yonder	7
agatte	go up (TE form of agarimasu)	11
ageta	fried	23
aimashoo	let's meet	29
ainiku desu ga	It's unfortunate, but. . .	17
airon	iron	28
aisukuriimu	ice cream	3
aka	red	22
akai	red	18
aki	fall	20
akusesarii	accessory	17
amai	sweet	23
ame	rain	28
Amerikan Sentaa	American Center	5
annaijo	information desk	16
ano	that (over there)	8
anoo	uh, well (indicates hesitation)	16
aoi	blue	18
are	that (thing over there)	3
arerugii	allergy	27
arigatoo	thank you	2
arigatoo gozaimasu	thank you (polite)	8
arimasu	there is /are, have (used with objects but not people)	4
aruite	on foot, walking (TE form of arukimasu)	10
asatte	the day after tomorrow	28
ashi	foot, leg	27
ashita	tomorrow	26
asoko	over there	7
asupirin	aspirin	16
atama	head	27
atatakai	warm	20
atchi	that way (over there)	7
atsui	hot	20, 23

B

...ban	number...	11
...bansen	(track) number	3
...bansen	line/platform/track number...	12
basu	bus	2
basu-tee	bus stop	13
benpi	constipation	27
bifuteki	beefsteak	4
biifu	beef	23
biiru	beer	18
bijutsukan	art museum	9
biru	building	3
biza	visa	25
bu	department	25
buchoo	department head	25
bunboogu	stationery	16
burausu	blouse	17
...byaku	...hundred (san-byaku)	11

C

chigaimasu	wrong, different	1
chigau	different	17
chiisai	small	17
chika	basement	16
chikadoo	underground passage	14
chikai	is near	10
chikatetsu	subway	7
chippu	tip	23
chizu	map	4
choo	intestine	27
choome	chome (counter of blocks/streets)	8
chotto	a little	4
chotto	Excuse me (may I have your attention?)	27
chotto mae ni	a little while ago	20
chotto (soko made)	just over there (answers 'where are you going?' used as a greeting)	20

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

Chuo-sen	Chuo-line	12
Chuugoku-ryoori	Chinese cuisine	29
D		
daijoobu	all right, no problem	27
dakara	therefore	30
dake	only	17
dame	no good, won't do, bad	29
de	by means of	10
de	at	15
de	by means of	3
de gozaimasu	is/are/am (very deferential)	16
deguchi	exit	14
de irasshaimasu	is/are (very polite)	17
dekimashita	came up, arose (past tense of dekimasu)	30
dekimasu	be ready	28
demae	delivery of prepared food	23
demasen	not come out (negative form of demasu)	28
denchi	battery	28
denki	electricity	28
denki kamisori	electric shaver	28
denki-ya	electrician, electric appliance repairman	28
denki yoohin	electric appliance	16
densha	electric train	10
dentaku	electric calculator	28
denwa	telephone	7
denwa shimasu	make a phone call	26
depaato	department store	4
deshita	was/were (past tense of desu)	28
deshoo	be probably	27
desu	is /am /are	1
dete	leave, go out (TE form of demasu)	14
dezaato	dessert	22
. . .do	degree (of temperature)	20
doko	where	2
dokoka	somewhere	20

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

donata	who? (polite)	24
dono	which?	14
doo itashimashite	you're welcome	2
doo shimashita ka?	what's the matter?	27
doomo	thanks	2
doomo arigatoo	thank you very much	2
doomo arigatoo gozaimasu	thank you very much	13
doomo sumimasen	I'm sorry, pardon me	24
...doori	... street, ...avenue	8
doozo	please, go ahead, feel free	12
doozo yoroshiku	Please to meet you. (lit., I ask your favor/good treatment)	5
dore	which one?	23
dotchi	which way?	14
do-yoobi	Saturday	5
E		
e	to, towards	10
ebi	shrimp, prawn	18
ee	yes (less formal than hai)	2
eega	movie	30
Eego	English (language)	4
eegyoo	sales	25
eegyoo-ka	sales department	25
eeto...	Let me see... (hesitation word)	7
en	yen	11
erebeetaa	elevator	7
esukareetaa	escalator	16
F		
fooku	fork	22
fujin	woman (formal)	16
fuirumu	film	3
fuku	clothing	16
...fun	minute(s)	10
furoshiki	square cloth for wrapping things	3
futa-ri	two persons	21

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

futatsu-me no...	the second... .	8
futsuka	second day of the month, two days	20
futsuu-sha	coach car	12
futsuu	local train (lit., usual)	12
fuyu	winter	20
 G		
ga	(subject marker)	3
ga	but (functions like English semicolon)	11
gaijin	foreigner	10
Gaimushoo	Foreign Ministry	9
gakkoo	school	7
...gatsu	month (in month names)	20
geri	diarrhea	27
geta	wooden clogs	3
getsu-yoobi	Monday	5
go	five	1
gochisoosama	thank you for the good food (polite)	23
gochuumon	(your) order (polite)	22
gogo	p.m.	28
gohan	cooked rice	23
go-ji	five o'clock	10
gomen kudasai	excuse me; hello (anyone there?); good-bye	20
goro	approximately	26
goshujin	(someone else's) husband	5
gozaimasu	there is /are, have (deferential form of arimasu)	4
...guchi	gate, door, exit (phonetic variant of kuchi 'mouth')	14
gurai	approximately, about	10
guramu	gram	18
guriin sarada	green salad	22
guriin-sha	first-class (lit., green car)	12
gyoosee	administration	25
gyoosee-bu	administrative section	25
gyuuniku	beef	18
 H		
ha?	pardon? (I don't understand)	2

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

ha	tooth	27
hachi	eight	1
hachi-ji	eight o'clock	10
hai	yes	1
hai	lung	27
haien	pneumonia	27
hajimemashite	How do you do? Glad to meet you. (lit., It's the first time.)	5
hajime no... .	the first... .	8
hakike ga shimasu	feel nauseous	27
han	half	10
hana	nose	27
hankachi	handkerchief	18
hare	sunny	28
haru	spring	20
hatsuka	twentieth day of the month, twenty days	20
heya	room	4
hi (.. .bi)	day	28
hidari	left	4
hidari ni magaru	turn left	4
higashi	east	14
hiji	elbow	27
hijooguchi	emergency exit	7
hikooki	air plane	10
hiru no bu	afternoon performance	29
hisho	secretary	5
hito	person	4
hito-ri	one person, single	4
hitotsu	one	10
hito-yama	a pile	19
hiza	knee	27
hon	book	16
hon (.. .bon, . . .pon)	counter for long, thin objects	22
hontoo ni	truly	20
hontoo	true	20
hon-ya	bookstore	7

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

hoo	direction, way, toward	9
hoomu	platform	12
hoorensoo	spinach	19
hooseki	jewel/jewelry	16
hyaku	hundred	11
I		
i	stomach	16
ichi	one	1
ichi-do	one time, once	1
ichi-gatsu	January	20
ichi-ji	one o'clock	10
ichi-nichi	one day	28
ichi-wa	a bunch	19
ii	good, O.K.	4
iie	no	1
ikaga	how?	17
ikaiyoo	stomach ulcer	27
ikeba	if (you) go	10
...iki	(train) bound for...	12
ikimasen	doesn't/don't go	12
ikimashoo	let's go	27
ikimasu	go	9
ikitain desu ga	(I) want to go (TAI form of ikimasu)	11
ik-kagetsu	one month	28
ik-ko	one	19
iku	go (dictionary form of ikimasu)	10
ikura	how much?	11
ikutsu-me	which one (in a numbered series)	13
ima	now	19
imasen	there is not/are not (people or animals)	4
imasu	there is/are (people or animals)	4
irasshai	welcome	28
irasshaimase	welcome (polite)	4
irasshaimasu	is/are (polite)	24
iriguchi	entrance	14

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

iro	color	17
isha	doctor	27
issho ni	together	21
is-shuukan	one week	28
itadakimasu	'I will receive.' (see Notes)	30
itai	painful, hurts	27
itashimashoo ka	(what) shall I do/make? (deferential)	21
itsu	when	28
itsuka	fifth day of the month, five days	20
itte (i)rasshai	good-bye (used by the one staying behind; lit., 'go and come')	20
itte kudasai	please say	1
itte	go (TE form of ikimasu)	4
itte	say (TE form of iimasu)	17
itte mairimasu	I'm going out. (lit., I'll go and come back.)	20
itsutsu	five	10
itsutsu-me	fifth	13
iya	nasty, unpleasant	20
J		
jaa	well (then)	3
jaa, mata	so long, see you again later	20
ja arimasen	am /is /are not	3
jidoo hanbaiki	vending machine	11
jiko	accident	27
jinja	shrine	3
jinji	personnel (affairs)	25
jinji-ka	personnel section/department	25
jitsu wa	actually	30
jiyuu-seki	unreserved seat	12
JR	Japan Railway	12
JR-sen	Metropolitan Railway (of Japan Railway)	8
juu	ten	1
juu ichi-ji	eleven o'clock	10
juu-ji	ten o'clock	10
juu ni-ji	twelve o'clock	10

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

K

ka	(indicates a question)	1
ka	section	25
ka	or	13
kaban	luggage	16
Kabukiza	Kabuki Theater	8
kachoo	division chief	25
kado	corner	4
kagu	furniture	16
kai	(counter for) floor, story	16
kaidan	stairway	11
kaisatsuguchi	gate (at station)	11
kaisoku	express train	12
kaisuu-ken	coupon tickets	11
kaite	write, draw (TE form of kakimasu)	4
kaite kudasai	please write	4
kakarichoo	section chief	25
kakarimasu	take (time)	28
kakato	heel(s)	28
kakueki	local train	12
kamera	camera	3
kanai	(one's own) wife	5
kara	because	12
kara	from	8
karai	hot and spicy	23
karee-raisu	curried rice	4
kashikomarimashita	certainly, of course (response to a request)	3
kata	shoulder	27
katachi	form, style, model	17
kateeyoohin	household goods	16
katsudon	katsudon (a bowl of rice topped with a fried pork cutlet)	3
katte	buy (TE form of kaimasu)	21
katte kudasaimasen ka	won't you buy (it) for me?	11
kauntaa	counter	18
kawarimasu	change	26

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

ka-yoobi	Tuesday	5
kaze	a cold	16
kaze-gusuri	cold medicine	16
keeri-ka	accounting section	25
keesatsu	police	27
keezai	economics	25
keezai-bu	economic section	25
keganin	injured person	27
kekko(desu)	that's O K , that's fine	18
keshoohin	cosmetics	16
ketsuatsu	blood pressure	27
kimasu	come	18
kimochi ga warui desu	feel sick, sick in stomach	27
kimono	Japanese native clothing	3
kin-yoobi	Friday	5
ki o tsukete	Be careful	30
kippu	ticket	11
kiree na	beautiful, pretty	30
kirikizu	cut, wound	16
kiro	kilogram/kilometer	18
kissaten	tea parlor, coffee shop	4
kita	north	14
kite	come (TE form of kimasu)	21
kochira	this way	7
kochira	this (thing, person) (polite)	5
kochira	here (polite)	23
kodomo	child	16
kodomo-tachi	children	20
koko	here	2
kokonoka	ninth day of the month, nine days	20
kokonotsu	nine	10
Kokumushoo	State Department	5
komatta na	it's a problem, I don't know what to do /say	3
konbanwa	good evening	1
konde imasu	be crowded	28
konnichiwa	good day, good afternoon	1

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

kono	this	9
kono aida	the other day	30
kono chikaku	near here, close by	4
kono hen	this vicinity, this area	7
kooban	police box	7
koo-ketsuatsu	high blood pressure	27
koora	cola	22
koosaten	intersection	8
kooshuu denwa	public telephone	7
kore	this (thing)	1
koshi	lower back	27
koshoo shimashita	be broken, be out of order	28
kotchi	this way	7
kowaremashita	be broken	28
ku	nine	1
kubi	neck	27
kuchi	mouth	27
kudari	down-train	12
kudasai	please (usually used after TE form of a verb)	4
kudasaimase	please (very polite)	19
kudasaimasen ka	won't you please	21
ku-ji	nine o'clock	10
kumori	cloudy	28
kuru	come (dictionary form of kimasu)	26
kuruma	car, automobile	10
kusuri	medicine, drug	16
kusuri-ya	drugstore	7
kutsu	shoe(s)	16
kyabetsu	cabbage	19
kyoo	today	20
kyuu	nine	1
kyuukoo	express train	12
kyuukyuusha	ambulance	27
kyuuri	cucumber	19
kyuuyoo	urgent business	30

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

M

madamada	not yet, still	5
made	until, as far as	10
madoguchi	(sales) window	11
mae	front, in front of	7
mae	before	10
magarimasu	turn	9
magaruto	after having turned	4
magatta tokoro desu	it's at the place (you) turn	9
magatte	turn (TE form of magarimasu)	9
maguro	tuna fish	23
mai	counter for flat objects	11
maido arigatoo gozaimasu	thank you very much (used by shop clerks)	19
man	ten thousand	18
Marunouchi-sen	Marunouchi line	14
massugu	straight	4
massugu itta tokoro desu	go straight (then, you'll see it)	9
mata	again	18
matte	wait (TE form of machimasu)	22
matte ite kudasai	please (remain) waiting	27
me	eye	27
meeshi	name card, calling card, business card	5
meetoru	meter(s)	10
megane	eyeglasses	16
memai ga shimasu	I feel dizzy	27
menyuu	menu	21
michi	street, road, way	4
midiamu	medium (steak)	22
miemasu	is visible, can be seen	10
migi	right (side)	4
mikan	tangerine, mandarin orange	18
mikisaa	mixer	28
mikka	third day of the month, three days	20
mikkusu sarada	mixed salad	22
mimi	ear	27

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

minami	south	14
minamiguchi	south gate	14
miruku	milk	3
misete	show (TE form of misemasu)	17
mite	look, see (TE form of mimasu)	17
mite iru	is/am looking	17
mittsu-me	the third	8
mizu	water	28
mo	also, too	4
moku-yoobi	Thursday	5
mono	person (humble)	26
moo	more, again, further	1
mooshiwake arimasen	I am very sorry (formal)	30
moshi moshi	hello (on the phone)	24
muika	sixth day of the month, six days	20
mukoo	yonder, over there	2
mune	chest	27
muttsu	six	10
muttsu-me	sixth	13
muzukashii	difficult	20
myaku (haku)	pulse	27

N

nagaremasen	does not flow (negative form of nagaremasu)	28
nagashi	kitchen sink	28
naifu	knife	22
naisen	extension (telephone)	25
namee	name	15
nama no	raw	23
nan	what?	1
nana	seven	1
nanatsu	seven	10
nanatsu-me	seventh	13
nan-ban	what number	28
nan-bansen	which line/platform/track	12
nan-gai	which floor	16

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

nanika	some kind of, something	26
nan-ji	what time?	10
nan-nin	how many people?	21
nan-nin-sama	how many people? (polite)	21
nanoka	seventh day of the month, seven days	20
nan-yoobi	what day (of the week)	5
naoshite	fix, repair (TE form of naoshimasu)	28
narimasu	become	19
narimasen	doesn't become (negative of narimasu)	18
nasaimasu	do, make (polite)	21
nashi	pear	19
natsu	summer	20
ne	isn't it? (asks for confirmation)	5
nekutai	necktie	16
nemashita	went to sleep, went to bed (past tense of nemasu)	20
netsu	fever	27
NHK	Japan Broadcasting Corporation	24
ni	two	1
ni	at, in, to	4
nichi-yoobi	Sunday	5
nigai	bitter	23
Nihon	Japan	1
Nihongo	Japanese language	3
Nihon Ryokoo	Japan Travel	25
ni-ji	two o'clock	10
niku	meat	18
ningyoo	doll	3
ninjin	carrot	19
...ninmae	counter for servings or portions of a dish	22
nishi	west	14
nita	cooked in broth (Japanese-style)	23
no	of (indicates that word before no describes word after no)	4
...no	...one	17
nobori	up-train	12
noborimasu	climb, go up	14

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

...no chikaku	the vicinity of...	9
node	since, because	30
nodo	throat	27
nokotte imasu	remain, be left (TE form of nokorimasu)	29
nonde	drink (TE form of nomimasu)	27
noriba	(bus) stop, (taxi) stand	2
norikae	a change (of trains, etc.)	14
norikaete	change, transfer (trains, buses, etc.) (TE form of norikaemasu)	14

O

o	(marks the object of a verb)	9
oazukari itashimasu	I'm taking (deferential)	19
obi	Japanese sash used for kimono	3
ocha	(green) tea	22
odaiji ni	take care of yourself (see Notes)	30
odekake desu	go out (polite)	20
odenwa itashimasu	make a telephone call (very deferential)	26
Ogenki desu ka?	How are you? (lit., Are you well?)(polite)	1
(o)hashi	chopsticks	3
Ohayoo gozaimasu	good morning	1
ohazukashii	I am embarrassed	30
(o)hitori-sama	one person, single (polite)	4
oisha-san	doctor	27
oishii	good (tasting), delicious	23
(o)joozu	skillful, good	5
okaeri desu ka?	are you going home? (polite)	20
okaerinasai	Welcome home (used by the one who stayed behind)	20
okaeshi de gozaimasu	your change is... (deferential)	19
(o)kane	money	3
okanjoo	bill, check	23
okimari desu ka	Have you decided (polite)	22
okimari ni narimashita ka	Have you decided? (very polite)	22
okome	(uncooked) rice	18
okotozuke	message	26

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

okujoo	roof	16
okusan	(someone else's) wife	5
okyaku-sama	customer (polite)	17
okyaku-san	guest, passenger, customer	13
omachi kudasai	please wait (polite)	4
omatase itashimashita	I'm sorry to have kept you waiting (deferential)	19
omatase shimashita	I'm sorry to have kept you waiting (deferential)	26
omedetoo gozaimasu	congratulations (see Notes)	30
omocha	toy	16
omodori ni narimasu	return (deferential)	26
omoi	heavy	20
omoshirokatta	it was fun (past tense of adjective omoshiroi)	30
onaka	abdomen	27
onamae	name (polite)	28
onegai shimasu	(may I have it) please	3
(o)nomimono	something to drink (polite)	22
ookii	big, large	15
origami	folding paper	3
orimasen	is not (here) (negative form of orimasu) (deferential form of imasu)	26
orimasu	get off, get down	13
orite	go down (TE form of orimasu)	14
osagashi desu	look for (very polite)	17
(o)sake	sake	4
osaki ni	before you, after you (see Notes)	30
(o)sashimi	sashimi (sliced raw fish)	3
oshiete	tell, teach (TE form of oshiemasu)	13
oshiete kudasaimasen ka	please tell me	13
oshiya	(subway, train) pusher	12
osoku	late (ku form of adjective osoi)	30
osumi desu ka?	are you finished? (polite)	23
(o)sushi	(a small, oblong piece of vinegared rice topped with raw fish, shellfish, etc. Commonly called nigiri .)	3
otaku	house (another's)	24
(o)tearai	bathroom, toilet, rest room	7
(o)tenki	weather	20

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

ototoi	the day before yesterday	30
otsunagi shimasu	I'll connect you (deferential)	25
otsuri	change (money)	19
oyasumi desu	rest, take a vacation (polite)	26
oyasuminasai	good night	20
 P		
pai	pie	22
petto	pet	16
pooku	pork	23
...pun	minute	10
...pyaku	...hundred (rop-pyaku and hap-pyaku)	11
 R		
raamen	ramen (Chinese noodles)	3
raishuu	next week	28
rajio	radio	3
rea	rare (steak)	22
reezooko	refrigerator	28
reji	cash register	23
rekoodo	record	3
renji	range, stove	28
rentogen	X-ray	27
resutoran	restaurant	4
retasu	lettuce	19
ringo	apple	18
roku	six	1
roku-ji	six o'clock	10
ryokoo	travel, trip	25
ryooji	consul	25
ryooji-bu	consular section	25
ryoojikan	consulate	5
 S		
saisho no...	the first...	8
saizu	size	17
sakana	fish	18

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

sakaya	wine merchant	18
saki	ahead, beyond	9
...sama	polite form of ...san	4
samui	cold	20
san	three	1
...san	Mr., Mrs., Ms.	1
sandoitchi	sandwich	21
san-ji	three o'clock	10
sarada	salad	21
sashoo	visa	25
sashoo-ka	visa section	25
sayoo de gozaimasu	that is correct (very polite)	24
Sayoonara	good-bye	1
seabyoo	VD	27
seeji	politics	25
seeji-bu	political section	25
seetaa	sweater	3
seki o hazushite imasu	is away from one's desk	26
sen	line	14
...sen	...line, track	12
sen	thousand	12
senaka	back	27
senjitsu	the other day	30
sensee	teacher, instructor	1
shachoo	president (lit., company head)	25
shatsu	shirt	17
shi	four	1
shichi	seven	1
shichi-ji	seven o'clock	10
shinbun	newspaper	21
shingoo	traffic light	7
Shinkansen	bullet train	12
shinshi	man, gentleman (formal)	16
shinzoobyoo	heart disease	27
shinzoomahi	heart attack	27
shiokarai	salty	23

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

shirabemasu	check up	28
shirabete	check up (TE form of shirabemasu)	28
shirimasen	doesn't/don't know	11
shiro	white	22
shiroi	white	18
shirubaa shiito	priority (lit., silver) seat	12
shita	under, below	17
shita	tongue	27
shitee-seki	reserved seat	12
shitsuree	rudeness	24
shitsuree desu ga...	excuse me, but...	5
shitsuree itashimashita	I'm sorry, I beg your pardon	19
shokken	meal ticket	21
shokujii	meal	29
shokuryoohin	groceries, foodstuffs	16
shooshoo	a little (polite)	19
shujin	(one's own) husband	5
shujutsu	operation	27
soba	soba (buckwheat noodles)	3
sochira	that way	7
soko	there	7
sono	its; that	8
soo	thus, so, correct	1
soo desu ka	I see	4
soo desu nee...	let me think for a minute	23
soomu-bu	department of general affairs	25
soosu	sauce	23
sore	that (thing)	3
soroban	abacus	3
sotchi	that way	7
sugi	after, past	10
sugimashita	passed	13
sugu	soon, right there	4
sugu soba	very near	8
suidoo	waterworks, plumbing	28
suidoo-ya	plumber	28

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

sui-yoobi	Wednesday	5
sukaafu	scarf	17
sukiyaki	sukiyaki (a beef and vegetable dish)	3
sukoshi	a little	17
sumimasen	excuse me, I'm sorry	1
sumimasen	excuse me	28
sumoo	sumoo wrestling	29
supagetti	spaghetti	4
suppai	sour	23
suteeki	steak	22
sutereo	stereo	28
suupaa	supermarket	15
suupaamaaketto	supermarket	15
suzushii	cool	20

T

tabako	tobacco, cigarettes	3
tabako-ya	tobacco shop	7
tadaima	I'm back (used by the one who has returned)	20
taihen	very	23
taihen deshita ne	you must have had a difficult time	30
taion	body temperature	27
taishikan	embassy	5
takushii	taxi	2
tanoshikatta	it was enjoyable (past tense of adjective tanoshii)	30
tasukete!	help!	27
tatte kudasai	please stand	7
te	hand	27
tee-ketsuatsu	low blood pressure	27
teeki-ken	season pass, commuter ticket	11
ten	point (in decimals)	18
tendon	tendon (a bowl of rice topped with fried prawns)	3
tenpura	tempura (deep fried food)	3
terebi	television	3
teriyaki	teriyaki (meat broiled with teriyaki sauce)	3
to	and	12

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

to	to, toward	26
tochuu	on the way	30
tokee	watch, clock	16
tokkyuu	super express train	12
tokubajoo	bargain/budget floor	16
tomarimasu	stop/stops	12
tomarimasen	doesn't/don't stop	12
tomato	tomato	19
tomemasu	stop	15
tomemashoo ka?	(where) shall I stop?	15
tomete	stop (TE form of tomemasu)	15
tonari	next to	7
tondemonai	not at all	30
too	ten	10
tooi	is far	10
tooka	tenth day of the month, ten days	20
tooku arimasen	is not far	10
...to omoimasu	think that . . .	26
toosutaa	toaster	28
tori	chicken	23
toro	fatty part of tuna	23
totemo	very	30
tsuyu	rainy season	20
tsugi	next	2
tsugi no kado	next corner	4
tsugi no tsugi	the one after next	13
tsuitachi	first day of the month	20
tsuitara	when (we) arrive (TARA form of tsukimasu)	13
tsurete itte agemashoo	I'll take you there	8
tsukiatarai	end of a street, dead end, 'T' intersection	9
tsukimasen	does not light up, does not turn on (negative form of tsukimasu)	28
tsumetai	cold	23
Tsuusanshoo	M.I.T.I. (Ministry of International Trade and Industry)	5

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

U

uchiwa	Japanese fan	3
ude	arm	27
ue	above, top	17
uisukii	whisky	3
unchin (ryookin) seesanjo	fare adjustment window	11
uriba	ticket window (lit., selling place)	11
ushiro	back	7

W

wa	(follows topic of clause or sentence)	1
...wa?	what about . . . ?	15
wain	wine	22
waishatsu	man's dress shirt	19
wakarimasen	not understand (negative form of wakarimasu)	1
wakarimashita	I understand (lit., I understood)	10
wakarimasu	understand	1
wakaru	understand (dictionary form of wakarimasu)	4
wan pakku	one pack	18
watakushi	I, me	1
watakushi no hoo koso	it is I who . . .	30
watashimashita	handed over	19

Y

yaita	grilled	23
yakedo	burn	16
yakitori	broiled chicken on skewers	22
yakusoku	engagement, appointment	30
yasai	vegetables	23
yasui	cheap, inexpensive	17
yasuku	cheap (ku form of yasui)	18
yasunde imasu	be resting, taking leave (TE form of yasumimasu)	26
yasunde ite	(remain) resting (TE form of yasumimasu)	27
yattsu	eight	10
yattsu-me	eighth	13
yo	(shows emphasis)	2

JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

yo-ji	four o'clock	10
yokka	fourth day of the month, four days	20
yoku	well	3
yon	four	1
yonde	call (TE form of yobimasu)	15
yo-nin	four people	21
yooka	eighth day of the month, eight days	20
yoru no bu	evening performance	29
yottsu	four	10
yottsu-me	fourth	13
yubi	finger, toe	27
yuki	snow	28
yukkuri	slowly	2
yuuenchi	amusement park	16
Z		
zannen desu ga...	it's too bad, it's unfortunate	29
zasshi	magazine	21
...zen	thousand (san-zen)	12
zenbu	all	19
zenbu de	altogether	19
zero	zero	1

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

A

		Lesson
abacus	soroban	3
abdomen	onaka	27
about	gurai	10
above	ue	17
above...	...no ue	17
accessory	akusesarii	17
accident	jiko	27
accounting section	keeri-ka	25
administration	gyoosee	25
administrative section	gyoosee-bu	25
after	sugi	10
after you	osaki ni	30
afternoon performance	hiru no bu	29
again	mata	18
ago	mae	
a little while ago	chotto mae ni	
ahead	saki	9
air plane	hikooki	10
all	zenbu	19
all right	daijoobu	27
allergy	arerugii	27
also	mo	4
altogether	zenbu de	19
am	desu	1
I am ...	(watakushi wa) ...desu, ...de gozaimasu (deferential)	16
ambulance	kyuukyuusha	27
American Center	Amerikan Sentaa	5
American Embassy	Amerika Taishikan	5
amusement park	yuuенchi	16
and	to	12
April	shi-gatsu	20
apple	ringo	18
appointment	yakusoku	30
approximately	goro	26
approximately	gurai	10

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

are		
there are	imasu (animate), arimasu (inanimate), irasshaimasu (animate polite)	4 24
area		
this area	kono hen	7
arm	ude	27
arrive		
when (we) arrive	tsukimasu tsuitara	13 13
art museum	bijutsukan	9
aspirin	asupirin	16
at	de	4, 14
August	hachi-gatsu	20
automobile	kuruma	10
avenue		
...avenue	toori ... doori	8 8
away from one's desk	seki o hazushite imasu	26

B

back	ushiro	7
back		
lower back	senaka koshi	27 27
back		
I'm back	tadaima (used by the one who has returned)	20
bargain/budget floor	tokubajoo	16
basement	chika	16
bathroom	(o)tearai	7
battery	denchi	28
be ready	dekimasu	28
beautiful	kireena	30
because	kara	12
become	narimasu	19
beef	biifu, gyuuniku	18, 23
beefsteak	bifuteki	4
beer	biiru	18
before		
before you	mae osaki ni	7 30
below	shita	17
below...	... no shita	17
beyond	saki	9

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

big	ookii	15
bill	okanjoo	23
bitter	nigai	23
blood pressure	ketsuatsu	27
high blood pressure	koo ketsuatsu	27
low blood pressure	tee ketsuatsu	27
blouse	burausu	17
blowfish	fugu	22
blue	aoi	18
body temperature	taion	27
book	hon	16
bookstore	hon-ya	7
bound for...	...iki (train)	12
broiled	yaita	
broken, is out of order	koshoo shimashita	28
broken	kowaremashita	28
building	biru	3
bullet train	Shinkansen	12
burn	yakedo	16
bus	basu	2
bus stop	basu noriba, basu-tee	2, 13
business card	meeshi	5
but	ga	11
buy	kaimasu	21
won't you buy (it) for me?	katte kudasaimasen ka	11
by (means of)	de	3

C

cabbage	kyabetsu	19
carrot	ninjin	19
call	yobimasu	15
calling card	meeshi	5
camera	kamera	3
car	kuruma	10
cash register	reji	23
certainly	kashikomarimashita (response to a request)	3
change (of trains, etc.)	norikae	14
change (trains, etc.)	norikaemasu	14

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

change (money)	otsuri	19
change	kawarimasu	26
cheap	yasui	17
check	okanjoo	23
check up	shirabemasu	28
chest	mune	27
chicken	tori	23
child	kodomo	16
children	kodomo-tachi	20
Chinese cuisine	Chuugoku-ryoori	29
chome (counter of blocks/streets)	choome	8
chopsticks	(o)hashi	3
cigarettes	tabako	3
climb	noborimasu	14
clock	tokee	16
clothing	fuku	16
cloudy	kumori	28
coach car	futsuu-sha	12
coffee shop	kissaten	4
cola	koora	22
cold	kaze	16
cold	tsumetai	23
cold	samui	20
cold medicine	kaze-gusuri	16
color	iro	17
come	kimasu	18
come out	demasu	28
commuter ticket	teeki-ken	13
connect	tsunagimasu	25
I'll connect you (telephone)	otsunagi shimasu	25
constipation	benpi	27
consul	ryooji	25
consular section	ryooji-bu	25
consulate	ryoojikan	5
cooked rice	gohan	23
cooked (in broth)	nita (Japanese-style)	23

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

cool	suzushii	20
corner	kado	4, 8
correct that is correct	soo <i>sayoo de gozaimasu</i> (very polite)	1 24
cosmetics	keshoohin	16
counter	kauntaa	18
coupon tickets	kaisuu-ken	11
crowded	konde imasu	28
curried rice	karee-raisu	4
customer	okyaku-san, okyaku-sama	13, 17
cut, wound	kirikizu	13

D

day	hi (...bi)	28
one day	ichi-nichi	20
the first day of a month	tsuitachi	20
day after tomorrow	asatte	28
day before tomorrow	ototoi	30
December	juuni-gatsu	20
decide Have you decided?	kimarimasu <i>okimari desu ka</i> (polite)?	22
degree (of temperature)	...do	20
delicious	oishii	23
delivery (of prepared food)	demae	23
department	bu	25
department of general affairs	soomu-bu	25
department head	buchoo	25
department store	depaato	4
dessert	dezaato	22
diarrhea	geri	27
different (color)	chigau (iro)	17
difficult you must have had a difficult time	muzukashii <i>taihen deshita ne</i>	20 30
direction, toward	hoo	9
division chief	kachoo	25
do	nasaimasu (polite)	21
doctor	isha	27

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

doll	ningyoo	3
down-train	kudari	12
draw	kakimasu (a map)	4
please draw	kaite kudasai	4
drink	nomimasu	27
something to drink	nomimono, onomimono (polite)	22
drug	kusuri	16
drugstore	kusuri-ya	7
E		
ear	mimi	27
eat	tabemasu	
I am about to eat	itadakimasu	30
economic section	keezai-bu	25
economics	keezai	25
elbow	hiji	27
electricity	denki	28
electric appliance	denki yoohin	16
electric calculator	dentaku	28
electric shaver	denki kamisori	28
electric train	densha	10
electrician	denki-ya	28
elevator	erebeetaa	7
embarrassed	hazukashii	
I am embarrassed	ohazukashii desu	30
embassy	taishikan	5
emergency exit	hijooguchi	7
end of street	tsukiataru	9
engagement, appointment	yakusoku	30
English (language)	eego	4
enjoyable	tanoshii	30
entrance	iriguchi	14
escalator	esukareetaa	16
evening performance	yoru no bu	29
excuse me (may I have your attention)!	chotto!	27
exit	deguchi	14
express train	kaisoku, kyuukoo	12
extension (telephone)	naisen	25
eye	me	27

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

eyeglasses	megane	16
F		
fall	aki	20
fan (Japanese)	uchiwa	3
far	tooi	10
fare	unchin, ryookin	11
fare adjustment window	unchin (ryookin) seesanjo	11
fatty part of tuna	toro	23
February	ni-gatsu	20
feel		
feel dizzy	memai ga shimasu	27
feel nauseous	hakike ga shimasu	27
feel sick	kimochi ga warui desu	27
fever	netsu	27
film	fuirumu	3
fine (that's fine)	kekko desu	18
finger	yubi	27
finish	sumimasu	23
first...	saisho no..., hajime no...	8
first-class	guriin-sha (lit., green car)	12
fish	sakana	18
fix	naoshimasu	28
flow	nagaremasu	28
folding paper	origami	3
foot	ashi	27
Foreign Ministry	gaimushoo	9
foreigner	gaijin	10
fork	fooku	22
form	katachi	17
Friday	kinyoobi	5
fried	ageta	23
from	kara	8
front	mae	7
in front of...	...no mae	7
fun	omoshiroi	
furniture	kagu	16
further	moo	1

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

G

gate (at station)	kaisatsuguchi	11
gentleman (formal)	shinshi	16
get off	orimasu	13
globefish, blowfish	fugu	22
go	iku, ikimasu	9
if you go	ikeba	10
I want to go	ikitain desu	
Are you going home?	Okaeri desu ka?	20
let's go	ikimashoo	27
go down stairs	kaidan o orimasu	14
go out	demasu, dekakemasu	14, 20
I'm going out	itte mairimasu	20
go to bed	nemasu	20
go up	agarimasu, noborimasu	11
good	ii	4
good-bye	sayoonara, itte irasshai, itte mairimasu, gomen kudasai	1 20
good morning	ohayoo gozaimasu	1
good evening	konbanwa	1
good day, good afternoon	konnichiwa	1
good night	oyasuminasai	20
gram	guramu	18
grilled	yaita	23
groceries	shokuryoohin	16
guest	okyaku-san, okyaku-sama	13, 17

H

half	han	10
hand	te	27
handed over	watashimashita	19
handkerchief	hankachi	18
have	arimasu	4
I have...	(watakushi wa) ... ga arimasu	4
head	atama	27
heart	shinzoo	27
heart attack	shinzoomahi	27
heart disease	shinzoobyoo	27
heavy	omoi	20
heel(s)	kakato	28
hello (anyone there?)	gomen kudasai	20
hello (on the phone)	moshimoshi	

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

help!	tasukete!	27
here	koko, kochira (polite)	2, 23
high blood pressure	koo-ketsuatsu	27
hot	atsui	20, 23
hot (spicy)	karai	23
house (another's)	otaku	24
household goods	kateeyoohin	16
how?	ikaga	17
How are you?	Ogenki desu ka?	1
How do you do?	Hajimemashite.	5
How much is it?	Ikura desu ka?	11
how many people?	Nan-nin?	21
hundred	hyaku	11
hurts	itai	27
my head hurts	atama ga itai desu	27
husband	shujin, goshujin (someone else's)	5
I		
I	watakushi	1
I am...	watakushi wa...desu	1
it is I who...	watakushi no hoo koso	30
ice cream	aisukuriimu	3
in	ni	4
inexpensive	yasui	17
information desk	annaijo	16
injured person	keganin	27
instructor	sensee	1
interesting	omoshiroi	
intersection	koosaten	8
intestine	choo	27
iron	airon	28
is	arimasu (inanimate), imasu (animate), irasshaimasu (animate polite)	4
there is		
J		
January	ichi-gatsu	20
Japan	Nihon	1
Japan Broadcasting Corporation	NHK	24
Japan Railway	JR	12

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

Japanese language	nihongo	3
Japan Travel	Nihon Ryokoo	25
jewel/jewelry	hooseki	16
June	roku-gatsu	20
July	shichi-gatsu	20
K		
kilogram	kiro	18
kilometer	kiro	18
kitchen sink	nagashi	28
knee	hiza	27
knife	naifu	22
know		
I don't know	shirimasen	11
L		
large	ookii	15
late(adv)	osoku	30
leave	demasu	14
leave be on leave	yasumi <i>yasunde imasu, oyasumi desu</i>	26 26
left	hidari	4
leg	ashi	27
Let me see...(hesitation)	Eeto...	7
light up	tsukimasu	28
...line Chuo-line	...sen <i>Chuo-sen</i>	12, 14
little	chotto, sukoshi, shooshoo (polite)	4, 17, 19
local(train)	futsuu, kakueki	12
look	mimasu	17
look for	sagashimasu	17
lower back	koshi	27
low blood pressure	tee-ketsuatsu	27
luggage	kaban	16
lung	hai	27

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

M

magazine	zasshi	21
man	shinshi (formal)	16
mandarin orange	mikan	18
make (a telephone call)	denwa shimasu	26
man's dress shirt	waishatsu	19
map	chizu	4
March	san-gatsu	20
matter what's the matter?	Doo shimashita ka?	27
May	go-gatsu	20
meal	shokujii	29
meal ticket	shokken	21
meat	niku	18
medicine	kusuri	16
medium (steak)	midiamu	22
meet pleased to meet you let's meet	aimasu doozo yoroshiku aimashoo	5 29
menu	menyuu	21
message	okotozuke	26
meter(s)	meetoru	10
milk	miruku	3
minute(s)	...fun	10
M.I.T.I. ((Ministry of International Trade and Industry)	Tsuusanshoo	
mixer	mikisaa	28
Monday	getsu-yoobi	5
money	(o)kane	3
month (in month names)	...gatsu	20
more one more time	moo moo ichi-do	1 1
mouth	kuchi	27
movie	eega	30

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

N

name	namae, onamae (polite)	15, 28
name card	meeshi	5
nasty	iya	20
near	soba, chikai	8, 10
near here	kono chikaku	4
neck	kubi	27
necktie	nekutai	16
newspaper	shinbun	21
next	tsugi	2
next to...	...no tonari	7
the one after next	tsugi no tsugi	13
...is next	...wa tsugi desu	13
next corner	tsugi no kado	4
next week	raishuu	28
no	iie	1
no good	dame	29
north	kita	14
nose	hana	27
not		
not (at all)	tondemo nai	30
not yet	madamada desu	5
November	juuichi-gatsu	20
now	ima	19
number...	...ban	11

O

October	juu-gatsu	20
Oh!	Aa!	3
one day	ichi-nichi	28
only	dake	17
operation	shujutsu	27
or	ka	13
order	chuumon, gochuumon (polite)	22
other		
the other day	kono aida, senjitsu	30
over there	mukoo, asoko, achira (polite)	2, 7
just over there (answer to 'Where are you going?' used as a greeting)	chotto soko made	20

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

P

pack	pakku	18
painful	itai	27
pardon? (I don't understand) I beg your pardon pardon me	Ha? shitsuree itashimashita doomo sumimasen	2 19 24
pass	sugimasu	13
passenger	okyaku-san, okyaku-sama	13, 17
past	sugi	10
pear	nashi	23
person	mono (humble)	26
personnel (affairs)	jinji	25
personnel section/department	jinji-ka	25
pet	petto	16
pie	pai	22
platform	hoomu	12
please	doozo (offering something)	12
please	V-te form + kudasai (request)	4
please (may I have it?)	onegai shimasu	3
plumber	suidoo-ya	28
plumbing	suidoo	28
p.m.	gogo	28
pneumonia	haien	27
point (in decimals)	ten	18
police	keesatsu	27
police box	kooban	7
political section	seeji-bu	25
politics	seeji	25
pork	pooku	23
president (lit., company head)	shachoo	25
person	hito	4
pretty	kiree	30
public telephone	kooshuu denwa	7
pulse	myaku	27

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

R

radio	rajio	3
rain	ame	28
rainy season	tsuyu	20
rare (steak)	rea	22
range, stove	renji	28
raw	nama no	23
record	rekoodo	3
red	aka	22
red (one)	akai (no)	18
refrigerator	reezooko	28
regret		
to my regret	zannen desu ga	29
remain	nokotte imasu	29
reserved seat	shitee-seki	12
rest	yasumimasu	26
be resting	yasunde imasu	26
rest room	(o)tearai	7
restaurant	resutoran	4
return	modorimasu omodori ni narimasu (deferential)	26
rice (uncooked)	okome	18
right (side)	migi	4
right there	sugu soko	4
road	michi	4
roof	okujoo	16
room	heya	4
rudeness	shitsuree	24

S

salad	sarada	21
green salad	guriin sarada	22
mixed salad	mikkusu sarada	22
sales	eegyoo	25
sales department	eegyoo-ka	25
(sales) window	madoguchi	11
salty	shiokarai	23

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

sandwich	sandoitchi	21
sash (for kimono)	obi	3
Saturday	do-yoobi	5
sauce	soosu	23
say please say	iimasu itte kudasai	1 1
scarf	sukaafu	17
school	gakkoo	7
season pass	teeki-ken	13
second...	futatsu-me no...	8
secretary	hisho	5
section	ka	25
section chief	kakarichoo	25
see see you (again) I see Let me see...(hesitation word)	mimasu jaa mata soo desu ka eeto...	20 4 7
September	ku-gatsu	20
shirt	shatsu	17
shoe(s)	kutsu	16
show	misemasu	17
shrimp	ebi	18
shrine	jinja	3
shoulder	kata	27
sick sick in stomach	kimochi ga warui desu	27
single (person)	hitori	4
size	saizu	17
skillful	joozu, (o)joozu (polite)	5
slowly	yukkuri	2
small	chiisai	17
snow	yuki	28
so Is that so?	soo Soo desu ka?	1
something something to drink	nanika nomimono, (o)nomimono (polite)	26 22
somewhere	dokoka	20

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

soon	sugu	8
sorry I am (very) sorry I am very sorry	sumimasen (doomo) sumimasen mooshikake arimasen (formal)	24 30
sour	suppai	23
south south gate	minami minami-guchi	14 14
soy sauce	shooyu	21
spaghetti	supagetti	4
spinach	hoorensoo	19
spring	haru	20
stairway	kaidan	11
State Department	Kokumushoo	5
stationery	bunboogu	16
steak beefsteak	suteeki bifuteki	22 4
stereo	sutereo	28
stomach	i	16
stomach ulcer	ikaiyoo	27
stop (bus, taxi)	noriba	2
stop	tomarimasu	12
stop	tomemasu	15
straight	massugu	4
street end of street	michi tsukiatari	4 9
style	katachi	17
subway	chikatetsu	7
summer	natsu	20
Sunday	nichi-yoobi	5
sunny	hare	28
super express train	tokkyuu	12
supermarket	suupaamaaketto, suupaa	1, 15
sweater	seetaa	17
sweet	amai	23

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

T

take (people)	tsurete iku	8
take (time)	kakarimasu	28
take care of yourself	odaiji ni	30
tangerine	mikan	18
taxi	takushii	2
taxi stand	takushii noriba	2
tea	ocha	22
tea parlor	kissaten	4
teach	oshiemasu	13
teacher	sensee	1
telephone	denwa	7
television	terebi	3
tell		
won't you please tell me	oshiete kudasaimasen ka	13
temperature (of the body)	taion	27
ten thousand	man	18
thanks	doomo	2
thank you	arigatoo	2
thank you very much	doomo arigatoo (gozaimasu)	2
thank you for the good food	gochisoosama	23
that (thing)	sore, are	3
that (in front of nouns)	sono, ano	8
that way	sotchi, atchi, sotchira, achira (polite)	7
there	soko	7
think	omoimasu	26
let me think for a minute	soo desu nee...	23
I think that...	...to omoimasu	26
third...	mittsu-me no...	8
this	kono	9
this	kochira (thing, person) (polite)	5
this (thing)	kore	1
this way	kotchi, kochira (polite)	7
thousand	sen	12
throat	nodo	27
Thursday	moku-yoobi	5
ticket	kippu	11
coupon tickets	kaisuuken	11
commuter ticket (season pass)	teekiken	11

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

ticket window	uriba	11
tip	chippu	23
to	ni, e	4, 10
toaster	toosutaa	28
tobacco	tabako	3
tobacco shop	tabako-ya	7
today	kyoo	20
toe	(ashi) yubi	27
together	issho ni	21
toilet	(o)tearai	7
tomorrow	ashita	26
tongue	shita	27
too	mo	4
tooth	ha	27
top	ue	17
top ofno ue	17
toward	hoo	9
towards	e	10
toy	omocha	16
track number	...bansen	3
traffic light	shingoo	7
travel	ryokoo	25
true	hontoo	20
truly	hontoo ni	20
Tuesday	ka-yoobi	5
tuna fish	maguro	23
turn	magarimasu	4
it's at the place (you) turn	magatta tokoro desu	9
turn left	hidari ni magarimasu	4
after having turned	magaruto	4
turn on	tsukimasu	28
light turns on	denki ga tsukimasu	28

U

Uh... (hesitation)	anoo	
uncooked rice	okome	18
under	shita	17
under...	...no shita	17

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

underground passage	chikadoo	14
understand	wakarimasu	1
unfortunately	ainiku desu ga	17
unpleasant	iya	20
unreserved seat	jiyuu-seki	12
until	made	10
up-train	nobori	12
urgent business	kyuuyoo	30
V		
VD	seabyoo	27
vegetables	yasai	23
vending machine	jidoo hanbaiki	11
very	totemo, taihen	5, 23
vicinity	chikaku	9
this vicinity	kono hen	7
vicinity of...	...no chikaku	9
visa	sashoo, biza	25
visa section	sashoo-ka	25
visible	miemasu	10
W		
wait	machimasu	22
I'm sorry to have kept you waiting	omatase shimashita,	19
please wait (polite)	omatase itashimashita	26
please (remain) waiting	omachi kudasai	4
	matte ite kudasai	27
walk	arukimasu	10
warm	atatakai	20
water	mizu	28
watch	tokee	16
way	michi	4
on the way	tochuu	30
weather	(o)tenki	20
Wednesday	sui-yoobi	5
welcome	irasshai, irasshaimase (polite)	4, 28
you're welcome	doo itashimashite	2
welcome home	okaerinasai (used by the one who stayed behind)	20
well	yoku	3
well... (hesitation)	anoo	16

ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

well (then)	jaa	3
went to bed	nemashita	20
west	nishi	14
what What is (it)?	nani, nan <i>(Sore wa) nan desu ka?</i>	1 1
what day (of the week)?	nan-yoobi	5
what number?	nan-ban	28
what time?	nan-ji	10
when?	itsu	28
where?	doko	2
which...?	dono...	14
which floor?	nan-gai	16
which one?	ikutsu-me (in a numbered series)	13
which one?	dore	23
which track?	nan-bansen	12
which way?	dotchi	14
whisky	uisukii	3
white	shiro	22
white (one)	shiroi (no)	18
who?	donata (polite)	24
wife	kanai, okusan (someone else's)	5
wine wine merchant	wain <i>sakaya</i>	22 18
winter	fuyu	20
woman	fujin (formal)	16
wooden clogs	geta	3
wound	kirikizu	13
write please write	kakimasu <i>kaite kudasai</i>	4 4
wrong, different	chigaimasu	1
X		
X-ray	rentogen	27
Y		
yes	hai, ee (less formal than <u>hai</u>)	2, 13
yen	en	11

TABLE OF MONTHS, DAYS, WEEKS, AND COUNTERS

	Names of the Months	Number of Months	Number of Weeks	Number of Years	Number of Days and Dates*
1	ichi-gatsu	ik-kagetsu	is-shuukan	ichi-nen	ichinichi 'one day' tsuitachi 'the first'
2	ni-gatsu	ni-kagetsu	ni-shuukan	ni-nen	futsu-ka
3	san-gatsu	san-kagetsu	san-shuukan	san-nen	mik-ka
4	shi-gatsu	yon-kagetsu	yon-shuukan	yo-nen	yok-ka
5	go-gatsu	go-kagetsu	go-shuukan	go-nen	itsu-ka
6	roku-gatsu	rok-kagetsu	roku-shuukan	roku-nen	mui-ka
7	shichi-gatsu	shichi/nana-kagetsu	shichi/nana-shuukan	shichi/nana-nen	nano-ka
8	hachi-gatsu	hachi/hak-kagetsu	hachi/has-shuukan	hachi-nen	yoo-ka
9	ku-gatsu	ku/kyuu-kagetsu	kyuu-shuukan	kyuu-nen	kokono-ka
10	juu-gatsu	juk/jik-kagetsu	jus-shuukan	juu-nen	too-ka
11	juuichi-gatsu	juuik-kagetsu	juuis-shuukan	juuichi-nen	juuichi-nichi
12	juuni-gatsu	juuni-kagetsu	juuni-shuukan	juuni-nen	juuni-nichi
question	What month? Nan-gatsu?	How many months? Nan-kagetsu?	How many weeks? Nan-shuukan?	How many years? Nan-nen?	How many days? or What date? Nan-nichi?

*The words for numbers of days and dates higher than 10 are regular (i.e., are composed of the appropriate number plus nichi) except that 'the 14th', 'the 20th', 'the 24th' and '14 days', '20 days' and '24 days' are juuyok-ka, hatsu-ka and nijuuyok-ka respectively

TABLE OF MONTHS, DAYS, WEEKS, AND COUNTERS

	Time	Hours	Minutes	People	Ages*
1	ichi-ji	ichi-jikan	ip-pun	hitori	hitotsu or is-sai
2	ni-ji	ni-jikan	ni-fun	futari	futatsu or ni-sai
3	san-ji	san-jikan	san-pun	san-nin	mitsu or san-sai
4	yo-ji	yo-jikan	yon-pun	yo-nin	yottsu or yon-sai
5	go-ji	go-jikan	go-fun	go-nin	itsutsu or go-sai
6	roku-ji	roku-jikan	rop-pun	roku-nin	muttsu or roku-sai
7	shichi-ji	shichi/nana-jikan	shichi/nana-fun	shichi-nin	nanatsu or nana-sai
8	hachi-ji	hachi-jikan	hachi-fun or hap-pun	hachi-nin	yattsu or has-sai
9	ku-ji	ku-jikan	kyuu-fun	ku/kyuu-nin	kokonotsu or kyuu-sai
10	juu-ji	juu-jikan	jip/jup-pun	juu-nin	too or jus-sai
11	juuichi-ji	juuichi-jikan	juuip-pun	juuichi-nin	juuis-sai
12	juuni-ji	juuni-jikan	juuni-fun	juuni-nin	juuni-sai
question	What time? Nan-ji?	How many hours? Nan-jikan?	How many minutes? Nan-pun?	How many people? Nan-nin?	How old? Ikutsu? or Nan-sai?

*'Twenty years old' is hatachi or nijus-sai. The other words for ages are regular.

TABLE OF MONTHS, DAYS, WEEKS, AND COUNTERS

	Flat Objects	Cylindrical Objects	Floors	Units	Units (general counter)
1	ichi-mai	ip-pon	ik-kai	ik-ko	hitotsu
2	ni-mai	ni-hon	ni-kai	ni-ko	futatsu
3	san-mai	san-bon	san-gai	san-ko	mittsu
4	yo/yon-mai	yon-hon	yon-kai	yon-ko	yottsu
5	go-mai	go-hon	go-kai	go-ko	itsutsu
6	roku-mai	rop-pon	rok-kai	rok-ko	muttsu
7	shichi/nana-mai	shichi/nana-hon	shichi/nana-kai	nana-ko	nanatsu
8	hachi-mai	hachi-hon, hap-pon	hachi/hak-kai	hak-ko	yattsu
9	kyuu-mai	kyuu-hon	kyuu-kai	kyuu-ko	kokonotsu
10	juu-mai	jup-pon	juk-kai	juk/jik-ko	too
11	juuichi-mai	juuip-pon	juuik-kai	juuik-ko	juuichi
12	juuni-mai	juuni-hon	juuni-kai	juuni-ko	juuni
question	How many (flat objects)? Nan-mai?	How many (cylindrical objects)? Nan-bon?	What floor? Nan-gai?	How many? Nan-ko?	How many? Ikutsu?

TABLE OF MONTHS, DAYS, WEEKS, AND COUNTERS

	Numbers in a Series*	Number of Times	Bunches	Piles	Servings
1	saisho no... or hajime no...	ichi-do	ichi-wa	hito-yama	ichi-ninmae
2	futatsu-me or futatsu-me no...	ni-do	ni-wa	futa-yama	ni-ninmae
3	mittsu-me or mittsu-me no...	san-do	san-wa or san-ba	mi-yama	san-ninmae
4	yottsu-me or yottsu-me no...	yon-do	yon-wa	yo(n)-yama	yo-ninmae
5	itsutsu-me or itsutsu-me no...	go-do	go-wa	itsu-yama	go-ninmae
question	Which number? ikutsu-me or ikutsu-me no...	How many times? nan-do	How many bunches? nan-wa or nan-ba	How many piles? iku-yama	How many servings? nan-ninmae

*...me is used in describing objects in a series as in 'first..., second...', and can be used after any counter. For example, futari-me 'the second person' or san-do-me 'the third time', etc.